DUNCAN
CARTLIDGE

Quantity Surveyor's Pocket Book

Quantity Surveyor's Pocket Book

This page intentionally left blank

Quantity Surveyor's Pocket Book

First Edition

Duncan Cartlidge FRICS

ELSEVIER

AMSTERDAM • BOSTON • HEIDELBERG • LONDON • NEW YORK • OXFORD
PARIS • SAN DIEGO • SAN FRANCISCO • SINGAPORE • TOKYO
Butterworth-Heinemann is an imprint of Elsevier

Butterworth-Heinemann is an imprint of Elsevier
Linacre House, Jordan Hill, Oxford OX2 8DP, UK
30 Corporate Drive, Suite 400, Burlington, MA 01803, USA

First edition 2009

Copyright © 2009, Duncan Cartlidge. Published by Elsevier Ltd. All rights reserved

The right of Duncan Cartlidge to be identifi ed as the author of this work has been asserted in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise without the prior written permission of the publisher

Permissions may be sought directly from Elsevier's Science & Technology Rights Department in Oxford, UK: phone (+44) (0) 1865 843830; fax (+44) (0) 1865 853333; email: permissions@elsevier.com. Alternatively you can submit your request online by visiting the Elsevier web site at http://elsevier.com/locate/permissions, and selecting *Obtaining permission to use Elsevier material*

Notice
No responsibility is assumed by the publisher for any injury and/or damage to persons or property as a matter of products liability, negligence or otherwise, or from any use or operation of any methods, products, instructions or ideas contained in the material herein.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
A catalog record for this book is availabe from the Library of Congress

ISBN: 978-0-7506-8746-1

For information on all Butterworth-Heinemann publications
visit our web site at books.elsevier.com

Printed and bound in *Great Britain*

09 10 11 12 13 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Working together to grow
libraries in developing countries
www.elsevier.com | www.bookaid.org | www.sabre.org
ELSEVIER BOOK AID International Sabre Foundation

Dedication
Nicholas Jon Cartlidge 1942–2007

This page intentionally left blank

Contents

Preface xiii

1 The quantity surveyor and the construction industry 1
The UK construction industry 1
Market drivers 2
The building team 4
The construction supply chain 5
Latham and Egan Reports 6
The role of professional institutions 6
The quantity surveyor 6
Project manager 13
Architect 13
Building surveyor 14
Structural engineer 14
Civil engineer 15
Building services engineer 16
The clerk of works 17
Site manager/agent 18
UK professionals and the EU 19
Regulation and control of the construction process 19
Planning permission 20
Building Regulations 21
Health and safety 22
Sustainability and the quantity surveyor 25
Legislative background 26
What is sustainability? 28
Themes for action during the procurement process 30
Minimise energy in construction and in use 31
Do not pollute 31
Set targets 31
Site waste management plans 31

2 Forecasting costs and value 33
Forecasting Costs 33
Cost management 33
Element 33

Cost planning 35
Cost control 35
Cost analysis 36
Cost significant elements 37
Design risk 38
Price risk 38
Approximate estimating techniques 38
Interpolation 38
Unit method 39
Superficial method 39
Approximate quantities 41
Builder's quantities 41
Elemental cost planning 42
Sources of cost information 43
Cost planning example at the Concept and Design Development Stages (Stages C and D – RIBA Outline Plan of Work) 44
Price levels 45
Other information 47
Elemental cost control 49
Design and cost 50
Forecasting value 53
Discounting appraisal techniques 54
The property market and development 61
Taxation and property development 61
Feasibility reports 61
Residual method of valuation (developer's budget) 66
Example – feasibility report 68
Sources of finance 70
Equity 72
Debt finance 73
Mezzanine finance 74
Bonds 74
Answering the 'what if?' question 75
Whole life costs 78
Simple aggregation 83
Value management/value engineering 85

3 Measurement and quantification 89
Measurement practice 89
The RICS code of measuring practice, 6th edition (2007) 89
Presentation of the bills of quantities 99

Measurement conventions 100
Centre lines and mean girths 105
Making a start 108
Example 1 – substructure 108
Excavation – sundry items 112
Working space 112
Extra over items 118
Example 2 – walls from damp-proof course to wall plate 118
Brickwork 118
Blockwork 119
Mortar 119
Sundry items of masonry 124
Example 3 – floors 127
Upper floors – taking-off list 129
Example 4 – roofs (pitched and flat) 132
Double pitch roofs 137
Internal finishes 151
Windows, doors and joinery 157
Windows 158
Internal Doors 164
Plumbing installations and drainage 164
Drainage 181
Specifications 182
Traditional (prescriptive) format 184
Standard library of descriptions 186
Measurement for Energy Performance Certificates (EPC) 192

4 Procurement 197
Introduction 197
Guidelines to procurement 197
A genealogy of procurement 199
Risk and procurement 203
Traditional procurement 204
Preparation, stages A and B – Appraisal and Design Brief 205
Design, stages C, D and E – Concept, Design Development and Technical Design 206
Pre-Construction, stages F, G and H – Production Information, Tender Documentation and Tender Action 207
Tender evaluation 209
Risk allocation 210
Bills of reduction 211

Two stage competitive tendering 211
Stage 1 212
Stage 2 213
Critical success factors 214
Design and build and variants 215
Traditional design and build (D&B) 215
Management procurement 216
Management contracting 217
Construction or contract management 219
Design and manage 219
Cost reimbursement contracts 220
Partnering 221
Cultural issues 222
Commercial issues 222
Key success factors 222
Alliancing 224
Prime contracting 227
Frameworks 228
Public Private Partnerships (PPP) 230
The procurement process 231
The private finance initiative (PFI) 231
e-Procurement 238
European public procurement law 239
The directives – theory and practice 240
The quantity surveyor and EU public procurement 241
The EU procurement procedure 242
Award procedures 243
Electronic tendering 245
Technical specifications 246

5 Pricing and tendering 249
Sub-contractors 249
Named or nominated? 250
Domestic sub-contractors 251
Named sub-contractors 252
Nominated sub-contractors 253
The nomination process 254
Collateral warranties 255
Calculating bill rates using domestic sub-contractors 255
Unit rate and operational estimating 255
Operational estimating 255
Unit rate estimating 256

Labour costs 256
Materials 262
Plant 263
Overheads 266
Profit 267
Preliminaries 267
Section D – Groundwork 269
Underpinning 275
Section E – Concrete work 275
Section F – Masonry 280
Roofing 287
Materials delivered to site 293
Woodwork 294
Plumbing 304
Drainage 308
External works 311
Pro rata pricing 311
Managing the pricing process 311
Tender adjudication 312
e-tendering 313
e-Auctions 315
Reverse auctions 318

6 Contract procedure, administration and organisation 319
Part 1 – Contract procedure 319
Types of contract 320
Standard forms of contract 320
JCT Standard Building Contract 2005 edition 321
Intermediate Building Contract (IC 2005) 323
Minor Works Contract 2005 (MN 2005)/With Contractor's Design 323
Design and Build Contract together with Subcontract Agreement 324
Design and Build Subcontract (DBSub/A and DBSub/C) 325
The JCT Major Contracts Construction Contract (MP) – 2003 edition 325
The JCT Management Building Contract 329
JCT Prime Cost Contract (98) 330
Measured Term Contracts (98) 330
Construction Management Trade Contract 330
Collateral warranties 331
Other forms of contract 331

NEC form of contract 333
GC/Works range of contracts 338
ICE Conditions of Contract 340
International Federation of Consulting Engineers (FIDIC) 341
Institution of Chemical Engineers (IChemE) 342
The Scottish Building Contract Committee (SBCC) 343
Insurances, bonds, guarantees, collateral warranties 344
Part 2 – Contract administration 353
Dayworks 353
Recording dayworks 355
Fluctuations 355
Time and the contract 359
Interim valuations 364
Insolvency 370
Loss and expense claims 377
Dispute resolution 378
Part 3 – Site organisation 383
Welfare facilities 383
Planning the site layout 383
Planning and programming 384
Critical path analysis and PERT charts 385

7 Final account 387
Final account 387
The variation account 388
Measurement and pricing of variations 390
Pro rata pricing 390
Example 391
Final account standard format 393

Useful links and contacts 405
Further reading 411
Useful measurement rules and conventions 413
Index 417

Preface

The idea for writing a quantity surveyor's pocket book came to me while reading *The Dangerous Book for Boys* by Hal Iggulden. For those who are unfamiliar with this book, it is a compendium of everything a boy should know, from how to tie a Staffordshire knot to the discoverer of the planet Pluto. In other words, the basic skills that every self-respecting 6–60-year-old boy needs to know under a single cover.

The quantity surveyor is a uniquely British profession, although during the 160 years or so since the first quantity surveyor trod the planet they have managed to convince other countries and construction industries that they are an indispensable part of the development process.

Much maligned and often misunderstood quantity surveyors have demonstrated an ability to shrug off the attempts to consign them to the past and have instead reinvented themselves many times over. In 2008, the UK government took the step of lifting immigration restrictions on non-UK quantity surveyors as the demand for their skills outstripped supply by almost 5:1.

I have in the past written books that concentrate on the new and emerging skills that quantity surveyors are now being required to provide for ever more demanding clients. And yet under the headline services of value management, risk management, the Private Finance Initiative, etc., there is still a great need for the quantity surveyor to be able to provide traditional quantity surveying services. Therefore, this pocket book concentrates on traditional quantity surveyor skills, still so much in demand by clients and contractors alike, but which have, during the past 20 years or so, not had the emphasis in training and education that perhaps they warrant.

Duncan Cartlidge FRICS

This page intentionally left blank

1

The quantity surveyor and the construction industry

THE UK CONSTRUCTION INDUSTRY

The UK construction industry is a unique, complex and often fragmented industry. Nevertheless, in 2008 the total turnover of the industry was £80 billion or the equivalent of 6% of the UK gross domestic product, making it an important contributor to the wealth of the nation. The industry employs approximately 182,000 contractors, 1.8 million people – a high percentage of which are self-employed – with a ratio of male to female of 7:1. The construction industry is defined in accordance with Division 45 of the Revised 2003 Standard Classification to include the following:

- General construction and demolition work: establishments engaged in building and civil engineering work not specialised to be classified elsewhere
- Construction and repair of buildings: establishments engaged in construction, improvement and repair of both residential and non-residential buildings, including specialists engaged in sections of construction and repair work such as bricklaying and the erection of steel and concrete structures, etc.
- Civil engineering: construction of roads, railways, airport runways, bridges, tunnels, pipelines, etc.
- Installation of fixtures and fittings: establishments engaged in the installation of fixtures and fittings including; gas fittings, plumbing, electrical fixtures and fittings, etc.
- Building completion work: establishments engaged in work such as painting and decorating, plastering, onsite joinery, etc.

Market drivers

Demand

Demand for construction and civil engineering work can be divided in broad terms into public and private sectors. Public sector work is work for any public authority such as:

- Government departments
- Public utilities
- Universities
- The National Health Service, and
- Local authorities.

Private sector work is for a private owner or organisation or for a private client and includes:

- Work carried out by firms on their own initiative
- Work where the private sector carries out the majority of the risk/gain.

Increasingly, the distance between public and private sectors is disappearing with the introduction of strategies such as the Private Finance Initiative, which is included in Chapter 4.

Demand for construction is influenced by the following factors:

- The industry is vulnerable to economic influences as witnessed by the downturn in the UK housing sector in 2008. Figure 1.1 illustrates that the last 40 years have seen a number of periods of 'boom and bust' associated with the economic performance of the UK as a whole. The construction industry has regularly been used by government in the recent past as a method of regulating the general economy; for example, by varying interest rates in order to adjust demand for housing
- Almost half of all construction works are commissioned by the public sector and therefore cut-backs in public sector spending on projects such as schools, hospitals, roads, etc., can have the effect of cooling down an overheating economy.
- Demand can come from a variety of sources, from mega projects, such as the 2012 London Olympic Games to a single-storey kitchen extension
- A buoyant construction market depends on the availability of reasonable cost credit

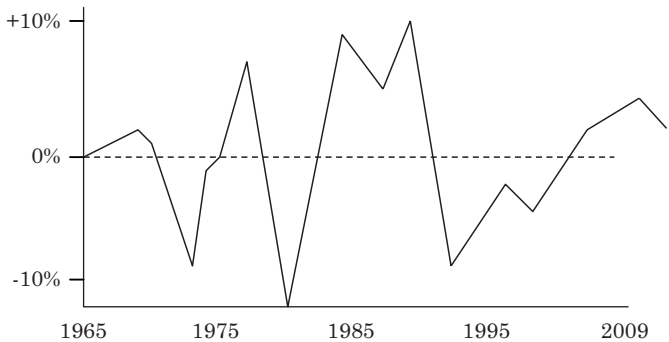


Figure 1.1 Construction output – percentage change 1965–2009 (Source: BERR)

- Further ways in which the government can manipulate demand are with the use of tax breaks for certain categories of development, e.g. Enterprise zones were established in various parts of the country in 1982. These zones offer certain types of development; lucrative tax breaks, rapid planning approvals and exemption from business rates
- Nearly half the output of the construction industry is in repairs and maintenance, often neglected in times of economic down-turns.

Supply

The supply side of construction is characterised by the following factors:

- Its unique structure. Statistics produced by the BERR indicate that in 2008 there were approximately 182,000 firms working in construction. However, only 120 of these had more than 600 employees, with the greatest majority being small jobbing builders. This structure makes it difficult to introduce new initiatives and working practices to increase productivity and/or efficiency. It is generally only the larger organisations that have the time and resources to try to bring about change
- About 1.5% of construction firms account for approximately 60% of the workload. The UK structure is not unique and is replicated, for example, in Australia and North America
- During the past thirty years or so there has been less reliance on traditional construction trade skills such as bricklaying and

plastering. Instead there has been a move towards an assembly process; for example, the extensive use of timber kits for low and medium-rise structures
- The early 1960s witnessed a movement towards the use of industrialised buildings; that is, buildings constructed from mass produced, factory made components assembled on site. The object was to reduce the amount of skilled expensive labour in the construction process, thereby reducing costs and increasing profits and, by 1966, this accounted for 25% of all social housing starts. However, industrialised building tends to be inflexible. Cases such as the Roman Point disaster of 1968 (when without warning a high-rise block of system-built flats partially collapsed) turned public opinion away from this type of approach
- The time lag between the response to supply to an increased demand will nearly always result in a distortion of the market. For example, increased house building in response to increased demand, triggered by lower interest rates and full employment
- With a standing housing stock of 25 million units, in addition to office buildings, shops, etc., repair and maintenance are also an important part of the construction industry.

THE BUILDING TEAM

In addition to construction firms, architects, surveyors and allied professions are involved in the concept, design, finance and management of the construction process. Sir Harold Emerson remarked in the Emerson Report in 1964 that: 'In no other important industry is the responsibility for the design so far removed from the responsibilities of production.' What is more, unlike other major industries such as car manufacturing or aerospace, construction activity is carried out:

- In the open air exposed to the elements
- At various locations with each project, to some degree being bespoke, unlike a standard model of car or computer.

These factors have contributed to some of the problems that the industry has experienced, during the past 50 years or so where the construction industry has been confined to a mere assembly process, with little input from the contractor. These characteristics have led to claims that the industry is inefficient and wasteful and that clients

have historically received a bad deal and poor value for money, with projects being delivered late and over budget.

The construction supply chain

The construction supply chain is comprised of the network of organisations involved in the different processes and activities which produce the materials, components and services that come together to design, procure and deliver a building.

Figure 1.2 illustrates part of a typical construction supply chain; although in reality many more sub-contractors could be involved. The problems for process control and improvement that the traditional supply chain approach produces are related to:

- The various organisations which come together for a specific project; at the end of which they disband to form new supply chains
- Communicating data, knowledge and design solutions across the organisations that make up the supply chain
- Stimulating and accumulating improvement in processes that cross the organisational borders
- Achieving goals and objectives across the supply chain, and
- Stimulating and accumulating improvement inside an organisation that only exists for the duration of a project.

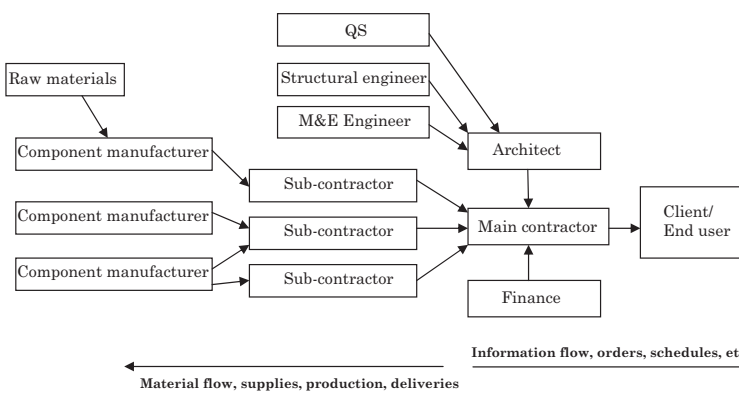


Figure 1.2 Typical construction supply chain

Latham and Egan Reports

The Latham (1994) and Egan (1998) Reports were the last of a series of reports that tried to analyse the workings of the UK construction industry and suggest ways in which it could become more efficient and deliver better value for money. The principal messages from the reports were that the construction industry needed to concentrate and invest in:

- Modernisation
- Innovation, and
- Mass-production.

The role of professional institutions

There are a number of professional institutions for building professionals, namely, but not in any particular order:

- The Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors – RICS
- The Royal Institute of British Architects – RIBA
- The Institution of Civil Engineers – ICE
- The Institution of Structural Engineers – MIStructE
- Chartered Institute of Building – CIOB
- The Clerk of Works Association
- The Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers – CIBSE.

Each of the above organisations has developed over time to regulate and further the aims of its members. Corporate membership is generally either at member or fellow grade and members must pay substantial annual fees in order to use designatory letters after their names. The main reasons for the establishment of the professional bodies are to:

- Safeguard the public; for example, by ensuring that all members working in private practice have adequate professional indemnity insurance
- Enforce codes of conduct
- Lobby governments, and
- Train and educate.

The quantity surveyor

Prior to the Napoleonic Wars, Britain, in common with its continental neighbours, had a construction industry based on separate trades.

This system still exists in France as 'lots sépare', and variations of it can be found throughout Europe, including in Germany. The system works like this: instead of the multi-traded main contractor that operates in the UK, each trade is tendered for, and subsequently engaged separately under, the coordination of a project manager.

The Napoleonic Wars, however, brought change and nowhere more so than in Britain – the only large European state that Napoleon failed to invade or occupy. The government of the day was obliged to construct barracks to house the huge garrisons of soldiers who were then being transported across the English Channel. As the need for the army barracks was so urgent and the time to prepare drawings, specifications, etc. was so short, the contracts were let on a 'settlement by fair valuation based on measurement after completion of the works'. This meant that constructors were given the opportunity and encouragement to innovate and to problem solve – something that was progressively withdrawn from them in the years that followed. The same need for haste, coupled with the sheer magnitude of the individual projects, led to many contracts being let to a single builder or group of tradesmen 'contracting in gross', and the general contractor was born. When peace was made the Office of Works and Public Buildings, which had been increasingly concerned with the high cost of measurement and fair value procurement – in particular, in the construction of Buckingham Palace and Windsor Castle – decided that enough was enough. In 1828 separate trades contracting was discontinued for public works in England in favour of contracting in gross. The following years saw contracting in gross (general contracting) rise to dominate, and with this development the role of the builder as an innovator, problem-solver and design team member was stifled to the point where contractors operating in the UK system were reduced to simple executors of the works and instructions (although in Scotland the separate trades system survived until the early 1970s).

Then in 1834 architects decided that they wished to divorce themselves from surveyors and establish the Royal Institute of British Architects (RIBA), exclusively for architects. The grounds for this great schism were that architects wished to distance themselves from surveyors and their perceived 'obnoxious commercial interest in construction'. The events of 1834 were also responsible for the birth of another UK phenomenon, the quantity surveyor.

For the next 150 or so years the UK construction industry continued to develop along the lines outlined above, and consequently by the third quarter of the twentieth century the industry was characterised by:

- Powerful professions carrying out work on comparatively generous fee scales
- Contractors devoid of the capability to analyse and refine design solutions
- Forms of contract that made the industry one of the most litigious in Europe, and
- Procurement systems based upon competition and selection by lowest price rather than value for money.

Some within the industry had serious concerns about procurement routes and documentation, the forms of contract in use leading to excess costs, suboptimal building quality and time delays, and the adversarial and conflict-ridden relationships between the various parties. A series of government-sponsored reports (Simon, 1944; Emmerson, 1962; Banwell, 1964) attempted to stimulate debate about construction industry practice, but with little effect.

It was not just the UK construction industry that was obsessed with navel-gazing during the last quarter of the twentieth century; quantity surveyors had also been busy penning numerous reports into the future prospects for their profession, all produced either directly by, or on behalf of, The Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors. The most notable of which were:

- *The Future Role of the Quantity Surveyor* (RICS, 1971) was the product of a questionnaire sent to all firms in private practice together with a limited number of public sector organisations. The report paints a picture of a world where the quantity surveyor was primarily a producer of bills of quantities; indeed, the report comes to the conclusion that the distinct competence of the quantity surveyor of the 1970s was measurement – a view, it should be added, still shared by many today. In addition, competitive single stage tendering was the norm, as was the practice of receiving most work via the patronage of an architect. It was a profession where design and construct projects were rare, and quantity surveyors were discouraged from forming multidisciplinary practices and encouraged to adhere to the scale of fees charges. The report observes that clients were becoming more informed, but there was little advice about how quantity surveyors were to meet this challenge
- *The Future Role of the Chartered Quantity Surveyor* (RICS, 1983)
- *Quantity Surveying 2000 – The Future Role of the Chartered Quantity Surveyor* (RICS, 1991)

- *The Challenge for Change: QS Think Tank* (RICS, 1998). A mere 25 years after the original report, the 1998 report was drafted in a business climate driven by information technology, where quantities generation is a low-cost activity and the client base is demanding that surveyors demonstrate added value. In particular, medium-sized quantity surveying firms (i.e. between 10 and 250 employees) were singled out by this latest report to be under particular pressure owing to:
  - competing with large practices' multiple disciplines and greater specialist knowledge base
  - attracting and retaining a high-quality workforce
  - achieving a return on the necessary investment in IT, and
  - competing with the small firms with low overheads.

Interestingly, *The Challenge for Change* report also predicts that the distinction between contracting and professional service organisations will blur – a quantum leap from the 1960s, when chartered surveyors were forced to resign from their institution if they worked for contracting organisations! The trend for mergers and acquisitions continues, although it has to be said not without its problems, with the largest quantity surveying firms developing into providers of broad business solutions.

The profession

A quantity surveyor may choose to work in any number of different fields. However, principally these can be divided into:

- Private practice, often referred now to as project management, and
- Commercial management or contracting surveying.

Private practice. The conventional model for quantity surveying firms in private practice is to trade as a sole practitioner or as a partnership. A surveyor who is a partner in a partnership is jointly and severally liable for all debts and liabilities of the partnership and liable to the full extent of their personal wealth for the debts of the business. However, in 2001 the Limited Liability Partnership Act made limited liability partnerships (LLPs) available to any 'two or more persons associated for carrying on a lawful business with a view to profit'. This followed on from the RICS's decision in 1986 to remove the restrictions on limited liability. The arguments for the introduction of LLPs are:

- The general partnership, which had existed since the Partnership Act of 1890, was no longer an appropriate vehicle for modern firms and for their businesses
- Unlike a partnership, an LLP is a separate legal entity. Although some LLPs call their members 'partners', they are not partners in a partnership; their legal title is 'members of an LLP'
- The primary purpose of an LLP is to provide additional protection for the members through limited liability; a member will not be personally liable for acts and defaults of a fellow member. However, he or she may still be personally liable for his or her own negligence.

Commercial management. Commercial management is generally meant to be managing the contractual and commercial aspects of projects for the supply side of the industry. Many commercial managers are members of the CIOB and the RICS.

The Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors (RICS)

The RICS was founded in 1868 and today there are approximately 130,000 members operating in over 140 countries of which approximately 35,000 are quantity surveyors.

The key roles of the RICS are to:

- Regulate and promote the profession
- Maintain the highest educational and professional standards
- Protect clients and consumers through a strict code of ethics
- Provide impartial advice, analysis and guidance.

Training and education

Until the 1960s the principal route to becoming a quantity surveyor was to follow a course on either a full or part-time basis (some of these courses were really tests of attrition, which involved attending evening classes for three hours a night, four nights a week for several years, and finally sitting the examinations for either the RICS or the Institute of Quantity Surveyors (IQS). These examinations had a fearsome reputation with approximately only 35% of all candidates being successful each year. However, during the 1960s the first Council for National Academic Awards (CNAA) degree and diploma courses in surveying were offered at universities and other institutions of higher education. These granted exemption from the majority of the professional institutes' examinations. In 1982 the RICS and IQS merged – as a result,

the IQS ceased to exist. With the transition from examinations set by the RICS to degrees and diplomas, the RICS's role changed to one of an accrediting body. In 2001 the RICS radically revised its accreditation process and introduced a 'Partnership' scheme for selected universities, etc. The aims of the partnership arrangements are to:

- Maintain standards
- Attract the best entrants to the profession
- Promote research
- Develop courses in response to the needs of the profession and industry
- Improve education/professional links.

One of the principal routes to becoming a member of the Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors is:

- By obtaining a first degree awarded by an RICS partnership university. In the UK there are a number of higher education establishments that offer 3, or 4 years in the case of Scotland, degree courses
- On completion of the first degree, the graduate then typically gains employment in a private practice or contractor's organisation with a structured training framework. After a minimum of two years of work experience the candidate applies to take the Assessment of Professional Competence (APC)
- The purpose of the APC is to ensure that those applying for RICS membership are competent to practice. It is structured to provide a number of pathways to cover nineteen different areas of practice. The APC for quantity surveyors covers a number of mandatory, core and optional competencies such as:
  - commercial management of construction or design economics
  - contract practice
  - construction technology and environmental services
  - procurement and tendering
  - project financial control
  - quantification and costing of construction studies
- If successful, the candidate may apply for membership of the RICS (MRICS). Approximately half of all entrants to the surveying profession come via this route. Corporate membership is at two levels; members and fellows. In 2002 RICS raised the standards for its fellowship award to reflect career achievements. Normally only MRICS members with a minimum of five years service who are major achievers will now be considered.

In addition to the first degree route, in recent years a number of other routes have become very popular. These are:

- Cognate and non-cognate degree courses available in full-time, part-time and distance learning modes. These courses are typically 2–3 years in duration and have been developed to attract candidates who already have a first degree in a related (cognate) or unrelated (non-cognate) subject area. These courses are intensive but have proved to be very popular with almost 25% of all entrants to surveying now coming from this route
- Masters degrees (MSc). There are a number of second degree courses both full-, part-time and distance learning, that are recognised by the RICS for entry to the institution and enrolment to take the APC
- In addition to the above routes into the profession, the RICS encourages entry from non-traditional routes and many higher education establishments retain a number of places for candidates who do not have any of the above traditional qualifications
- High National Diplomas and Certificates in a cognate area with passes at a high level are also recognised as an entry qualification to an RICS first degree course at advanced level.

Tech RICS. For many years the RICS has been promoting a 'two tier' profession, the lower technical tier being provided by technicians or Tech RICS. One of the routes leading to Tech RICS is through the completion of the College of Estate Management's Diploma in Surveying Practice. Entry to the course is typically:

- 'A' Level at grade C or above in a relevant subject
- HNC/HND in relevant subjects (merits and distinctions recognised in the final award)
- A relevant professional qualification or at least 10 years' relevant experience in the property and construction profession with evidence of 5 years' appropriate structured learning (Level 1 module exemption only).

Tech RICS can be a route to full corporate membership of the RICS.

Continuing professional development and lifelong learning

Since 1984 continuing professional development (CPD) has been mandatory for all corporate members and is a process by which practicing surveyors can keep pace with the latest professional standards and practices whilst monitoring current levels of knowledge.

CPD can be grouped into four main categories:

- Professional work-based activities
- Personal activities outside work
- Courses, seminars and conferences, and
- Self-directed and informal learning.

Lifelong learning is defined as: 'a learning activity undertaken through life with the aim of improving knowledge, skills and competence within a personal and/or employer-related perspective. It is seen as a key element of CPD and an important tool in maintaining a person's employability in a rapidly changing business environment.'

In addition to the quantity surveyor, other professionals are involved in the design and the delivery of a construction project, collectively they are called the design team:

Project manager

The role of the project manager is one that has emerged over the past 30 years or so. Latterly, the term 'project manager' has been used to refer to a quantity surveyor working for the client side in private practice, and the term 'quantity surveyor' is used to refer to a quantity surveyor working for a contracting organisation. This is by no means universal, especially outside the UK where the term 'quantity surveyor' is more universally used to describe the quantity surveyor irrespective of where or for whom they work. Thus, in the UK it is possible for a private practice to supply both quantity surveying and project management services for the same project and client. Project managers may be drawn from all building professionals with the appropriate training and expertise.

The project manager therefore represents the client's interests from the initial inception to the completion and commissioning of a project. For the client, the main advantage of using a project manager is the establishment of a single point of contact. The client simply communicates with the project manager instead of having to decide which of the design team may have an answer to a particular query. Training and qualifications for project managers are generally at post graduate level, typically MSc.

Architect

Traditionally in the UK the architect is regarded as the leader of the design team and the first person to be appointed by a client at

the start of a new project. So much so, that traditional single-stage tendering is sometimes referred to still as 'architect-led tendering'.

Until recently, it was usual for the majority of a quantity surveyor's work to come via the architect. This has changed to some extent with quantity surveyors and other members of the design team winning work in their own right. Perhaps the most difficult part of the architect's role is to interpret a client's user requirements and transform them into a building. Architects can also act as contract administrators, although increasingly this role is being taken over by others. Unlike the rest of Europe most architects work within private practice, with a few working for contractors or developer. The UK is home to some of the largest firms of commercial architects in the world.

The work of architects influences every aspect of our built environment, from the design of energy efficient buildings to the integration of new buildings in sensitive contexts. Architects work closely with other members of the construction industry including engineers, builders, surveyors, local authority planners and building control officers. The Royal Institute of British Architects and The Royal Incorporation of Architects in Scotland are the professional institutes for architects in the UK.

Building surveyor

Building surveying is a comparatively new profession, being a branch of the RICS General Practice section until the 1970s when it became a separate division within the RICS. Key to building surveying is an in-depth knowledge of building pathology, and building surveyors can frequently be found working on historic and conservation projects. For smaller new build contracts, building surveyors can also take on the design role and contract administration.

Structural engineer

A structural engineer is involved in the design and supervision of the construction of all kinds of structures such as houses, theatres, sports stadia, hospitals, bridges, oil rigs, space satellites and office blocks. The central strength of a building lies in the framework, often hidden, that supports the shape and design concept produced by the architects and is integral to the completed project's function. To the chartered structural engineer, the considerations of strength, shape and function are paramount in their conception of the framework of a structure. Having chosen appropriate materials such as steel, brick, concrete or timber,

they then need to design the structure and make all the necessary checks and calculations to ensure that the foundations will be sound, that the floors and roof will not fall down, and that the construction as a whole will remain safe and serviceable for the length of its intended lifetime. The specialist skills of a structural engineer will include: calculating loads and stresses; investigating the strength of foundations; and analysing the behaviour of beams and columns in steel, concrete or other materials. This procedure should ensure that the structure has the strength required to perform its function safely, economically and with a shape and appearance that is visually satisfying.

Civil engineer

Civil engineers are involved with the design, development and construction in a huge range of projects in the built and natural environment. Their role is central to ensuring the safe, timely and well-resourced completion of infrastructure projects in many areas, including: highways construction, waste management, coastal development and geotechnical engineering.

Consulting civil engineers liaise with clients to plan, manage, design and supervise the construction of projects. They work in a number of different settings and, with experience, can run projects as project managers. Within civil engineering, consulting engineers are the designers; contracting engineers turn their plans into reality. Consulting civil engineers provide a wide range of services to clients. During the early stages of a career, work will involve taking responsibility for minor projects; although the size of the projects may increase as experience is gained. Typical work activities include:

- Undertaking technical and feasibility studies and site investigations
- Developing detailed designs
- Assessing the potential risks of specific projects, as well as undertaking risk management in specialist roles
- Supervising tendering procedures and putting together proposals
- Managing, supervising and visiting contractors on site and advising on civil engineering issues
- Managing budgets and other project resources
- Managing change (as the client may change their mind about the design) and identifying, formalising and notifying relevant parties of changes in the project

- Scheduling material and equipment purchases and delivery
- Attending public meetings and displays to discuss projects, especially in a senior role
- Adopting all relevant requirements around issues such as building permits, environmental regulations, sanitary design, good manufacturing practices and safety on all work assignments
- Ensuring that a project runs smoothly and that the structure is completed on time and within budget
- Correcting any project deficiencies that affect production, quality and safety requirements prior to final evaluation and project reviews.

Infrastructure is the thing that supports our daily life; roads and harbours, railways and airports, hospitals, sports stadiums and schools, access to drinking water and shelter from the weather. Infrastructure adds to our quality of life, and because it works, we take it for granted. Only when parts of it fail, or are taken away, do we realise its value. In most countries, a civil engineer with have graduated from a post-secondary school with a degree in civil engineering, which requires a strong background in mathematics, economics and the physical sciences; this degree is typically a four-year degree, though many civil engineers continue on to obtain a masters, engineer, doctoral and post-doctoral degree. In many countries, civil engineers are subject to licensure, and often, persons not licensed may not call themselves 'civil engineers'.

Building services engineer

Building services engineers are responsible for ensuring the cost-effective and environmentally sound and sustainable design and maintenance of energy using elements in buildings. They have an important role in developing and maintaining buildings and their components, to make the most effective use of natural resources and protect public safety. This includes all equipment and materials involved with heating, lighting, ventilation, air conditioning, electrical distribution, water supply, sanitation, public health, fire protection, safety systems, lifts, escalators, façade engineering and even acoustics.

While the role increasingly demands a multidisciplinary approach, building services engineers tend to specialise in one of the following areas:

- Electrical engineering
- Mechanical engineering, and
- Public health.

Activities will vary according to the specialist area of work and whether the building services engineer is employed by a single organisation or a consultancy, but tasks typically involve:

- Advising clients and architects on energy use and conservation in a range of buildings and sites, aiming to minimise the environmental impact and reduce the carbon footprint
- Managing and forecasting spend, using whole life cycle costing techniques, ensuring that work is kept to budget
- Developing and negotiating project contracts and agreeing these with clients, if working in consultancy, and putting out tenders
- Attending a range of project groups and technical meetings
- Working with detailed diagrams, plans and drawings
- Using specialist computer-aided design (CAD) software and other resources to design all the systems required for the project
- Designing site-specific equipment as required
- Commissioning, organising and assessing the work of contractors
- Overseeing and supervising the installation of building systems and specifying maintenance and operating procedures
- Monitoring building systems and processes
- Facilities management
- Ensuring that the design and maintenance of building systems meets legislative and health and safety requirements.

The professional institution for building services engineers is the Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers. There are a variety of grades of membership depending on qualifications and experience.

The clerk of works

The clerk of works is the architect's representative on site and usually a tradesman with many years practical experience.

- 1882 – formed as 'The Clerk of Works Association'
- 1903 – Renamed the 'Incorporated Clerks of Works Association of Great Britain'
- 1947 – Became 'The Institute of Clerks of Works Great Britain Incorporated'.

The job title 'clerk of works' is believed to derive from the thirteenth century when 'clerics' in holy orders were accepted as being more literate than their fellows, and were left to plan and supervise the 'works' associated with the erection of churches and other religious property. By the nineteenth century the role had expanded to cover the majority of building works, and the clerk of works was drawn from experienced tradesmen who had wide knowledge and understanding of the building process.

The clerk of works, historically as well as now, is a very isolated profession on site, most easily associated with the idiom 'poacher turned gamekeeper'. The clerk of works is the person who must ensure quality of both materials and workmanship and, to this end, must be absolutely impartial and independent in any decisions and judgements. They cannot normally, by virtue of the quality role, be employed by the contractor – only the client, and normally by the architect on behalf of the client. Their role is not to judge, but simply to report (through exhaustive and detailed diary notes) all occurrences that are relevant to the role.

Experience in the many facets of the building trade is essential and, in general terms, most practitioners will have 'come from the tools' in the first place. When originally formed, the Association was to allow those who were required to operate in isolation on site a central organisation to look after the interests of their chosen profession; be it through association with other professional bodies, educational means or simply through social intercourse amongst their own peers and contemporaries. Essential to this – as the Association expanded – was the development of a central body that could lobby Parliament in relation to their profession, and the quality issues that it stands for.

Although the means of construction, the training of individuals, and the way in which individuals are employed have changed dramatically over the past 120 years, the principles for which the Association was originally formed remain sacrosanct.

Site manager/agent

The site manager, often referred to as an agent, is the person in charge of a building contract and, as such, must be aware of and in control of all aspects of site operations, including the planning of site progress. It is the manager/agent who has responsibility for both the profitability of operations and adherence to the agreed construction and cost plans.

Site managers/agents are employed by building and construction companies, civil engineering firms and contractors.

Typical work activities include:

- Attending regular site meetings with professionals, including quantity surveyors, building services engineers, foremen, subcontractors, and the client who has commissioned the building
- Maintaining strict quality control procedures – this necessitates regular testing of materials, visual inspections of work, and frequent tours of the site
- Conducting regular site safety checks
- Ensuring the project runs to schedule and to budget, and finding solutions to problems that may cause delays, i.e. late arrival of materials.

Recent graduates are unlikely to take on a full site manager/agent role until the necessary site engineering experience is gained. However, the period of apprenticeship or training in the role of site engineer appears to be shortening, with firms forced to promote graduates earlier.

Training and education

The CIOB offers a qualifications framework for trainee and practicing site managers/agents. Progression is normally to contracts management or project management. A number of site managers/agents are self-employed.

UK PROFESSIONALS AND THE EU

UK construction professionals have always been in demand worldwide. With the establishment of the single European market in 1992, many professionals began expanding their practices into Europe, with varying degrees of success.

On the recognition of professional qualifications the EU Directive 2005/36/EC allows holders of a regulated professional qualification to pursue their profession in another EU member state.

REGULATION AND CONTROL OF THE CONSTRUCTION PROCESS

Where and what you can build in the UK is heavily controlled. Before undertaking most building projects, it is first necessary to obtain planning permission and Building Regulation approval.

Planning permission

The main statutes governing planning law are:

- Town and Country Planning Act 1990
- Planning (Listed Building and Conservation Areas) Act 1990
- Planning and Compensation Act 1991
- Planning and Compulsory Purchase Act 2004.

The purpose of the planning system is to protect the environment as well as public amenities and facilities. The planning control process is administered by local authorities and exists to 'control the development and use of land and buildings for the best interests of the community'. The levels of planning are:

- Regions set out regional policy through Regional Planning Guidance
- Structure Plans establish broad planning policies at county council level, and finally
- Local plans set out detailed policy at district council level.

There are three types of planning permission, all of which are subject to a fee that can range from hundreds to thousands of pounds, depending on the scale of the proposed project:

- Outline. This is an application for a development in principle without detail of construction, etc. Generally used for large scale developments to get permission in principal
- Reserved matters. A follow-up to an outline application stage
- Full planning permission. Sometimes referred to as detailed planning permission when a fully detailed application is made. Permission when granted is valid for six years.

If planning permission is refused then there is an appeals process, although appeal can only be made on certain matters, listed below. Appeals are made to the Secretary of State for the Environment, Transport and the Regions, the National Assembly for Wales or the Scottish Executive. Allowable reasons for appeal are:

- Properties in conservation areas
- Non-compliance with local development plan
- Property is subject to a covenant
- Planning permission already exists
- Infringements of rights of way.

Appeal may not be made on the ground of:

- Loss of view
- Private issues between neighbours
- Loss of privacy
- Etc.

Prior to a proposed development, it is thoroughly recommended that the Structure Plans are read and understood. Buildings erected without planning permission will have a demolition order served on them and the structure will be taken down and destroyed.

Building Regulations

Even when planning permission is not necessary, most building work is subject to the requirements of the Building Regulations. There are exemptions such as buildings belonging to the Crown, the British Airports Authority and the Civil Aviation Authority. Building Regulations ensure that new and alterations work are carried out to an agreed standard that protects the health and safety of people in and around the building. Builders and developers are required by law to obtain building control approval, which is an independent check that the Building Regulations have been complied with. There are two types of building control providers: the local authority and approved private inspectors.

The documents which set out the regulations are:

- The Building Act 1984
- The Building Regulations 2000 for England and Wales, as amended
- The Building (Scotland) Act 2003
- The Building (Scotland) Regulations 2004.

The Building Regulations 2000, England and Wales, are a series of Approved Documents. Each Approved Document contains the Building Regulations relevant subject areas. This is then followed by practical and technical guidance (that include examples) detailing the regulations. The current set of approved documents is in 13 parts and include details of areas such as: Structural, Fire Safety, Electrical Safety, etc. In Scotland the Approved Documents are replaced with Technical Handbooks.

Contravention of the Building Regulation is punishable with a fine or even a custodial sentence plus, of course, the destruction and rebuilding of the works which does not comply with the regulations.

There are two approaches to complying with Building Regulations:

- Full plan application submission, when a set of plans is submitted to the local authority who checks them and advises whether they comply or whether amendments are required. The work will also be inspected as work proceeds
- Building notice application, when work is inspected as the work proceeds and the applicant is informed when work does not comply with the Building Regulations. The work is also inspected as work proceeds.

Once approval is given and a building notice is approved, it is valid for three years.

Health and safety

The construction industry is one of the most dangerous in the UK. In the last 25 years, over 2800 people have died from injuries they received as a result of construction work. Many more have been injured or made ill.

Efficient site organisation is of vital importance from two aspects:

- Safety and
- Efficient working.

Safety – key statistics; source, Health and Safety Executive (HSE).

- In 2007/08, 31% of all worker fatalities were on construction sites (72 operatives killed in 2007/08)
- As many as 15% of all major employee injuries (3764 in 2007/08) were construction related
- There were 7446 over 3 day injuries to employees (2007/08)
- 3.2 million working days lost per year due to injury and ill-health (2007/08).

It is clear from the above figures that for a number of reasons the UK construction sector has a poor record in health and safety matters. In an attempt to improve the industries attitude to health and safety the Construction (Design and Management) Regulations were introduced in 1994 in order to comply with EU legislation. The CDM (1994) Regulations made the duties on clients, and designers were made explicit by identifying the need to reduce risk by better coordination, management and cooperation. Without doubt, the introduction of the CDM

Regulations led to major changes in how the industry managed health and safety. Although several years after their introduction, there were concerns from industry and the Health and Safety Executive (HSE) that the regulations were not delivering the improvements in health and safety that were expected. The principal reasons were said to be:

- Slow acceptance, particularly amongst clients and designers
- Effective planning, management, communications and coordination was less than expected
- Competence of organisations and individuals were slow to improve, and
- A defensive verification approach adopted by many, led to complexity and bureaucracy.

During 2002 and 2005 extensive consultations were carried out between the HSE and industry. As a result, in April 2007 the CDM 2007 Regulations came into force, the characteristics which were to:

- Simplify the regulations and improve clarity
- Maximise their flexibility
- Focus on planning and management
- Strengthen requirements on cooperation and coordination and to encourage better integration, and
- Simplify competence assessment, reduce bureaucracy and raise standards.

The CDM 2007 structure is as follows:

- Part 1: Introduction
- Part 2: General management duties applying to all construction projects
- Part 3: Additional duties where projects are notifiable
- Part 4: Worksite health and safety requirements
- Part 5: General
- Supported by a CDM 2007 Approved Code of Practice.

Notifiable construction work under CDM 2007 are construction projects with a non-domestic client and involve:

- Construction work lasting longer than 30 days, or
- Construction work involving 500 person days.

A client's perspective

The definition of a client under CDM 2007 is:

an individual or organisation who in the course or furtherance of a business, has a construction project carried out by another or by himself. This excludes domestic clients from the definition, but not necessarily domestic premises.

A domestic client is someone who lives, or will live, in the premises where the work is carried out. However, the CDM client duties will still apply to domestic premises if the client is a:

- Local authority
- Landlord
- Housing association
- Charity
- Collective of leaseholders
- Or any other trade, business or undertaking (whether for profit or not).

To some the exclusion of domestic clients was a missed opportunity given the pattern of workload in the UK.

Duties on clients can be summarised as follows:

- Check competence and resources of those they appoint
- Allow sufficient time and resources
- Provide key information to designers and contractors – it is for clients to arrange for any gaps in information to be filled, e.g. commissioning an asbestos survey
- Ensure that all those involved in the work coordinate and coordinate their activities
- Ensure that suitable management arrangements are in place
- Ensure that adequate welfare facilities are on site
- Ensure workplaces are designed correctly and comply with Health, Safety and Welfare Regulations 1992 and ensure that construction work does not start unless there is a health and safety plan
- Appoint competent CDM coordinator and provide key information. For notifiable projects, where no CDM coordinator or principal contractor is appointed then the client will be deemed to be the CDM coordinator and subject to their duties.

The role of the CDM Coordinator

Many surveyors are practicing CDM coordinators.

The CDM coordinator is a role new to the CDM 2007 Regulations whose responsibilities are as follows:

- Advise the client about selecting competent designers and contractors
- Help identify what information will be needed by designers and contractors
- Coordinate the arrangements for health and safety of planning and design work
- Ensure that HSE is notified of the project
- Advise on the suitability of the initial construction phase plan
- Prepare a health and safety file.

However, CDM coordinators do NOT have the power to:

- Approve the appointment of other duty holders, although they give advice
- Approve or check designs, although be satisfied the hierarchy is addressed
- Approve or supervise the principal contractor's construction phase plan
- Supervise or monitor work on site.

Who can be a CDM coordinator?

- Any person or body provided the competency requirements given in the Approved Code of Practice are met
- The duties can be carried out by a:
  - client
  - principal contractor
  - contractor
  - designer, or
  - full-time CDM coordinator.

SUSTAINABILITY AND THE QUANTITY SURVEYOR

Perhaps the most important influence on construction and the professions since the turn of the millennium is the prominence given to sustainable issues.

If this book had been written ten years ago, then sustainability would not have been an issue; seven years ago sustainability issues were starting to be discussed, but were considered only to be of interest to tree-hugging cranks. Welcome to the second decade of the twenty-first century where sustainability and the need to be badged a green construction organisation is seen to be vital to maintain market share.

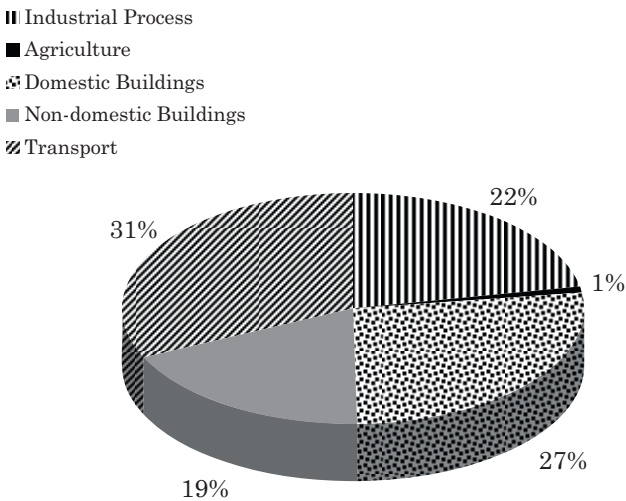


Figure 1.3 UK Carbon emissions (Source: BRE/BRECSU)

The Stern Review (2006) came to the conclusion that 'an overwhelming body of scientific evidence now clearly indicates that climate change is a serious and urgent issue. The Earth's climate is rapidly changing, mainly as a result of increases in greenhouse gases caused by human activities'. As illustrated in Figure 1.3, buildings (domestic and non-domestic) account for nearly 50% of UK carbon emissions and it is for this reason that such importance has been given both by the European Union and the UK governments on the introduction of Energy Performance Certificates (EPCs) and Display Energy Certificates (DECs). It is the stated long-term goal in the UK to reduce carbon emissions by 60% by 2050.

Legislative background

The European Union Directive 2002/91/EC on the Energy Performance of Buildings Directive (EPBD) became law on 4 January 2003. This made it mandatory for EPCs and Display Energy Certificates (DEC) to be available for constructed, marketed or rented buildings including non-dwellings by 4 January 2009, at the latest. The EU directive was implemented in the UK by means of:

- The Housing Act 2004, Section 134
- The Home Information Pack (No. 2) Regulations 2007
- The Energy Performance of Buildings (Certificate and Inspections) (England and Wales) Regulations 2007/991
- Similar enabling legislation was introduced for the devolved administrations of Scotland (The Housing (Scotland) Act 2006) and Northern Ireland.

Even before the full implementation of the EPBD, plans were at an advanced stage to revise the legislation with, amongst other things, a public consultation that closed in July 2008. It is expected that by 2013 the new directive, currently referred to as EPBD2, will include:

- Further steps to act on carbon emissions
- A reduction in the threshold for floor areas that is included in the legislation

Prior to the introduction of EPCs a series of other models were developed to assess the energy performance of buildings across the UK, namely EcoHomes and BREEAM.

EcoHomes points

Now superseded by the Code for Sustainable Homes, except in Scotland, some development projects still have a requirement for this assessment.

EcoHomes assesses the green performance of houses over a number of criteria by reducing:

- CO_2 emissions from transport and operational energy
- Main water consumption
- The impact of materials used
- Pollutants harmful to the atmosphere

and by:

- Improving the indoor environment.

BREEAM

The Building Research Establishment Assessment Method (BREEAM) has been developed to assess the environmental performance of both new and existing buildings over the following areas:

- Management: overall management policy, commissioning and procedural issues

- Energy use
- Health and well-being
- Pollution
- Transport
- Land use
- Ecology
- Materials, and
- Water, consumption and efficiency.

Unlike EcoHomes' points, BREEAM covers a range of building types, such as: offices, industrial units, retail units, schools and even leisure centres. BREEAM measures the environmental performance of buildings by awarding credits for achieving levels of performance. The cost of having a BREEAM assessment can be considerable.

What is sustainability?

There are many definitions, as with any new buzz term, people queue up to add their definition in order to gain their five minutes of fame! In reality, it would appear to mean different things to different people in different parts of the world, depending on their circumstances. Consequently, there may never be a consensus view on its exact meaning. However, one way of looking at sustainability is 'The ways in which built assets are procured and erected, used and operated, maintained and repaired, modernised and rehabilitated and reused or demolished and recycled constitutes the complete life cycle of sustainable construction activities.'

Why is construction significant in the sustainability big picture?

- Over 90 million tonnes of construction and demolition waste arises annually in the UK alone
- The construction industry spends over £200 million on landfill tax each year
- 13 million tonnes of construction and demolition waste is material that is delivered to sites but never used!
- Over 5 million tonnes of hazardous waste is produced in England and Wales, 21% of which is produced by construction and demolition
- Construction and demolition waste form nearly 30% of all Environment Agency recorded fly tipping incidents

- In addition, around 40% of total energy consumption and greenhouse gas emissions are directly attributable to constructing and operating buildings.

Although high on the face of it, the true cost of waste is generally around 20 times that of the costs due to the following:

- Purchase cost of materials
- Cost of storage, transport and disposal of waste
- Loss of income from selling salvaged materials.

The so-called waste hierarchy has been described as follows:

- Eliminate – avoid producing waste in the first place
- Reduce – minimise the amount of waste you produce
- Re-use – use items as many times as possible
- Recover (recycling, composting, energy) – recycle what you can only after you have re-used it
- Dispose – dispose of what is left in a responsible way.

The process of getting the minimum whole life cost and environmental impact is complex, as illustrated in Figure 1.4. Each design option will have associated impacts, costs and trade-offs, e.g. what if the budget demands a choice between recycled bricks or passive ventilation?

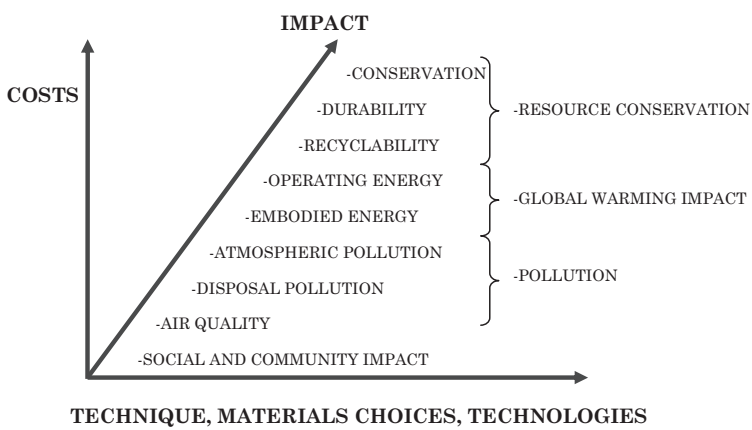


Figure 1.4 Graph showing the minimum whole life cost and environmental impact

The solution to a complex problem will be iterative.

Generally, attention to the following issues will increase the design costs, but not the costs of the building itself and will reduce whole life costs:

- Short supply chains to reduce transport costs
- Exercise waste minimisation and recycling construction
- Building orientation
- Durability and quality of building components, generally chosen to last for the appropriate refurbishment or demolition cycle
- Local sourcing of materials
- Design sensitive to local topological, climatic and community demands
- Construction type – prefabrication, wood or concrete structures.

During procurement supply chains should be aware that components should be chosen selectively to minimise:

- Embodied energy; energy of production and transport
- Atmospheric emissions from boilers, etc.
- Disposal to landfill of non-biodegradable waste
- Air quality contaminants, e.g. solvents and wood preservatives continue to emit volatile chemicals long after construction, though in much smaller quantities and these have been implicated in 'sick building syndrome'
- Replacement due to poor durability
- Use of finite resources, or at least promote the use materials like wood from forests which are being replenished.

THEMES FOR ACTION DURING THE PROCUREMENT PROCESS

The following courses of action should be considered by the quantity surveyor and the procurement team when developing a procurement strategy:

- Re-use existing built assets – consider the need for new build. Is a new building really the answer to the clients needs, or is there another strategy that could deliver a more appropriate solution and add value?
- Design for minimum waste – think whole life costs – involve the supply chain – specify performance requirements and think about

recycled materials. Sustainability in design requires a broad and long term view of the environmental, economic and social impacts of particular decisions. Design out waste both from the process and the life span. As well as the obvious definition waste can also include:

the unnecessary consumption of land, or
lower than predicted yield from an asset.

- Consider Lean construction – Lean construction, in its entirety, is for many a complex and nebulous concept, however the ethos of lean with its focus on the following, is worthy of consideration:

continuous improvement
waste elimination
strong user focus
high quality management of projects and supply chains
improved communications.

Minimise energy in construction and in use

Fully investigate the whole life cost and life cycle cost implication of the materials and systems that are being procured. Draw up environment profiles of components.

Do not Pollute

Understand the environmental impacts and have policies to manage them positively.

Construction can have a direct and obvious impact on the environment. Sources of pollution can include:

waste materials
emissions from vehicles
noise
releases into water, ground and atmosphere.

Set targets

Use benchmarking and similar techniques discussed in chapter six to monitor continuous improvement. UK construction industry KPIs are issued in June each year.

Site waste management plans

Clearly, given the above statistics, the construction industry can address sustainability by reducing waste. From 6 April 2008 Site Waste

Management Plans were required for all construction projects with a value of over £300,000.00. The responsibility for the production of the site waste management plan is jointly shared between the client and the contractor and should contain the following details:

- Types of waste removed from the site
- Identity of the person who removed the waste and their waste carrier registration number
- A description of the waste
- Site that the waste was taken to, and
- Environmental permit or exemption held by the site where the material is taken.

Without doubt, sustainable considerations will continue to be high on the list of construction industry issues for the foreseeable future.

2

Forecasting costs and value

FORECASTING COSTS

Cost management

The quantity surveyor has the responsibility for providing accurate and timely cost advice throughout the duration of a project to a variety of organisations including the client and architect; Table 2.1 shows the various stages in the pre-contract costing process.

The terms commonly associated with cost advice are:

Element

- Part of a building that fulfils a specific function or functions irrespective of its design, specification or construction, e.g. the element external walls provides the external vertical envelope to a building, separating the internal and external environment irrespective of how it may be constructed.
- Each element is fully defined in order that there can be no doubt as to what is included within a particular elemental cost and that all estimates are prepared on the same basis. An example of the BCIS standard list of elements can be found at: http://www.bcis.co.uk/NR/rdonlyres/26309BC7-B9EC-434B-8350-55510883918F/0/StandardFormofCostAnalysisandGuide.pdf

2.F WINDOWS AND EXTERNAL DOORS

2.F.1 Windows
Sashes, frames, linings and trims. Ironmongery and glazing. Shop fronts. Lintels, sills, cavity damp-proof courses and work to reveals of openings.

Table 2.1 RIBA outline plan of work 2007

Preparation	**A Appraisal** Identification of client's needs and objectives, business case and possible constraints on development. Preparation of feasibility studies and assessment of options to enable the client to decide whether to proceed.
	B Design brief Development of initial statement of requirements into the design brief or on behalf of the client confirming key requirements and constraints. Identification of procurement method, procedures, organisational structure and range of consultants and others to be engaged for the project.
Design	**C Concept** Implementation of design brief and preparation of additional data. Preparation of concept design including outline proposals for structural and building services systems, outline specification and preliminary cost plan. Review of procurement process.
	D Design development Development of concept design including structural and building services systems, updated outline specifications and cost plan. Completion of project brief.
	E Technical design Preparation of technical design(s) and specifications, sufficient to coordinate components and elements of the project.
Pre-construction	**F Production information** Preparation of detailed information for construction.
	G Tender documentation Preparation of tender documentation.
	H Tender action Identification and evaluation of potential contractors and specialists. Obtaining and appraising tenders.
Construction	**J Mobilisation** Letting the building contract, appointing the contractor. Issuing information to the contractor. Arranging handover of site.
	K Construction to practical completion Administration of the building contract to practical completion. Provision to the contractor of further information. Review of information.
Use	**L Post practical completion** Administration of the building contract and making final inspections. Assisting building user during initial occupation period. Review of project performance in use.

2.F.2 External doors
Doors, fanlights and sidelights. Frames, linings and trims. Ironmongery and glazing. Lintels, thresholds, cavity damp-proof courses and work to reveals of openings.

2.G Internal walls and partitions
Internal walls, partitions and insulation. Chimneys forming part of internal walls up to plate level. Screens, borrowed lights and glazing. Moveable space-dividing partitions. Internal balustrades excluding items included with 'Stair balustrades and handrails' (2.D.3).

2.H Internal doors
Doors, fanlights and sidelights. Sliding and folding doors. Hatches. Frames, linings and trims. Ironmongery and glazing. Lintels, thresholds and work to reveals of openings.

Reproduced with permission of the BCIS

Cost planning

- Cost planning came to prominence during the 1970s and was devised in an attempt to introduce more rigour and accuracy into the pre-contract costing process
- The key publication that introduced cost planning was Building Bulletin No. 4, published by the then Department of Education and Science in 1972
- The system, described in the following text, is based to some extent on the standard model set out in Building Bulletin No. 4, plus the standard list of elements developed by The Building Cost Information Service (BCIS) that is now the industry standard for presenting cost plans and cost advice
- The BCIS format therefore attempts to produce all cost information in a standard format based on standard rules and parameters
- Note that in order to maintain accuracy in the target cost, there should be no major changes in design after Stage D – Design Development (see Table 2.2).

Cost control

- Planning cost is only half of the story. Once a project commences on site there is a need to control cost targets (set in the pre-contract phase) to ensure that costs do not spiral out of control.

Table 2.2 Element cost planning

	Design sequence	**Process**	**Advice**	**Technique**
A.	Appraisal	Cost planning	Cost range	Interpolation
B.	Design brief	Cost planning	Feasibility study	Interpolation
C.	Concept	Cost planning	Confirm cost limit	Single rate estimating
D.	Design development	Cost planning	Cost plan	Single rate estimating
E.	Technical design	Cost control	Cost checking	Approximate quantities
F.	Production information	Cost control	Cost checking	Approximate quantities
G.	Tender documentation	Cost control	Cost checking	Single rate estimating
H.	Tender action	Cost control	Cost analysis	Elemental analysis of tender

Cost analysis

- Cost planning of new projects is dependent on accurate and well-documented cost information. Cost analysis is the process of analysing and recording the cost data of projects once tender information has been received
- A cost analysis is a record of how cost has been distributed over the elements of a building; it includes a brief description of the overall nature of the project and specification notes on the general level of finishes and so on
- A cost analysis should be prepared as soon as possible after tenders have been received for a number of reasons, such as currency of the cost information and familiarity with the project
- One of the objectives of elemental cost planning is to make it easier for the design team and client to see at a glance where the cost of the project has been allocated
- The cost allocation should become more detailed as the design develops, although the overall budget should remain unchanged.

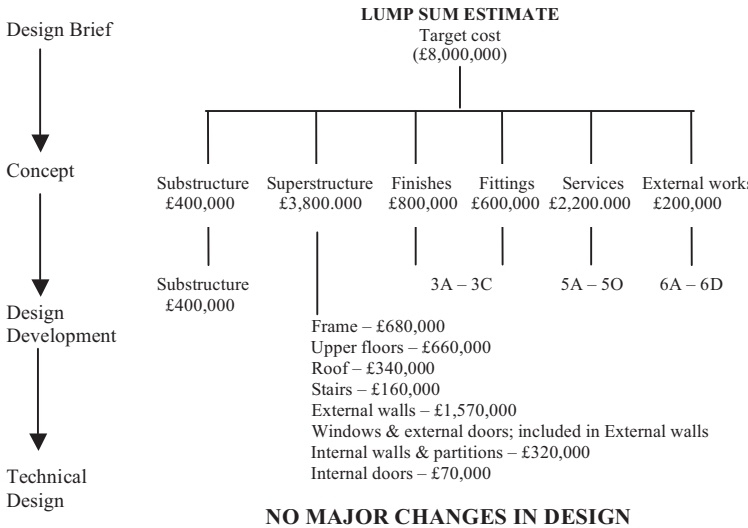


Figure 2.1 Cost planning

As illustrated in Figure 2.1, a target cost is set at the feasibility stage and as the information becomes more detailed, this sum is allocated over first the element groups and the building elements themselves.

Cost significant elements

- The BCIS standard list of elements comprises thirty-four individual elements and seven groups of elements. Some of these elements/element groups will be larger, in value terms than others. For example, an analysis of several cost analyses would show a range of values for two elements as follows:
  External walls: 12–20% +
  Services: 15–30% +
- It therefore makes sense to concentrate more on the cost significant elements and less on elements such as stairs and drainage, during the preparation of cost estimates. It is also good practice once the preliminary estimate is complete to check that the

amount allocated to each group of elements is in an acceptable 'ball park' range for comparable building types
- A useful guide to measurement conventions is The Code of Measurement Practice: A Guide for Property Professionals, RICS Property Measurement Group, see Chapter 3.

Design risk

- An amount included in the budget at Stage B (Design Brief), after the elemental cost has been calculated, based on the perceived risk that the design may undergo changes that will impact on the budget during Stages C and D.

Price risk

- An amount included to reflect the estimated increases in cost between the preparation of the cost plan and the tender date based on tender based index.

APPROXIMATE ESTIMATING TECHNIQUES

Interpolation

Interpolation is a technique used in the early stages of the design sequence when information, drawn or otherwise, on the proposed project is in short supply. It requires a good deal of skill and experience and is the process of adding in or deducting from the cost analysis figure to arrive at a budget for a new project. Therefore in preparing a budget for a new project assume, a cost analysis has been chosen as the basis for the estimate. However, the cost analysis will contain items that are not required for the new project and these must be deducted. For example, in the new project the client wishes to exclude the installation of air conditioning, included in the cost analysis project, from the estimate and this will have to be deducted from the budget; but on the other hand the client wishes to include CCTV throughout and the cost of providing this must be calculated and added in. It is important, as described later, to adjust costs to take account of differences in price levels. The process continues until all identified differences have been accounted for.

Other credible approaches to approximate estimating that are available to the quantity surveyor are:

- The unit and square metre methods, generally used for preliminary estimates when firm information is scarce
- Approximate quantities and elemental cost planning for later stage estimates
- Other approaches are often cited, most notably cubic metre and storey enclosure methods, but the accuracy of these approaches are somewhat dubious and they are seldom used in practice and are not considered here.

Unit method

The unit method is a single price rate method based upon the cost per functional unit of the building, a functional unit being, for example, a hotel bedroom. This method is often regarded as a way of making a comparison between buildings in order to satisfy the design team that the costs are reasonable in relation to other buildings of a similar nature. It is not possible to adjust the single rate price and therefore is very much a ball park approach. Suitable for clients who specialise in one type of project; for example, hotel or supermarket chains, where it can be surprisingly accurate.

Other examples where unit costs may apply are:

- Schools – cost per pupil
- Hospitals – cost per bed space.

Superficial method

The superficial method is a single price rate method based on the cost per square metre of the building. The use of this method should be restricted to the early stages of the design sequence and is probably the most frequently used method of approximate estimating. Its major advantage is that most published cost data is expressed in this form. The method is quick and simple to use though, as in the case of the unit method, it is imperative to use data from similarly designed projects. Another advantage of the superficial method is that the unit of measurement is meaningful to both the client and the design team. Although the area for this method is relatively easy to calculate, it does require skill in assessing the price rate. The rules for calculating the area are:

- All measurements are taken from the internal face of external walls. No deduction is made for internal walls, lift shafts, stairwells, etc. – gross internal floor area

- Where different parts of the building vary in function, then the areas are calculated separately
- External works and non-standard items such as piling are calculated separately and then added into the estimate. Figures for specialist works may be available from sub-contractors and specialist contractors.

For example:

Gross floor area for office block in Figure 2.2

$10.0 \times 25.0 = 250.00$

Less

$2/3.0 \times 7.50 = 45.00$

Area per floor	$205.00 \times 5 = 1025.00\ m^2 \times £1100\ m^2 =$	£1,127,500.00
Basement	$7.00 \times 25.00 = 175.00 m^2 \times £1300\ m^2 =$	£227,500.00
Estimate for block		**£1,355,000.00**

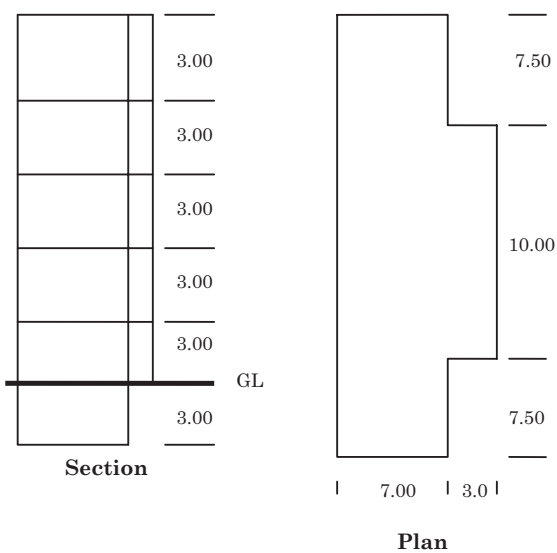


Figure 2.2 Office block section and plan

Approximate quantities

Regarded as the most reliable and accurate method of estimating, provided that there is sufficient information to work on. Depending on the experience of the surveyor, measurement can be carried out fairly quickly using composite rates to save time.

The rules of measurement are simple, although it must be said, they are not standardised and tend to vary slightly from one surveyor to another.

- One approach involves grouping together items corresponding to a sequence of operations and relating them to a common unit of measurement; unlike the measurement for a bill of quantities, where items are measured separately
- Composite rates are then built up from the data available in the office for that sequence of operations
- All measurements are taken as gross over all but the very large openings
- Initially, the composite rates require time to build up, but once calculated they may be used on a variety of estimating needs
- Reasonably priced software packages are now available.

An example for a composite is shown below for substructure:

> Excavate trench width exceeding 0.30 m maximum depth not exceeding 1.00 m: earthwork support, filling to excavations, disposal of excavated material off site, in situ concrete (20 N/m^2 aggregate) foundation poured against earth, 275 mm cavity brickwork to 150 mm above ground level, bitumen based dpc, facings externally – Cost per m.

Normally, if measured in accordance with SMM7, these items would be measured separately as described in Chapter 3. However, when using approximate quantities a composite rate that includes a mix of units of measurement and applied to a linear metre of trench, is calculated.

Builder's quantities

Builder's quantities are quantities measured and described from the builder's view point, rather than in accordance with a set of prescribed rules, such as SMM7. There can be quite a significant difference between the builder's quantities and approximate quantities.

For example, SMM7 may require earthwork support to be included, whereas in practice this may be omitted from the site operation with the sides of the excavation being battered back instead; the more pragmatic approach being reflected in the measurement and pricing of a builder's quantities.

Elemental cost planning

A cost plan is an estimate presented in a standard elemental format. The industry norm is the BCIS list of elements referred to earlier. The estimate is based on a cost analysis of a previous project and adjusted to suit the new project. The characteristics of elemental cost planning are as follows:

- Costs are related to elements of the building – a feature that is not possible to achieve when using other methods of calculating to produce a lump sum estimate
- The elemental cost allocation is of use to the client and the design team as it is possible to see from an early stage in the design sequence how much of the project budget has been allocated to various aspects and elements of the project
- The estimate increases in detail as the design development progresses. Initial costs are allocated over the BCIS groups of element:
  - Substructure
  - Superstructure
  - Internal finishes
  - Fittings
  - Services
  - External works
  - Preliminaries and contingencies
- By the design development stage it should be possible to allocate costs over the full range of BCIS elements. This transparency allows costs to be reallocated while keeping the overall target cost the same
- Costs are based on a cost analysis of a previously similar project and adjusted for a range of factors as described below
- Costs are presented in a variety of ways, with the cost of preliminaries shown separately or apportioned amongst the element, for example, Table 2.3
- It can be seen from Table 2.3 that the cost per m^2 of gross floor area is £62.6, whereas the element unit rate is £313 per m^2 of

Table 2.3 Cost of preliminaries and contingencies shown separately

Element	Total cost of element (£)	Cost per m^2 gross floor area (£)	Element unit quantity	Element unit rate (£)
1. Substructure	313,000	62.6	1000 m^2	313

element. Given the choice, the more accurate cost information is the element unit rate as it reflects the actual cost of providing a specific element, whereas the cost per m^2 of floor area can be corrupted by other factors such as building plan shape, etc.

Sources of cost information

Not all cost information has the same reputation for accuracy and reliability and care should be exercised when choosing cost data for a new estimate.

- Cost analyses as published by the BCIS. The Building Cost Information Service has, since its inception in 1970, published a wealth of cost data on a wide variety of building types. The advantages of the BCIS are that the service is available, for a subscription fee, online and is published in standard cost analysis format. The BCIS is also a useful source of cost data for calculating cost forecasts, etc.
- Cost information from published price books such as Spons or Laxtons. Price books are published annually and contain a range of prices for standard bills of quantities items. Because they are in book form, the information tends to be several months old.
- Priced bills of quantities from previous projects. A useful source of information as the cost information tends to be current. As with other forms of cost data, there is a need to adjust for differences in location, etc.
- Cost analysis and cost models produced in-house. Depending on the size of an organisation, perhaps the most reliable source of cost information, partly due to the fact that it is easier to ensure good quality control on the data. Also data presented in this format will be easily understood and interpreted. A disadvantage is the time and cost taken to prepare and store the information.

Cost planning example at the Concept and Design Development Stages (Stages C and D – RIBA Outline Plan of Work)

The object of this stage is to allocate the budget target cost given to the client during the feasibility stage over the range of standard elements.

Cost planning is a continuing process that gradually becomes more detailed as the design process progresses, as illustrated in Table 2.1. The design team has formulated a concept design and the object of the first estimate is to arrive at a cost limit that the client is happy with to which the design team can prepare their detailed design. Assuming that the client has approved the target cost, the elemental cost planning can begin.

To prepare an elemental cost plan the following information should be assembled:

- A cost analysis of a previous similar building
- Sketch plans and elevations of the proposed project
- Outline specification/levels of services installation, etc. for the proposed project.

Therefore, when preparing an elemental cost plan, the first task is to select an appropriate cost analysis as discussed above. If using the BCIS, the selection can be facilitated by using their online service, where it is possible to enter the required parameters of the new project in the search facility. Several cost analyses will be selected and from these the most appropriate is chosen and used as the basis for the elemental cost plan. The selection is based on a comparison between the cost plan project and the available cost analyses over a range of parameters and should be done carefully. The criteria for selection are follows:

- Form of construction
- Level of specification.

In addition, cost significant elements should be examined for similarity.

Even after this process, the data in the cost analysis will need to be adjusted before being used for the cost plan. The front sheet of a cost analysis contains a wealth of information relating to the analysed project that can be used in the adjustment process.

The adjustments to cost analysis data can be categorised as follows:

- Price levels
- Quantity
- Quality.

Price levels

Differences in price levels between cost analysis and cost plan data are adjusted using the following:

- Location indices
- Building cost indices
- Tender price indices.

Measures of changes in items such as location, building costs or tender prices are performed using index numbers. Index numbers are a means of expressing data relative to a base year. For example, in the case of a building cost index, a selection of building materials is identified, recorded and given the index number 100. Let us say for the sake of argument that the cost of the materials included in the base index is £70.00 in January 2005. Every 3 months the costs are recorded for exactly the same materials and any increase or decrease in cost is reflected in the index as follows:

Building cost index January 2005 = 100
Building cost index January 2009 = 135

This, therefore, represents an increase of 35% in the cost of the selected materials and this information can be used if, for example, data from a 2005 cost analysis was being used as the basis for calculating costs for an estimate in January 2009.

Example:

Analysis cost for a steel framed office project (Jan 2005) £3,500,000

$$£3{,}500{,}000 \times \frac{135}{100} = £4{,}725{,}000$$

Building cost information such as this can also be used to try to forecast how costs may alter in the future, say during the construction phase of a project.

Any variation in the cost of either of these basics will influence the cost of the works. Cost indices are an attempt to measure price

variations that occur between tenders obtained at different times in differing places. The quantity surveyor is able to study the various indices, together with predicted future cost trends – be it a rise or fall and any regional variations – in order to facilitate adjustments to historical cost information. Indices reflect changes and all indices require the selection of a base period (usually this is set at 100), any increases or decreases being reflected in the indices.

Location indices

Tender price levels vary according to the region of the country where the work is carried out. Generally speaking, London and the South East of England are the most expensive and the regional variations are reflected in a location index that is used to adjust prices. The BCIS annually publishes a set of location indices that cover most parts of the UK and these can be used to adjust in cases where the cost analysis building and the cost plan building are in different locations.

Building cost indices

The cost of any building is determined, primarily, by the cost of the labour and materials involved in its erection.

Building cost indices measure changes in the cost of materials, labour and plant to the contractor. They ignore any changes in profit levels, overheads, productivity, discounts, etc.; therefore, they effectively measure changes in the notional rather than actual costs.

Building cost indices track movements in the input costs of construction work in various sectors, incorporating national wage agreements and changes in material prices as measured by government index series. They provide an underlying indication of price changes and differential movements in various work sectors, but do not reflect changes in market conditions affecting profit and overheads provisions, site wage rates, bonuses or material price discounts and premiums. In a world of global markets, building cost indices can be influenced by many factors including demands in immerging and developing markets such as China and India, for example, Davis Langdon Indices.

Used to adjust and allow for cost increases between the date of the preparation of the estimate and the tender date.

Tender price indices

Tender price indices are based on what the client has to pay for a building as it takes into account building costs. These indices, therefore, reflect fluctuations in the tendering market.

Tender price indices can be used to adjust for potential increases in cost between the date of the preparation of the cost plan and the actual date the project goes to tender.

Other information

The front cover of the cost analysis should also contain information relating to contract type, procurement strategy, market factors, etc. which prevailed at the date the project was current. All of these factors can affect price levels and should be taken into account when preparing a cost plan:

- Contract type. There are a wide variety of contract forms available (see Chapter 5) and within these contract forms there are a variety of alternatives available. The type of contract used on a project can affect the price and should be allowed for when preparing a cost plan
- Procurement strategy. Similarly, the procurement strategy can affect costs as different strategies will have difference allocations of risk and this will be reflected in price levels, as discussed elsewhere
- Market conditions. When market conditions are buoyant and work is plentiful, contractors may choose to include high profit levels as compared to situations when work is in short supply. Once again, this factor can have an influence of pricing levels and should be taken into account.

Differences in quantity

This adjustment takes account of differences in the elemental quantity of the cost plan and cost analysis projects. Table 2.3 shows the information given in an elemental cost plan; elemental unit quantities and rates should be used for this adjustment.

Differences in quality

The final adjustment is an attempt to allow for differences in quality, say finishes and specification levels

Example – Element 2E – External walls
A cost plan is being prepared for a new six-storey office project with glazed curtain walling.
A cost analysis of a previous similar building has been selected and the costs are adjusted as follows:

Data
Cost analysis

Element unit rate: £745.00/m^2
Element unit quantity: 6100 m^2
Date: Jan 2005 – BCIS Index: 221
Location: West Midlands – BCIS location factor: 0.95

Cost plan

Element unit quantity: 5700 m^2
Date: November 2008 – BCIS Index 260
Location: Yorkshire & Humberside – BCIS location factor: 1.01

Price levels
Adjust for differences in tender price levels as before:

$$£745.0 \times \frac{260}{221} = £876.47$$

Adjust for location,

$$£876.47 \times \frac{1.01}{0.95} = £931.8$$

Quantity
The updated cost can now be multiplied by the element unit quantity for the cost plan project:

$$£931.83 \times 5700\,m^2 = £5{,}311{,}431.00$$

Quality
The cost plan building is to have a higher glazing specification than the cost analysis project:

	£5,311,431.00
Add	
Self-cleaning glass 5700 m^2 @ £15.00/m^2	£85,500.00
Target cost	£5,396,931.00

The process is now continued for the remainder of the elements.

ELEMENTAL COST CONTROL

Cost planning takes place over Stages A–D; Appraisal–Design Development (see Table 2.2) after which cost control takes over. In order for the integrity of the system to be maintained, it is important that no major changes in the design are now made after Stage D. At the Design Development Stage each element should have a cost target; the cost control process involves checking that the cost allocation is realistic, now more detailed information is available, using approximate quantities. Cost checking at the Technical Design Stage involves:

- Checking the detailed design against the outline and scheme design to detect major changes
- Carrying out a cost check of each cost target using approximate quantities
- In the case where a cost target is found to be unrealistic now that detailed information is available, draw up a 'threshold of pain' list for the client setting out the alternatives, namely:
  - work to the revised cost target, but make compensating reductions elsewhere in the building
  - increase the target cost for the project
- Cost checking should be carried out in a systematic manner with some surveyors using a pro forma to record the details.

During the construction phase the cost control process continues with the preparation of Financial Statements. These statements are produced by the quantity surveyor at either monthly or three-monthly intervals and predict the final cost of the project when completed. They require the quantity surveyor to assess the financial effect of variations and other adjustments to the contract that have been issued, or are expected to be issued, and require a good deal of expertise to produce accurate figures and costs.

New Office Block, Woking, Surrey

Financial Statement No. 3

Date 10 March 2009

	£	£
Contract sum		5,474,316
Less Contingencies		36,000
		5,438,316

Adjust for:		
Variation orders Nos 1–34	25,000	
Subcontractors	(6,700)	
Provisional sums	10,000	
Projected variations	36,000	
Contractor's claim	Nil	64,300
Anticipated Final Account		£5,502,616
Exclusions:		
VAT		
Professional fees		

Design and cost

The design of a building can have a major impact on costs. These design factors can be grouped as follows:

- Plan shape
- Height and number of storeys
- Orientation and footprint
- Choice of elements/materials.

Plan shape

The enclosing ratio of a building is a useful rule of thumb to assess the efficiency of a plan shape. It is found by dividing the area of the enclosing envelope by the gross floor area; the smaller the result of the alternatives being compared, the comparatively more economic the design. Figure 2.3 shows three different plan shapes that all provide 100 m^2 of gross floor area, the height of the external envelope is 4 m in all cases.

By applying the enclosing ratio to the above three alternatives the following results are obtained:

$$Plan\ A = \frac{160}{100} = 1.60$$

$$Plan\ B = \frac{200}{100} = 2.00$$

$$Plan\ C = \frac{208}{100} = 2.08$$

It is clear that Plan A gives the best (i.e. lowest) answer with 1.60 metres of enclosing envelope required per m^2 of gross floor area. The amount of external envelope is important as it is one of the cost significant groups of elements, containing external walls and fenestration. It can also be seen that, the more the plan shape moves away from a square, the comparatively more expensive the design becomes.

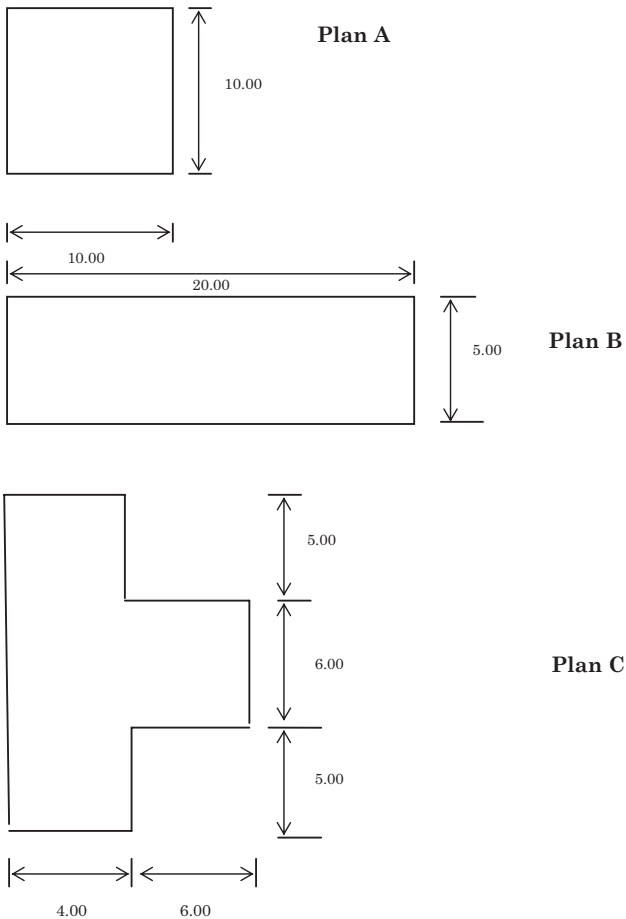


Figure 2.3 Enclosing ratios

In theory, the most economic design solution is a circular plan shape, a circle having the least amount of external envelope per m^2 of gross floor area; however, in practice other costs associated with building with a circular footprint outweigh any cost savings.

Height and number of storeys

The main impact when storey height is increased is on the vertical elements, such as external and internal wall finishes. There will also be an impact on services installations with pipe and cable runs increasing.

The number of storeys in a building can affect costs in the following ways:

- Single-storey structures are comparatively expensive, as the substructure required for a two or three-storey structure is often only marginally bigger than for a single storey
- Buildings with more than three storeys will require a lift installation
- Generally, multi-storey buildings require a large substructure
- Tall buildings require areas devoted to circulation space such as lifts, escape staircases, service floors and plant rooms. These areas have to be deducted from the gross floor area to arrive at net lettable areas
- Maintenance costs will be greater for high rise buildings
- Fire protection will be at a high level.

Orientation and footprints

Should accommodation by provided in one large or groups of smaller buildings? Given the choice, it is better to use one larger building as the cost significant elements are considerably greater when two smaller buildings are used.

Some plan shapes have become the industry norm for certain types of buildings. For example, Figure 2.4 illustrates a widely used plan for hotels that maximises floor area and income with a central corridor and bedrooms on either side.

Note, it should be remembered that factors such as the shape of the site or topography may override the other factors.

Choice of elements/materials

The choice of materials is becoming increasingly important with increased emphasis being placed on sustainability. Care should be

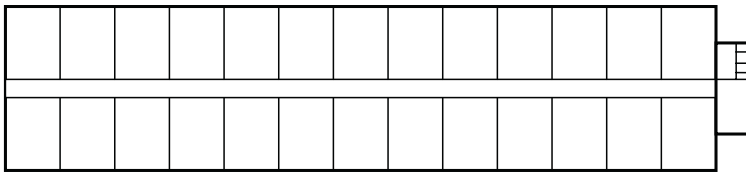


Figure 2.4 Standard hotel floor plan layout

used to take account of initial, running and maintenance costs as well as adaptation and disposal costs.

FORECASTING VALUE

When attempting to forecast costs, value and income the following tools are available.

Sinking funds

Sinking funds are used for investment in wasting assets, e.g. a leasehold property. Given that systems are going to wear out and/or need partial replacement during the currency of a contract it is thought to be prudent to 'save for the rainy day' by investing capital in a sinking fund to meet the cost of repairs, etc. The sinking fund allowance, therefore, becomes a further cost to be taken into account during the evaluation process. Whether this approach is adopted will depend on a number of features including, corporate policy, interest rates, etc. Sinking funds involve investing a sum of money at the end of each year to accumulate to the sum required to replace the asset. The annual sinking fund to replace £1 in 40 years at 10% is as follows:

$$\frac{i}{A-1}$$

where $i = i = \dfrac{R\%}{100}$

$A = (1+i)^n$

n = number of years

$$\frac{0.10}{(1+0.10)^{40}-1} = 0.0023$$

It should be noted that:

- The effect of taxation on the sinking fund should be considered. This can be done as follows:

$$\times \frac{100}{100 - P} \quad \text{where } P = \text{the client's rate of tax}$$

- The cost of replacement will increase over time.

Discounting appraisal techniques

Discounting appraisal techniques are an attempt to evaluate the effect that time has over the worth of income and expenditure. Much of the financial calculation and appraisal of items that form part of a feasibility study such as income, expenditure, etc. have to be evaluated over the life time of the project. Discounting appraisal techniques are normally considered to be superior to conventional methods when doing this due to their implicit recognition of the time value of money. The two main discounting methods used are the net present value (NPV) and the internal rate of return (IRR).

Net present value (NPV)

In essence discounted cash flow involves:

- Preparation of a cash flow table showing year by year:
  - the money which is likely to flow out of the organisation as a result of creating and maintaining the investment
  - the money which is likely to flow into the organisation from the investment
- Calculating the ultimate disposal value of the investment
- Discounting the cash flow table at a selected rate of interest, so as to bring all monies flowing into or out of the organisation, no matter when payments or receipts occurred to the same point in time, i.e. the present value.

The net present value approach (NPV)

Discounting allows the current prices of items, such as materials and components, to be adjusted to take account of the value of money of the life cycle of the product. Discounting cash flows recognises the importance of the timing of the receipt and/or payment of various cash flows by isolating differences in time between them. Discounting

is required to adjust the value of costs, or indeed benefits, which occur in different time periods so that they can be assessed at a single point in time.

The choice of the discount rate is critical and can be problematic as it can alter the outcome of calculation substantially. There are two golden rules that apply:

- In the public sector, follow the recommendations of the Green Book or Appraisal and Evaluation in Central Government, currently recommending a rate of 3.5%
- In the private sector, the rule is to select a rate that reflects the real return currently being achieved on investments.

The discount rate can be considered almost as the rate of return required by the investor which includes costs, risks and lost opportunities. The mathematical expression used to calculate discounted present values are set out below:

$$\text{Present value (PV)} = \frac{1}{(1+i)^n}$$

where (i) = rate of interest expected or discount rate and (n) = the number of years.

This present value multiplier/factor is used to evaluate the present value of sums, such as replacement costs or money that will be received or is planned to be received at say 10 or 15 year intervals in the future.

Assume that you wish to acquire *now* an investment that will produce a return of 6% in *one year's time*. What is the present-day worth or value of such an investment? It can be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Present value} = \frac{100}{106} = 0.9434$$

Therefore, by multiplying the expected return by the above discounting factor, the present worth can be calculated. So, if the anticipated return in 1 year's time is £10,000, the present value is:

$$\text{Present value (PV) @ 6\%} = £10{,}000 \times 0.9434 = £9434$$

Similarly, if a benefit, with a monetary value at present values, was planned to be received by a client as part of a deal in, say, 15 years time, the present value can be calculated as follows:

Present value and benefit × PV @ £1 3.5% = £149,225

£250,000.00 0.5969

Calculating the present value of the differences between streams of costs and benefits provides the NPV of an option and this is used as the basis of comparison as follows: two alternative road schemes have been proposed and both are expected to deliver improvements and time savings (Table 2.4).

Option A requires £10 million in initial capital expenditure to realise benefits of £2.5 million per annum for the following four years.

Option B requires £5 million in initial capital expenditure to realise benefits of £1.5 million per annum for the following four years.

The significance of the results in Table 2.4 is that:

- Option A produced a negative net present value. That is to say, the costs are greater than the benefits, whereas
- Option B produced a positive net present value. That is to say, the benefits are greater than the costs and is clearly the better alternative. A marginal or zero net present value is indicative of a do nothing option.

Table 2.4 Calculations of two alternative road schemes

Year	**0**	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**NPV**
Discount factor (PV £1)	1	0.9962	0.9335	0.9019	0.8714	
Option A						
Costs/benefits (£)	–10.00 m	2.50 m	2.50 m	2.50 m	2.50 m	
Present value (£)	–10.00 m	2.42 m	2.33 m	2.25 m	2.18 m	–0.82 m
Option B						
Costs/benefits (£)	–5.00 m	1.50 m	1.50 m	1.50 m	1.50 m	
Present value (£)	–5.00 m	1.45 m	1.40 m	1.35 m	1.31 m	0.51 m

Alternatively, for the example given in Table 2.4, the discounting factor may be calculated as follows:

$$\frac{(1+0.035)^4 - 1}{0.035(1+0.035)^4} = 3.673$$

Consequently, the NPVs for Options A and B can be calculated in a single step as:

$$\text{NPV}_\text{A} = -10 + 3.673 \times 2.5 = -10 + 9.18 = -0.82\,\text{m}$$

$$\text{NPV}_\text{B} = -5 + 3.673 \times 1.5 = -5 + 5.51 = 0.51\,\text{m}$$

Annual equivalent approach

This approach is closely aligned to the theory of opportunity costs (explained earlier), i.e. the amount of interest lost by choosing Option A or Option B as opposed to investing the sum at a given rate percent, is used as a basis for comparison between alternatives. This approach can include the provision of a sinking fund in the calculation in order that the costs of replacement are also taken into account.

In using the annual equivalent approach, the following equation applies:

Present value of £1 per annum (sometimes referred to by actuaries as the Annuity that £1 will purchase).

This multiplier/factor is used to evaluate the present value of sums, such as running and maintenance costs that are paid on a regular annual basis.

$$\text{Present value of £1 per annum} = \frac{(1+i)^n - 1}{i(1+i)^n}$$

where (i) = rate of interest expected or discount rate and (n) = the number of years.

Previously calculated figures for both multipliers are readily available for use from publications such as Parry's Valuation Tables, etc.

Internal rate of return (IRR)

Internal Rate of Return (IRR) is also commonly used in Private Financial Initiative (PFI) contracts (see Chapter 4) to measure the rate of return expected to be earned by private sector capital in a project. The characteristics of IRR are:

- It is most suitable to situations where a project is predicted to produce a negative cash flow during the early years followed by positive cash flows during the latter or final years
- Many investors are as much concerned with the actual rate of interest which they are earning on their capital as they are with the total profit on any particular investment
- It expresses the benefits on investing as a single rate of interest rather than an end profit
- The rate of interest at which all the future cash flows must be discounted in order for the projects net present value to equal zero
- It is defined mathematically as the discount rate which, when applied to discount a series of cash outflows followed by cash inflows, returns a net present value of zero
- It can be thought of as the equivalent constant interest rate at which a given series of cash outflows must be invested in order for the investor to earn a given series of cash inflows as income; for example, a measure of the underlying return the private sector, in the case of a PPP project, expects to receive by investing in the project
- For the purposes of calculating IRRs all funders, including lenders, are considered as investors
- It can be calculated for different cash flow streams of a project, depending on:
  - which category of investor the IRR is being calculated for
  - whether inflation is included in the underlying cash flows
  - whether tax is included in the underlying cash flows.

A technique known as iteration is used to calculate the IRR of the profit. This involves selecting a trial discount rate and then calculating the NPV for that rate. The process is repeated for another rate until two rates are found which both have an NPV very close to and either side of zero, i.e. very low positive NPV and a very low negative NPV. By using linear interpolation, the actual IRR can then be calculated to within a certain degree of accuracy, standard software is available to carry this out and is included as part of the financial model used in investors' calculations (Figure 2.5). Unlike NPV, IRRs

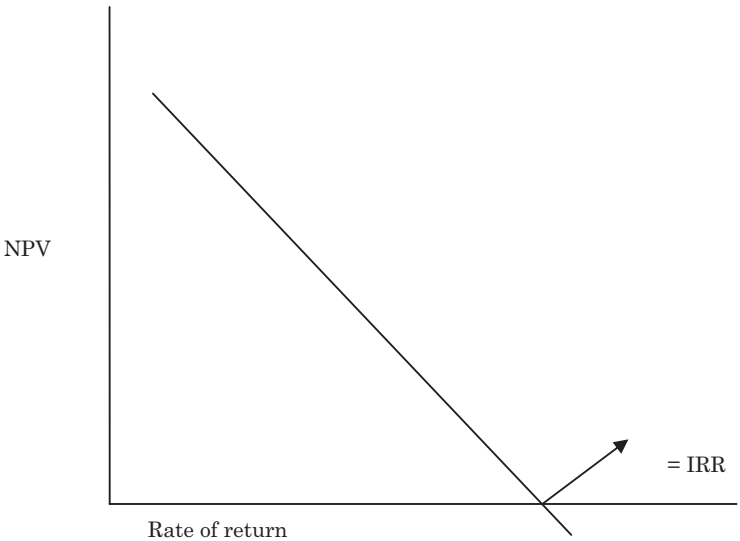


Figure 2.5 Calculating the internal rate of return

cannot be used to value an investment; it is purely a means of analysis and depends for its success on an initial purchase price having already been established.

NPV or IRR?

Net present value
Discount rate – 10%

Year	Discount rate	Option A		Option B	
		Cash flow	NPV	Cash flow	NPV
0	1.000	–1000	–1000	–1000	–1000
1	1.100	340	309	200	182
2	1.210	305	252	235	194
3	1.330	270	203	270	203
4	1.464	235	161	305	208
5	1.611	200	124	340	211
Total		350	49	350	–2

NPV assesses the value of a future cash flow today, whereas IRR measures the investor's return on a project as follows:

Year	Option A			Option B		
	Cash flow	Discount rate	NPV	Cash flow	Discount factor	NPV
0	–1000	1.0000	–1000	–1000	1.0000	–1000
1	340	1.1208	303	200	1.0994	182
2	305	1.2561	243	235	1.2087	194
3	270	1.4078	192	270	1.3288	203
4	235	1.5778	149	305	1.4609	209
5	200	1.7684	113	340	1.6061	212
Total	350		0	350		0

The discount rate that gives an NPV of 0 is the IRR = 12.08% (Option A)
9.94% (Option B)

The higher rate of return from Option A means that the cash is received earlier with this option.

Both methods have their relative advantages and disadvantages and generally speaking IRRs are not a reliable alternative to NPV-based calculations for the measurement of the value of an investment. In addition, IRR has been criticised for certain implicit assumptions. The following list of assumptions is made in both forms of analysis:

- Future cash flows can be estimated with reasonable accuracy, so there is no need to consider risk or uncertainty
- The opportunity cost of capital is known or can be estimated with reasonable accuracy
- All projects are simple investments involving an initial cash outflow followed by a series of inflows
- Investment projects are independent of one another.

In practice, particularly during periods of inflation, risk and uncertainty often need to be taken into account. This is difficult when using NPVs, as present values are in the nature of absolute measures. However, the IRR is expressed as a rate of return so that it can easily be adjusted by a margin to allow for risk. Consequently, for its ease of understanding, its economy of presentation and its flexibility in allowing for risk, IRR is preferable.

THE PROPERTY MARKET AND DEVELOPMENT

Taxation and property development

Health warning: It should be noted that taxation law changes at regular intervals.

The Inland Revenue seeks to classify individuals and companies who build and then dispose of property as follows.

Investors

Investors are individuals or companies who build a property and retain ownership for approximately five or so years before disposal.

Traders

Traders are individuals or companies who build a property and dispose of it for profit on completion.

The revenue has several rules of thumb to determine which of the above classifications a taxpayer belongs to; however, suffice to say that the tax position of investors is far more favourable than traders who are treated, for taxation purposes, as any trader who produces goods or products.

Feasibility reports

Whether in the private or public sector, when a new construction project is proposed the first question early stage in the development process that needs to be addressed by clients and quantity surveyors alike is: will the proposed project prove feasible? Although public sector clients may have different interpretations of feasibility, for the purposes of this section 'feasibility' generally means: will the capital invested in the project make the required yield or profit? This question, in turn, depends on many other factors and variables. Construction is a high risk process – there are so many external influences that can derail the best laid development plans, for example:

- The general economic situation, including interest rates and employment levels
- Government intervention; for example, planning issues and the release of green belt land for development

- Demographics and changing needs of the market
- New entries to the market place/increased competition
- Increase in the cost of materials
- Shortages of labour and materials.

In addition to the above, the property market is uniquely inelastic; this means that, following an increase in demand for a certain type of development, it can take up to two years for supply to come on stream. The effect of this is a shortage of supply and a rise in prices as companies and individuals try to secure what limited stocks are available. When advising a client on the feasibility of a proposed new project, the quantity surveyor must take all of these factors into account as well as giving some indication of the construction costs – good local knowledge is an essential part of this process.

As we can see, there is a range of unknowns and variables which have to be taken into account when determining the feasibility of a project. The most realistic way to report information to a client is to include some sort of indication that the figures being reported or data used in the preparation of the report are likely not to be totally accurate. Various techniques for reporting probabilities will be discussed later in this section.

One of the industry standards for determining the feasibility of a project is the residual method of valuation or, as it is sometimes referred to, the developer's budget. This method of valuation is only one of a set of five standard methods of valuation, the others being:

- **The investment method.** Used extensively by general practice surveyors when determining whether the price being asked for a property (such as an office block) is realistic compared to the amount of income that is generated (rent paid by the tenants).

  The value of an investment property is in no way connected to the cost of the construction or other costs. Rather, it's income generated and is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Capital value} = \text{net income} \times \text{years purchase}$$

$$\text{Years purchase} = \frac{\text{R}}{100} \text{ where R} = \% \text{ yield required.}$$

  - years purchase is simply a multiplier but can also be used to calculate the number of years required to pay back the costs of a project

  - the term 'net income' is sometimes used and refers to the income after landlord's expenses have been deducted
  - new developments can expect to have voids, or empty space during the first twelve months or so, depending on the state of the rental market
- **Profits method.** Used to derive rental values from earnings from, for example, a hotel. It involves establishing the gross earnings for the property and deducting from this all expenses (including profit), that are likely to be incurred by the tenant. The residual figure is the amount available for rent. It should be noted that caution is required, as earnings, for a number of reasons, can be distorted.
- **Comparative method.** The most widely used form of valuation, it uses direct comparison with prices paid for similar properties to the one being valued. The following should be noted:
  - properties compared must be similar; e.g. four-bedroomed detached houses
  - properties must be in the same area
  - the legal status should be the same; i.e. freehold or leasehold
  - the property transactions must be recent
  - the market must be stable

It is important to bear in mind that rarely are two properties exactly the same and people's opinions about property are very subjective.

- **Contractor's method.** Used for insurance purposes and for unusual or unique buildings that rarely comes onto the market. It involves:
  - calculating the cost of rebuilding the property, as if new, including fees, etc.
  - apply a reduction for depreciation and wear and tear
  - add the site value
- **Residual method.** Sometimes referred to as the Developer's Budget, this method attempts to calculate the value of a completed development. From this value all of the costs associated with the development are deducted to provide a residual figure that can, among other things, equal the value of the site to the developer. A residual calculation is included on page 66.

Of these five methods used for valuation, the quantity surveyor is most often asked about the Investment and Residual Methods.

Figure 2.6 illustrates the building cycle. From a developer's prospective, the trick is to plan to develop a new project which will be

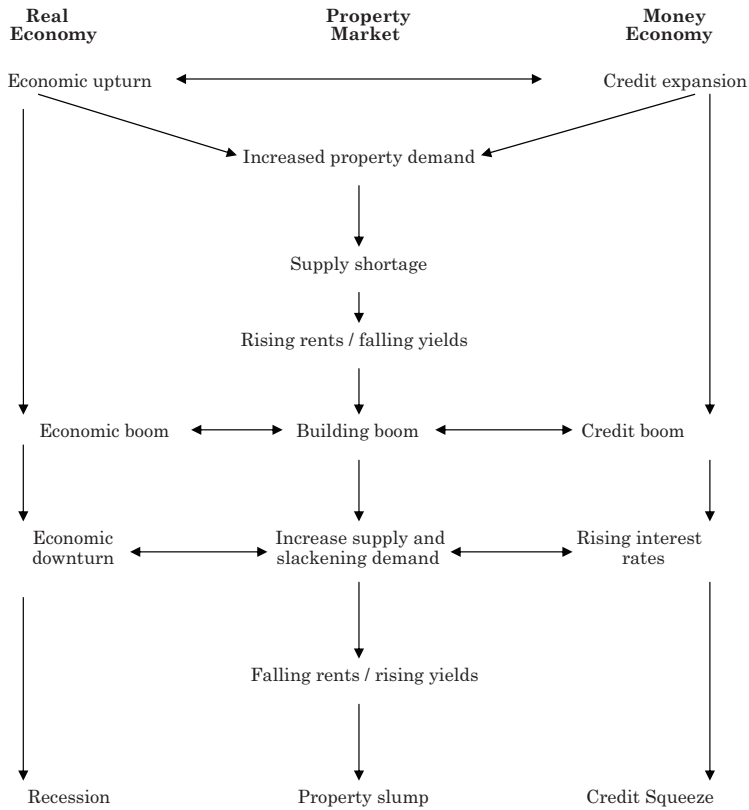


Figure 2.6 The Barras model of the property cycle

completed by the beginning of a building boom. As the average lead-in time for a new development is two years, if they wait until a boom before starting to develop, the market may be heading for a slump by the time it is completed. Another important factor is that property is a series of markets, commercial, housing, leisure, etc., all of which have their own characteristics that peak and trough at different times.

- The starting point would be a strong business cycle upturn, coinciding with a relative shortage in the available supply of property, following a period of low development activity during the previous business cycle

- Strengthening demand and restricted supply cause rents and capital values to rise sharply, improving the potential profitability of development and triggering a first wave of building starts
- If credit expansion accompanies the business cycle upturn, then it can lead to a full-blown economic boom, while at the same time the banks help to fund a second wave of more speculative development activity
- By now a major building boom is underway but, because of the inherent lags in the development process, little new space has yet come through to augment supply, so that rents and values continue to rise
- By the time the bulk of new buildings reach completion, the business cycle has moved into its downswing, accompanied by a tightening of the money supply and an increase in interest rates to combat inflationary overheating caused by the boom
- As the economic boom subsides the demand for property weakens, just as the new supply from the building boom reaches its peak: the result is falling rents and values and a growing stock of vacant floor space
- With economy moving into recession the fall in rents and values accelerates, while the credit squeeze hits the property companies holding unlet buildings with insufficient income to cover their increased interest payments
- The outcome is a property slump, characterised by depressed values, high levels of vacancy and widespread bankruptcies in the property sectors.

An important point to remember is that the value of a development project usually bears no relation to its cost. For the majority of commercial development, value relates to yield; for example, the amount of income that will be generated by the completed project. This can be the sums received from the sale of houses or the rental income from a block of flats.

Feasibility report – checklist

A feasibility report should comprise some or all the following sections, depending on the size of the project:

Section	Title
A.	**Front cover.** Title of the project, name of client and professional advisers and date.
B.	**Contents.** List of contents and page references.

C. **List of exclusions.** Leave no doubt as to which items have been excluded from the report; for example, professional fees, VAT, charges for planning consent and building regulations approval, inflation, etc. It is not unknown for clients to challenge surveyors claiming that they were under the impression that items such as fees were included.

D. **Executive summary.** So called because it is intended to be a summary of the most important findings of the report in a format that can be quickly read by busy people. It is important to keep this section brief and to the point.

E. **Main report.** This can be subdivided as follows:
Basis of the report. Assumptions relating to quality and specification levels, if not supplied by client, yield, development and disposal time scales.
Developer's budget. See below.

F. **Recommendations.** Include here also any alternative strategies if the scheme does not prove feasible in its original form. Scenario analysis.

G. **Appendices** if required and appropriate. Try not to baffle with science!

Residual method of valuation (developer's budget)

A developer's budget or residual method of valuation is generally used to calculate the amount of money that a developer can pay for a plot of land. This is determined by firstly calculating the value of the completed development, the gross development value (GDV). All the costs that need to be expended are then deducted from this figure. The residual figure is the amount available for the purchase of the land, although in effect the technique can be used to determine the value of any unknown. That is to say, if the value of the land was known, how much could be allocated to construction costs? The developer's budget lends itself readily to spreadsheet applications, such as Excel and, once set up, can quickly produce figures relating the financial feasibility of a new project.

Items to be considered:

Value

- **The GDV.** Can be the total sum from sales or rental income. If rental income, then it will be necessary to discount estimated future incomes.

Costs

- **Site preparation and infrastructure costs** including demolition, contaminated land costs, roads, sewers and main services
- **Construction costs.** A realistic estimate must be prepared by the quantity surveyor. Usually a substantial percentage of costs will be in this item. Therefore, it is imperative that, even though information and details are limited, the forecast of construction costs is accurate.
- **Professional fees.** These will depend on the complexity of the project and whether services such as project management or structural engineering are required.
- **Finance costs.** These costs will be specific to a client and will depend on the amount of perceived risk involved in the development. In the UK, when providing funding based on an overdraft, the amount of interest charged by a High Street bank will generally follow the Bank of England's base rate, plus a percentage to reflect the perceived risk. There are many types and sources of project funding. When carrying out appraisal, and the cost and source of finance is unknown, there is a rule of thumb that is generally used as follows: interest will be calculated on the total construction costs plus fees for half the construction period. A term often used in connection funding is LIBOR (London Inter Bank Offered Rates); that is the rate at which banks lend each other money. It can be used instead of base rate.
- **Disposal costs.** Once completed it will be necessary to dispose of a project, either by selling or letting. The costs associated with this are typically legal costs, advertising, incentives, stamp duty, agent's fees.
- **Developer's profit.** Most commercial development is carried out for profit and a client will have decided what level of profit is required for the risk of investing in a new project. Generally, the greater the risk, the higher the profit.
- **Finally,** after the costs have been calculated and deducted from the GDV the residual figure is the sum available to purchase the land. Of course, it may be necessary to finance the land purchase, and certainly there will be legal costs involved. To cover these costs, another simple rule of thumb is applied as shown in the following example.

EXAMPLE

A developer is considering the purchase of a city centre site which has outline planning permission for the construction of a block of offices to provide 10,000 m^2 of gross floor area. When complete it is anticipated that, based on similar developments in the area, it will be let at £350 per square metre and that the completed development would produce a yield of 7%.

The project costs are as follows:

Construction costs: £1200/m^2

Infrastructure costs: £450,000

Professional fees: 10% of construction costs

Disposal costs: 12% of first year's rent

Interest rate: 10% (base rate plus 8%)

Developer's profit: 15% of gross development value

Construction time: 3 years

It is usual for a project of this type to be planned and built by a developer and then, once completed and fully let, sold to another party for a profit or yield. The proposed project has a gross floor area of 10,000 m^2 – this area must be converted to net lettable floor area before the process can begin. Typically, the ratio of gross to net floor area is in the range of 80–85%. It is, of course, important that the ratio is as high as possible in order to maximise the rental income and the value of the completed project. This can include specifying components that maximise the floor areas; for example, perimeter heating or air conditioning units should be fixed at a sufficient height to allow a wastepaper bin to be placed beneath them (see Figure 2.7). This way, the area below the units is deemed to be usable and therefore lettable.

It is also typical with a development of this type that an allowance is made during the first year for voids; that is, for space that will remain un-let during the initial rental period. A solution to the above proposal follows.

Gross development value

The GDV can be determined in a number of ways. If the development is to be sold, then the GDV is the total amount received from sales.

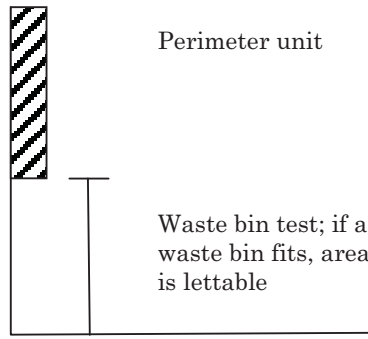


Figure 2.7 Waste bin test

If the development is an investment property, then the income from rent will form the basis of determining the value. In the example above, the proposed property is for investment and therefore the capital value is calculated as follows.

To determine the value of the project when complete the following formula is used:

$$\text{Capital Value} = \text{Net Income} \times \text{Year's Purchase}$$

Year's purchase is a multiplier and is determined as follows:

$$\frac{100}{\text{Yield}} = \frac{100}{7} = 14.29$$

10,000 m^2 Gross floor area × 0.84 = 8400 m^2 net lettable floor area; this will then produce an income, when fully let, of:

$$8{,}400 \times £350 = £2{,}940{,}000 \text{ per annum.}$$

This figure is gross income and needs to be adjusted by the deduction of landlord's expenses to net income. 5% has been taken in this case, giving £2,793,000 per annum.

For the example under consideration, it has been assumed that the developer is an investor who intends to retain ownership of the completed development for 4 years without rent reviews and then dispose of it. For the first year it has been assumed that there will be 40% voids, or un-let space, giving a rental income for the first year of:

$$\frac{£2{,}793{,}000}{100} \times 60 = £1{,}675{,}800$$

It is assumed that there will be no increases in rental during this period and this information is allowed for in the calculations as follows:

	Rental income	PV £1 @ 7%	
Year 1	£1,675,800.00	0.9346	£1,566,202.68
Year 2	£2,793,000.00	0.8735	£2,439,485.50
Year 3	£2,793,000.00	0.8163	£2,279,925.90
Year 4	£2,793,000.00	0.7629	£2,130,779.70
Divide by 4			£8,416,393.78
Capital value			£2,104,098.45

Therefore:

Capital value = £2,104,098.45 × 14.29 = £30,067,566.85,
say £30,100,000.00

Having established the value of the completed development, the cost associated with the project can be calculated.

As discussed earlier, the costs and values of a project are usually very different. The first step in the process (Stage A – Appraisal) is to meet with the client and to discover exactly what the requirements are for the new project. Generally regarded as one of the most difficult and critical stages of the development process, the task can become even more difficult in the case of the client who has a number of separate departments or sections, all of which perceive the project's deliverables in different ways. In this situation all kinds of hidden agenda can impinge on the process and make it difficult for the design team to accurately determine the project objectives.

SOURCES OF FINANCE

Every construction project, whether large or small, requires finance. There are two broad categories where finance can be raised. These are referred to as:

- Equity, and
- Debt.

	£	£
Capital value		30,100,000
Costs		
Construction		
10,000 m^2 × £1200	12,000,000	
Infrastructure	450,000	
	12,450,000	
Professional fees	1,245,000	
	13,695,000	
Finance		
As discussed above the arrangement of finance varies from client to client. For this example it will be assumed that interest will be calculated on the total construction costs for half the construction period. Fees have also been included:	1,027,125	
Disposal costs	201,100	
Developer's profit	6,000,000	
Total costs	**20,923,225**	**20,923,225**
		9,176,775
Therefore the sum that is left is the sum available to purchase the site. However, it is usually that site purchase also needs to be financed and this is allowed for by multiplying the residual figure by the present value of £1 @ an appropriate percentage; in this case 7% for the duration of the construction period;		0.8163
		£7,491,001.43
		Say £7,500,000.00

Therefore the amount that a developer could afford to pay for the site in this example is **£7.5 million** to achieve the level of profit and yield used in the calculation

Equity refers to the practice of using the client's own resources to finance the project; whereas in the case of debt funding, the project is financed by borrowing money from a variety of financial institutions. In practice most projects, particularly the larger ones, are financed from a mixture of sources. The ratio between the equity and debt funding is referred to as gearing; the higher the proportion of debt, the higher the gearing is said to be and vice versa. The gearing ratio can reflect the perceived risk of the proposed development; the higher the risk, the more a developer will wish to transfer this risk to the lender by borrowing as much as possible of the development costs. The accepted gearing for property development projects is around 90:10 debt to equity. Usually financing is required at two stages:

- During the development phase, generally regarded to be the period of highest risk, as revenue will not begin to flow until completion, and
- After completion, when the developer has to repay the money lent for construction plus accumulated interest, generally regarded to be a period of lower risk.

Finance is generally referred to in terms of:

- Short term – up to five years
- Medium term – five to ten years
- Long term – over 15 years.

Equity

The sources of equity are generally:
- From shareholders' funds or share capital
- Generating funds from internal sources such as retained profits, funds held in return for taxation, etc.

Depending on circumstances, the second alternative tends to be a short-term solution only.

Sources of equity

Opportunity cost. If an investor decides to use his or her own capital to fund property development, then the cost of the capital needs to be considered. Opportunity cost is the amount of interest forgone by taking capital off deposit and using it to fund a new project.

Forward funding. This funding method involves a financial institution; for example, an insurance company or pension fund purchases the site and provides the funds for the construction. At the completion of the project it is sold and the developer paid. From the developer's point of view the disadvantage is that the funding institution will have a major influence in the direction of the development; the advantages include the fact that the institution bears both the development and disposal risk. In return, the developer's profit may be lower than the norm.

Joint venture. A joint venture between two or more financial institutions may be essential for very large projects or developments and may be confined to UK institutions or cross border arrangements. The advantages include risk sharing and the potential to obtain additional expertise or local knowledge that may be essential for the successful completion of the development.

Lease and leaseback. This arrangement involves the developer leasing the site to a bank or other institution for a nominal rent. The bank then arranges for the construction of the project in accordance with the developer's instructions. On completion, the bank leases the building to the developer at a rate that includes construction and finance costs. This approach also has the potential for tax allowances.

Debt finance

As has been stated previously, the big advantage to debt finance is that risk is transferred to the funder. The amount of interest charged will reflect the perceived risk of the development. The principal sources of debt finance are banks, both UK-based and overseas. Banks are generally risk adverse organisations and, as such, tend to lend money on a short-term basis with the project/site usually required by the bank as security. Options include fixed rate and variable rate; variable rate is the most commonly used method:

- The developer approaches a bank and the risk will be assessed based on the nature of the proposed project, market conditions, etc.
- Having assessed the risk, the bank will determine the interest rate to be charged based on the London Interbank Offered Rate or LIBOR which is the rate charge between banks when they lend each other money. An addition percentage will be added to the base rate to reach the rate to be charged. The higher the perceived risk, the greater the addition.

- Variable rate finance leaves the developer exposed to increases in the base rate that can eat into profits or risk the total project viability. In the UK, the recent past has seen a period of reasonably stable base rates at historically low levels, but this has not always been the case!
- Loans are categories into non-recourse, limited recourse and full recourse. These terms refer to the extent to which the developer guarantees the debt. In the case of a non-recourse loan, the finance is secured on the development itself. In a case where the bank needs to call in the debt, then none of the assets of the developer will be at risk. Limited recourse loans refer to the position where, as well as the development under finance, other assets of the developer are required as a guarantee. Full recourse loans refer to the situation where the funding is secured entirely on the developer's assets, and these will be at risk in the case of project failure.

Banks will, as a general rule, lend up to 70% of the GDV depending on the status and track record of the developer.

Mezzanine finance

Given that banks will usually lend up to 70% GDV a further cash injection is required in order to meet the required gearing ratio; this gap can be filled with so-called mezzanine finance. Mezzanine funding is rather like a second mortgage that ranks below the senior debt. This means that, in the case of project failure, the senior lender has first recourse to recover losses. The effect of this is to make mezzanine funding more expensive than senior debt as it reflects the developer's inability to secure adequate equity.

Bonds

The bond market offers a source of long-dated debt. Accordingly, as an alternative to the banking sector, it is now common place for many organisations to consider raising money in this market, especially if the project concerned is so big that there in insufficient liquidity in the market. This method of raising finance is ideal for individuals and organisations who:

- Need to raise large sums of capital, £20 million upwards
- Have access to regular guaranteed income for the term of the bond, which can be up to 50 years

- Bonds are in effect an IOU and work as follows:
  - investors lend the bond issuer a sum of money for a fixed term
  - in return the investor receives an agreed rate of interest from the bond issuer
  - on maturity the investor receives back the original investment in full
- Bonds may be either public or private.

Answering the 'what if?' question

In order to carry out the developer's budget, several assumptions have been made and the next step in the process is to test those assumptions against their sensitivity to change, brought about by consequences beyond the developer's control; for example, increase in interest rates, increase in construction costs due to material and/or labour shortages, etc. There are a number of techniques, ranging from the basic to the sophisticated, which test various sensitivities and scenarios and thereby attempt to answer the 'what if?' question. For example, if interest rates were to rise by 3%, the cost of financing the above scheme would increase considerably, thereby reducing the amount available for construction costs or profit and perhaps threatening the feasibility of the project. The techniques that can be used, listed in order of accuracy, are:

- Sensitivity analysis
- Monte Carlo simulation.

Regardless of which of the above techniques is used, the import aspect of including this item in the feasibility report is that it highlights the fact that property development has a number of inherent risks. These risks must be correctly managed if the project is to be a success. After a budget has been finalised, market conditions rarely evolve as expected; interest rates change, materials and labour shortages occur, and so on. The likelihood that these and other myriad events could negatively impact revenue is known as 'risk'. While risk cannot be avoided, it can be mitigated and managed.

Sensitivity analysis

Sensitivity analysis is a method for analysing uncertainty by changing input variables, for example, and observing the sensitivity of the result. The method can be used either on a *variable-by-variable basis* or by changing groups of variables at once using *scenario analysis*.

These closely related techniques offer several advantages over other methods for examining the affects of uncertainty.

Variable-by-variable analysis. This approach analyses uncertainty and isolates the affect of change on one variable of the feasibility study at a time. The approach is as follows:

- List all the important factors that can affect the successful outcome of the project
- For each factor define a range of possible values
- Generally three ranges are proposed: Optimistic, Most likely and Pessimistic
- Calculate the cost-benefit ratios or net present values for each of the ranges.

A variable-by-variable analysis is based on the assumption that factors affecting a project do not operate independently of one another. By using software such as Microsoft Excel it is possible to model various scenarios to answer the 'what if?' question. For example, what will be the effect on the project feasibility if interest rates were to change from the 10% assumed in the feasibility report, during the construction period?

	Optimistic 9%	Most likely 10%	Pessimistic 11%
Finance costs on £6,847,500	£308,138	£342,375	£376,613

This process should be repeated for all key drivers

Scenario analysis. A scenario analysis is based on the assumption that factors affecting cost/benefit flows do not operate independently of each other as is assumed in the variable-by-variable approach. For example, it is unlikely that increases in interest rates and lack of demand for the completed development are independent factors.

Sensitivity analyses have several advantages:

- First, it shows how significant any given input variable is in determining a project's economic worth. It does this by displaying the range of possible project outcomes for a range of input values, which shows the decision makers the input values that would make the project a winner or a loser. It also helps to identify critical inputs
- Answers the 'what if?' question and is a good background and preparation for defending a project. For example, if the question

'what will the outcome of the project be if operating costs increase by 20%?' is posed, the answer is easily determined
- Does not require the use of probabilities
- Can be used on any measure of project worth
- Can be used where there is little information, resources or time to perform more sophisticated techniques.

The major disadvantage of sensitivity analysis is that there is no explicit probabilistic measure of risk exposure. That is, although one might be sure that one of several outcomes might happen, the analysis contains no explicit measure of their respective likelihoods. A good way to graphically represent the outcomes of a sensitivity analysis is with the use of a spider diagram (see Figure 2.8). It is an instant snapshot of the relative importance of several uncertain variables.

It can be seen from Figure 2.8 that a 5% rise in land costs will impact on the development by increasing the overall cost in excess of £22 million.

Monte Carlo simulation

Monte Carlo simulation was named after the town on the Cotes d'Azure famous for its casinos, gambling and games of chance. Despite its exotic name, in reality it is a piece of software that models

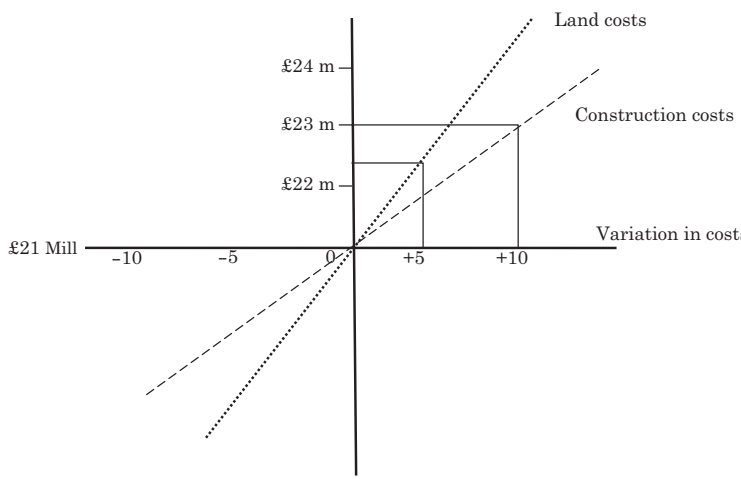


Figure 2.8 Spider diagram

or simulates the probable outcomes of a given scenario. It does this by the use of probalistic techniques that attempt to mimic what will happen in a real situation. It is far superior than the sensitivity analyses described above, because not only do the results illustrate the impact of an input, changing but also they take into the account the probability that any given event will happen, based upon what has happened in the past in similar projects.

Whichever of the above techniques are used, it should not be forgotten that these are simply decision-making tools and should not be used as a stand alone set of facts. It will always be the case that the quantity surveyor will interpret and review the outcome before reporting figures to the client.

WHOLE LIFE COSTS

Whole life costs include consideration of the following factors when designing and specifying:

- **Initial** or procurement costs, including design, construction or installation, purchase or leasing, fees and charges
- **Future** cost of operation, maintenance and repairs, including management costs such as cleaning, energy costs, etc.
- **Future** replacement costs, including loss of revenue due to non-availability
- **Future** alteration and adaptation costs, loss of revenue due to non-availability
- **Future** demolition/recycling costs.

The service life of an element, product or whole building may be viewed in one or more of the following ways:

- Technical life – based on physical durability and reliability properties
- Economic life – based on physical durability and reliability properties
- Obsolescence – based on factors other than time or use patterns, e.g. fashion.

Common terms used to describe the consideration of all the costs associated with a built asset throughout its life span are:

- Costs-in-use
- Life cycle costs

- Whole life costs
- Through life costs
- Etc.

There are a number of definitions for whole life costing (WLC), but one currently adopted is 'the systematic consideration of all relevant costs and revenues associated with the acquisition and ownership of an asset'.

Although WLC can be carried out at any stage of the project and not just during the procurement process (Figure 2.9), the potential of its greatest effectiveness is during procurement because:

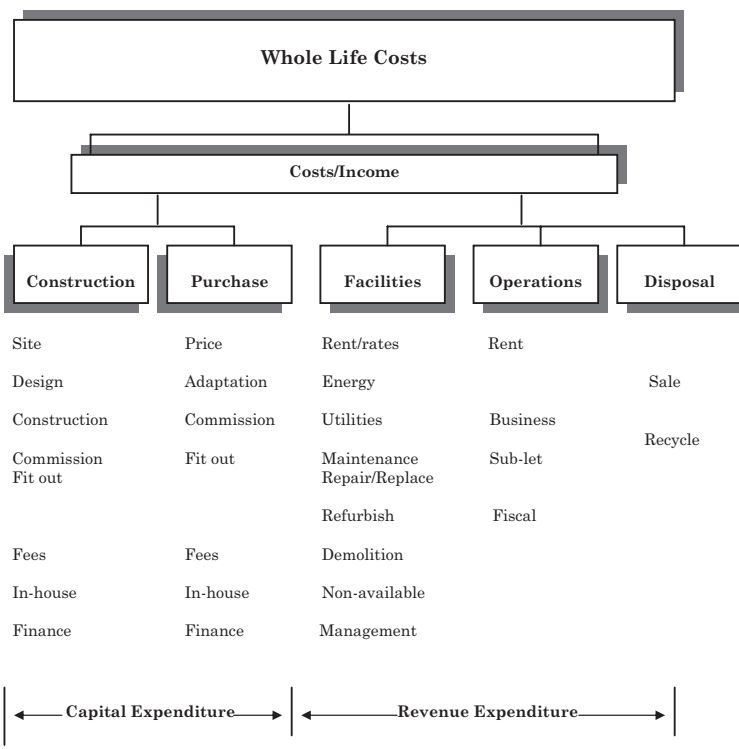


Figure 2.9 Whole life costs

Table 2.5 Comparisons of two different materials

Material	Initial cost	Installation cost	Maintenance cost per day	Other maintenance costs	Life expectancy
A	£275	£150	£3	£100 every 3 years for preservative treatment	12 years
B	£340	£150	£3	None	15 years

- Almost all options are open to consideration at this time
- The ability to influence cost decreases continually as the project progresses, from 100% at project sanction to 20% or less by the time construction starts
- The decision to own a building normally commits the user to most of the total cost of ownership and consequently there is a very slim chance to change the total cost of ownership once the building is delivered.

Typically, about 75–95% of the cost of running, maintaining and repairing a building is determined during the procurement stage.

There now follows a simple example based on the selection of material types, illustrating the net present value and the annual equivalent approaches to whole life cost procurement.

This problem is a classic one, which material, with widely different initial and maintenance costs, will deliver the best value for money over the life cycle of the building (Table 2.5). In this example, assuming a discount rate of 6% it is assumed that the materials are to be considered for installation in a PFI project, with an anticipated life of twenty-five years.

Table 2.6 indicates a whole life cost calculation for material A presented in two ways: as a net present value and as an annual equivalent cost. The calculation is repeated for each material or component under consideration and then a comparison can be made.

A replacement expenditure profile, excluding cyclical maintenance and energy over a range of elements over a 35-year contract period is shown in Table 2.7.

Clearly, the choice of the correct type of material or component would appear of critical importance to a client as future replacement

Table 2.6 Results for material A

						Total discounted costs		
Year	**Present value of £1 per annum (PV of £1 pa)**	**Present value (PV £1)**	**Initial cost (£)**	**Other costs (£)**	**Annual cost (£) £3×365**	**NPV of replacement+annual costs+other initial costs (£)**	**Total NPV (£)**	**AEC (£)**
1	0.943	0.943	490.00		1095.00	1523.02	1523.02	1614.4
2	1.834	0.890			1095.00	974.55	2497.57	1362.25
3	2.673	0.840			1095.00	919.38	3416.95	1278.31
4	3.465	0.792			1095.00	897.34	4284.29	1236.41
5	4.212	0.747			1095.00	818.25	5102.54	1211.32
6	4.917	0.705			1095.00	771.93	5874.47	1194.65
7	5.582	0.665			1095.00	728.24	6602.71	1182.76
8	6.210	0.627			1095.00	687.02	7289.72	1173.91
9	6.802	0.592			1095.00	648.13	7937.85	1167.04
10	7.360	0.558			1095.00	611.44	8549.30	1161.58
11	7.887	0.527			1095.00	576.83	9126.13	1157.13
12	8.384	0.497			1095.00	544.18	9670.31	1153.47
13	8.853	0.469			1095.00	513.38	10,183.69	1150.35
14	9.295	0.442			1095.00	484.32	10,668.00	1147.72
15	9.712	0.417		490.00	1095.00	661.37	11,329.38	1166.50
16	10.106	0.394			1095.00	431.04	11,760.42	1163.72
17	10.477	0.371			1095.00	406.64	12,167.06	1161.28
18	10.828	0.350			1095.00	383.63	12,550.69	1159.14
19	11.158	0.331			1095.00	361.91	12,912.60	1157.24
20	11.470	0.312			1095.00	341.43	13,254.02	1155.55
21	11.764	0.294			1095.00	322.10	13,576.12	1154.03
22	12.042	0.278			1095.00	303.87	13,879.99	1152.67
23	12.303	0.262			1095.00	286.67	14,166.66	1151.45
24	12.550	0.247			1095.00	270.44	14,237.10	1150.33
25	12.783	0.233			1095.00	255.13	14,692.24	1149.36

Notes:
AEC=Annual equivalent cost.
Other cost=replacement costs every 15 years.

Table 2.7 Replacement expenditure profile

Element	**Replacement expenditure (%)**
Windows/doors	22.95
Kitchens	15.79
Heating	11.82
Structural	10.63
Roofs	8.72
Bathrooms	7.79
Wiring	6.50
External areas	3.87
Internal decorations	2.48
Communal decorations	1.69
Over cladding	1.61
Rainwater goods	1.51
External walls	0.99
Off-road parking	0.82
DPC	0.73
Security/CCTV	0.60
Door entry systems	0.51
Fire precautionary works	0.50
Porches/canopies	0.44
Plastering	0.07

Source: Whole life costs forum (http://www.wlcf.org.uk/)

and maintenance costs will have to be met out of future income. However, in reality, theory and practice are often very different. For example, for many public authorities, finding budgets for construction work is usually more difficult than meeting recurring running and maintenance costs that are usually included in annual budgets as a matter of course.

In addition to the net present value and annual equivalent approaches described previously, the simple aggregation could sometimes be used effectively when evaluating whole life costs.

Simple aggregation

This method of appraisal involves adding together the costs, without discounting, of initial capital costs, operation and maintenance costs. This approach has a place in the marketing brochure and it helps to illustrate the importance of considering all the costs associated with a particular element but has little value in cost forecasting.

A similarly simplistic approach is to evaluate a component on the time required to pay back the investment in a better quality product. For example, a number of energy-saving devices are available for lift installations. A choice is made on the basis of which over the life cycle of the lift, say five or ten years, will pay back the investment the quickest. This last approach does have some merit, particularly in situations where the life cycle of the component is relatively short and the advances in technology, and hence the introduction, of a new and more efficient product is likely.

Criticisms of whole life costing

WLC is also not an exact science, as, in addition to the difficulties inherent in future cost planning, there are larger issues at stake. It is not just a case of asking 'how much will this building cost me for the next 50 years?' Rather, it is more difficult to know whether a particular building will be required in 50 years' time at all – especially as the current business horizon for many organisations is much closer to 3 years. Also, WLC requires a different way of thinking about cash, assets and cash flow. The traditional capital cost focus has to be altered, and costs thought of in terms of capital and revenue costs coming from the same 'pot'. Many organisations are simply not geared up for this adjustment.

Perhaps the most crucial reason is the difficulty in obtaining the appropriate level of information and data.

There is a lack of available data to make the calculations reliable. The Building Maintenance Information (BMI) define an element for occupancy cost as expenditure on an item which fulfils a specific function irrespective of the use of the form of the building. The system is dependent on practitioners submitting relevant data for the benefit of others. The increased complexity of construction means that it is far more difficult to predict the whole life cost of built assets. Moreover, if the malfunction of components results in decreased yield or underperformance of the building, then this is of concern to the end

user/owner. There is no comprehensive risk analysis of building components available for practitioners, only a wide range of predictions of estimated life spans and notes on preventive maintenance – this is too simplistic, there is a need for costs to be tied to risk including the consequences of component failure. After all, the performance of a material or component can be affected by such diverse factors as:

- Quality of initial workmanship when installed on-site and subsequent maintenance
- Maintenance regime/wear and tear. Buildings that are allowed to fall into disrepair prior to any routine maintenance being carried out will have a different life cycle profile to buildings that are regularly maintained from the outset
- Intelligence of the design and the suitability of the material/component for it usage. There is no guarantee that the selection of so-called high-quality materials will result in low life cycle costs.

Other commonly voiced criticisms of whole life cost are:

- Expenditure on running costs is 100% allowable revenue expense against liability for tax and as such is very valuable. There is also a lack of taxation incentive, in the form of tax breaks, etc. for owners to install energy efficient systems.
- In the short-term and taking into account the effects of discounting the impact on future expenditure is much less significant in the development appraisal.
- Another difficulty is the need to be able to forecast – a long way ahead of time – many factors such as life cycles, future operating and maintenance costs, and discount and inflation rates. WLC, by definition, deals with the future and the future is unknown. Increasingly, obsolescence is being taken into account during procurement – a factor that is impossible to control since it is influenced by such things as fashion, technological advances and innovation. An increasing challenge is to procure built assets with the flexibility to cope with changes. Thus, the treatment of uncertainty in information and data is crucial as uncertainty is endemic to WLC. Another major difficulty is that the WLC technique is expensive in terms of the time required. This difficulty becomes even clearer when it is required to undertake a WLC exercise within an integrated real-time environment at the design stage of projects.

In addition to the above changes in the nature of development, other factors have emerged to convince the industry that WLCs are important, principally sustainability.

Whole life cost procurement – critical success factors

- Effective risk assessment – what if this alternative form of construction is used?
- Timing – begin to assess WLC as early as possible in the procurement process
- Disposal strategy – is the asset to be owner occupied, sold or let?
- Opportunity cost – downtime
- Maintenance strategy/frequency – does one exist?
- Suitability – matching a client's corporate of individual strategy to procurement.

Value management/value engineering

In recent years quantity surveyors have been using a system referred to as 'value management' or 'value engineering' in an attempt to make the briefing process more objective. Value management/value engineering is a structured technique that attempts to determine, at an early stage prior to detailed design, the functions that the completed project is required to fulfil.

This method was first developed and introduced into the manufacturing sector in America, immediately after the Second World War. The principal objective of this technique is to gather together the principle stakeholders of a new project in a workshop over a four or five day period. The process is managed by a value management practitioner, who can be a quantity surveyor. This may be the only occasion when all of the stakeholders of a new project meet together to discuss the outcomes. The process involves the analysis of the required functions of a new project and then the investigation of how these function may be achieved (Figure 2.10). Concentrating of functions allows items that do not contribute to the identified functions, referred to as waste, to be removed from the design.

The traditional approach to determining the cost of a new project is to apply costs to the product – the various parts of a new building. Value management takes a sideways step and applies costs to the required functions and then looks at ways, through design and construction, for providing functionally optimised building projects. The approach therefore can be said to be: *don't buy product, buy function*.

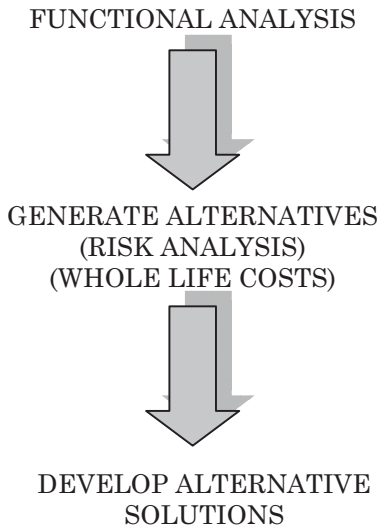


Figure 2.10 A structured technique for value management/value engineering

Luckily for quantity surveyors, who are said to be attracted to all things standard, SAVE (the Society of American Value Engineers) have produced a standard methodology (see Figure 2.11). The SAVE methodology is based on the standard North American forty hour workshop that takes place over five days. It is broken down into three phases: Pre-Study, where members of the value management team become familiar with the project parameters. Next comes the Value Study phase, which is itself broken down into six phases that take the workshop through a structured process, the characteristics of which are:

Functional analysis. Defining, classifying and establishing the worth of a function or functions which is at the heart of the value management process. The definition of function can be problematic; experience has shown that the search for a definition can result in lengthy descriptions that do not lend themselves to analysis. In addition, the definition of function has to be measurable. In order to establish some sort of hierarchy, functions need to be classified into primary (needs) or supporting function (wants). Basic functions are

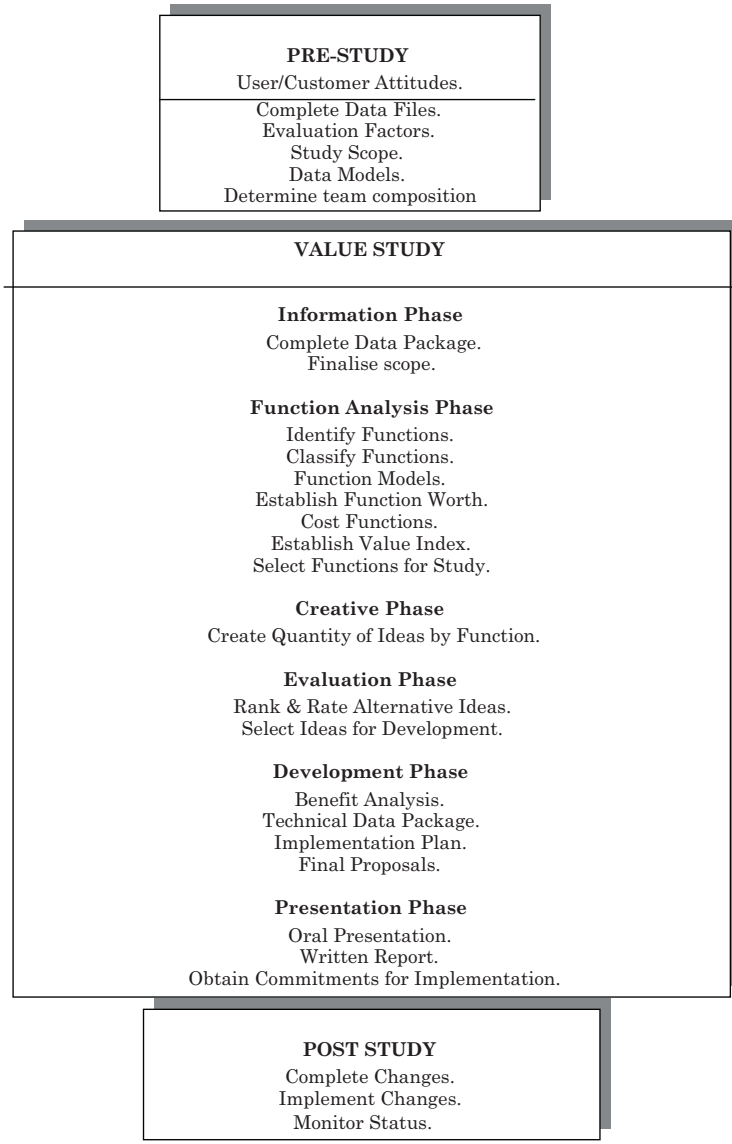


Figure 2.11 Value management process (Source: Society of American Value Engineers)

those that make the project work; without basic functions the final project would impact on the functionality of the completed project. Out of the list of functions emerges the highest order function that can be defined as the overall reason for the project and meets the overall needs of the client. After defining the functions of the project, the next step is to establish a function's worth and to identify which of the functions contains a value mismatch. Or, in other words, seems to have a high concentration to the total project cost in relation to the function. Following on from this the creative phase will concentrate on these functions. Worth being defined as 'the lowest overall cost to perform a function without regard to criteria or codes'. Having established the worth and the cost, the value index can be calculated. The formula is value = worth/cost. The benchmark is to achieve a ratio of 1. There are a number of models, including FAST (Functional Analysis System Technique) diagrams to do this.

3

Measurement and quantification

Bill of quantities are occasionally criticised in some circles as being outdated and unnecessary in the modern procurement environment. Indeed, the number of contracts based on a bill of quantities has declined sharply over the past 20 years or so. Nevertheless, the bill of quantities remains unsurpassed as a model on which to obtain bids in a format that allows: ease of comparison between various contractors, transparency, an aid to the quantity surveyor in valuing variations, calculating stage payments and the preparation of the final account. What is more, the ability to measure, quantify and analyse the items of labour, materials and plant necessary to construct a new project is still a much sought after skill and many would argue that it is the core of the quantity surveying profession.

MEASUREMENT PRACTICE

It is vitally important that measurement practice applied to buildings is both accurate and consistent. There are a number of situations that require a quantity surveyor to measure and record dimensions from both drawings as well as on site, depending on the stage of the project. In order to standardise measurement rules and conventions, there are a number of standard codes and methods of measurement that are available. These are outlined below.

The RICS code of measuring practice, 6th edition (2007)

According to the Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors (RICS) the purpose of the code is to provide succinct, precise definitions to permit the accurate measurement of buildings and land, the calculation of the sizes (areas and volumes), and the description or specification of land and buildings on a common consistent basis. The code is

intended for use in the UK only and includes three core definitions that are used in a variety of situations as follows:

1. **Gross external area (GEA)**
   This approach to measurement is recommended for:

   - Building cost estimations for calculating building costs for residential property for insurance purposes
   - Town planning applications and approvals
   - Rating and council tax bands.

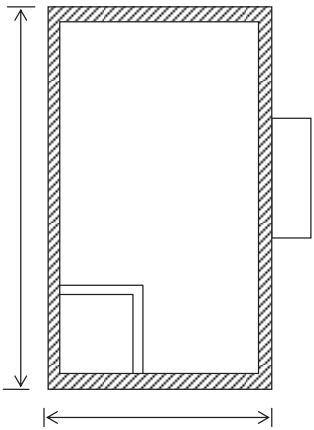
   GEA is defined as the area of a building measured externally at each floor level as follows:

Included

- Perimeter wall thickness and external projections
- Areas occupied by internal walls and partitions
- Columns, piers, chimney breasts, stairwells, lift wells and the like
- Atria and entrance halls with clear height above, measured at base level only
- Internal balconies
- Structural, raked or stepped floors are to be treated as a level floor measured horizontally
- Mezzanine areas intended for use with permanent access
- Lift rooms, plant rooms, fuel stores, tank rooms, which are housed in a covered structure of a permanent nature, whether or not above the main roof level
- Outbuildings which share at least one wall with the main building
- Loading bays
- Areas with a headroom of less than 1.5 m
- Pavement vaults
- Garages
- Conservatories

Excluded

- External open-sided balconies
- Canopies
- Open vehicle parking areas, roof terraces and the like
- Voids over or under structural, raked or stepped floors
- Greenhouses, garden stores, fuel stores and the like in residential property



Notes:

Areas of internal walls and partitions included

External canopies – excluded

Measurements taken to external face of external walls

Figure 3.1 Gross external area

2. Gross internal area (GIA)

This approach to measurement is recommended for:

- Building cost estimation
- Marketing and valuation of industrial buildings, warehouses, department stores
- Valuation of new homes
- Property management – apportionment of services charges.

GIA is the area of a building measured to the internal face of the perimeter walls at each floor level.

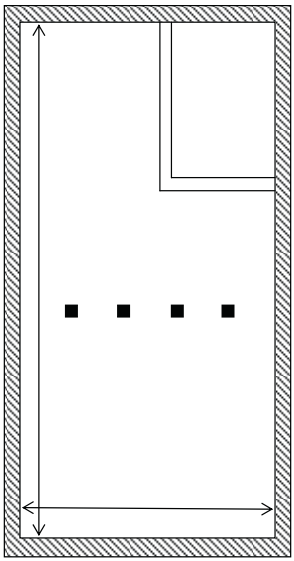
Note: Internal face means the brick/block or plaster coat applied to the brick/block work, not the surface of internal linings installed by the occupier.

Included

- Areas occupied by internal walls and partitions
- Columns, piers, chimney breasts, stairwells, lift-wells, other internal projections, vertical ducts and the like
- Atria and entrance halls with clear height above, measured at base level only
- Internal open-sided balconies, walk-ways and the like
- Structural, raked or stepped floors are to be treated as a level floor measured horizontally
- Horizontal floors, with permanent access below structural, raked or stepped floors
- Corridors of a permanent essential nature (e.g. fire corridors, smoke lobbies)
- Mezzanine floor areas with permanent access Lift rooms, plant rooms, fuel stores, tank rooms, which are housed in a covered structure of a permanent nature, whether or not above the main roof level
- Service accommodation such as toilets, toilet lobbies, bathrooms, showers, changing rooms and the like
- Projection rooms
- Voids over stairwells and lift shafts on upper floors
- Loading bays
- Areas with headroom of less than 1.5 m
- Pavement vaults
- Garages
- Conservatories

Excluded

- Perimeter wall thicknesses and external projections
- External open-sided balconies, covered ways and fire escapes
- Canopies
- Voids over or under structural, raked or stepped floors
- Greenhouses, garden stores, fuel stores and the like in residential property



Notes:

Areas of partitions, columns, etc. included

Areas of canopies excluded

Measurements taken to internal face of external walls

Figure 3.2 Gross internal area

3. Net internal area (NIA)

This approach to measurement is recommended for:

- Marketing and valuation of: shops, supermarkets and offices
- Rating shops
- In property management it is used for the apportionment of services charges.

NIA is the usable area within a building measured to the internal face of the perimeter walls at each floor level.

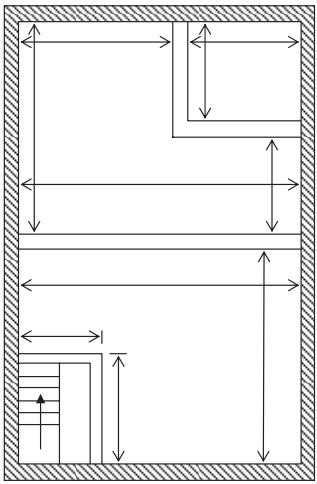
Note: An area is usable if it can be used for any sensible purpose in connection with the purposes for which the premises are to be used.

Included

- Atria with clear height above, measured at base level only
- Entrance halls
- Notional lift lobbies and notional fire corridors
- Kitchens
- Built-in units, cupboards and the like occupying usable areas
- Ramps, sloping areas and steps within usable areas
- Areas occupied by ventilation/heating grilles
- Areas occupied by skirting and perimeter trunking
- Areas occupied by non-structural walls subdividing accommodation in sole occupancy
- Pavement vaults

Excluded

- Those parts of entrance halls, atria landings and balconies used in common
- Toilets, toilet lobbies, bathrooms, cleaners' rooms and the like
- Lift rooms, plant rooms, tank rooms (other than those of a trade process nature), fuel stores and the like
- Stairwells, lift-wells and permanent lift lobbies
- Corridors and other circulation areas where used in common with other occupiers
- Permanent circulation areas, corridors and threshold/recesses associated with access, but not those parts that are usable areas
- Areas under the control of service or other external authorities including meter cupboards and statutory service supply points
- Internal structural walls, walls enclosing excluded areas, columns, piers, chimney breasts, other projections, vertical ducts, walls separating tenancies and the like
- The space occupied by permanent and continuous air-conditioning, heating or cooling apparatus and ducting insofar as the space it occupies is rendered substantially unusable
- The space occupied by permanent, intermittent air-conditioning, heating or cooling apparatus protruding 0.25 m or more into the usable area
- Areas with headroom of less than 1.5 m
- Areas rendered substantially unusable by virtue of having a dimension between opposite faces of less than 0.25 m
- Vehicle parking areas (the number and type of spaces noted)



Notes:

Stairwells, circulation space and internal walls excluded

Non-structural walls included

Measurements taken to the internal face of external walls

Figure 3.3 Net internal area

In addition to the RICS Code of Measuring Practice the two principal methods of measurement are given below.

1. Standard Methods of Measurement of Building Works (SMM7)

The Standard Method of Measurement first appeared in 1922 and was based on '*the practice of the leading London quantity surveyors*'. It was an attempt to bring uniformity to the ways by which quantity surveyors measured and priced building works. The seventh edition appeared in 1988 as a joint publication between the RICS and the Building Employers Confederation and was revised in 1998. The RICS is currently conducting a measurement initiative project to produce new rules of measurement for both trade/package measurement as well as estimating and cost planning.

2. Civil Engineering Standard Method of Measurement (CESMM3)

Sponsored and published by the Institution of Civil Engineers the first edition of CESMM appeared in 1976 in order to '*standardise the layout and contents of Bills of Quantities and to provide a systematic structure*'. The current, third edition, was published in 1991.

These two standard methods of measurement reflect the different approaches of the two industries, not only in the nature of the work, but also the degree of detail and the estimating conventions used by both sectors. This, in turn, reflects the different ways in which building and civil engineering projects are organised and carried out. In general the SMM7 has more emphasis on detail, where as the CESMM3 takes a more inclusive approach to the measurement process. Building work comprises many different trades, whereas civil engineering works consist of large quantities of a comparatively small range of items. For example, when measuring excavation using SMM7 it is necessary to keep excavation, earthwork support and working space as separate items, whereas when using CESMM3 all these item are included in a single item of excavation.

Other methods of measurement are available for specific types of construction, most notably:

- Standard method of measurement for highways
- Standard method of measurement for roads and bridges
- Standard method of measurement for industrial engineering construction, which provides measurement principles for the estimating, tendering, contract management and cost control aspects of industrial engineering construction
- RICS international method of measurement.

The UK standard method of measurement of building works (SMM7) has been used as the basis for the preparation of methods of measurement that are used in Malaysia and Hong Kong.

Managing the measurement process

The bill of quantities, when completed, is traditionally presented in trade format; that is, the same order as SMM7, for example:

- Demolition and alteration
- Groundwork
- Concrete work
- Masonry
- Etc.

There are various approaches to measurement for bills of quantities and these are as follows:

The group method

When using the group approach, it will be the responsibility of the person in charge of the measurement to allocate various duties to the surveyors and prepare a schedule. This method is probably the most popular and is based on the following measurement groups:

- Substructure
- Frame
- Upper floors
- External walls
- Windows
- Staircases
- Roof
- Internal doors
- Doors
- Internal finishes
- Services
- Drainage
- External works

The taking off schedule, as well as allocating various tasks, also helps to identify missing information. On larger contracts the measurement will be divided between several surveyors and it is important that double measurement or omission of items do not occur. For example, the surveyor measuring the external walls will measure the various items gross, in other words, without deduction for any door or windows. However, the surveyor measuring the doors and windows must deduct the area occupied by doors and windows, as well as measuring the work to the sides (the reveals), the cill and the head of the door or window opening. Similarly, the surveyor measuring the roof must know where the demarcation of the roof and the external walls are and that roof measurement includes not only the roof structure, but also the coverings and the rainwater goods. The taking off schedule will also include the start and anticipated completion date of the various groups.

When using this approach, the measurement and bill process have three stages:

1. **The measurement stage.** The measurement and description of items in accordance with The Standard Method of Measurement of Building Works – 7th edition (SMM7). SMM7 provides: '*a uniform basis for measuring building works and is to ensure that the bills of quantities fully describe and accurately represent the quantity and quality of the works to be carried out*' – SMM7 – General rules 1.1. On completion of the measurement the quantities are calculated ready for the next stage.

2. **The abstract stage.** The process by which the measured items together with the associated quantities are transferred from the dimension paper to an abstract where all like items are grouped together and they are arranged in the order that they will appear in the bill of quantities. During these first two stages it has been traditional for quantity surveyors to use abbreviations in order to reduce time and cut down the amount of paper work, for example:

as before	ab	galvanised	galv
as described	ad	ground level	gl
brickwork	bkwk	half brick	hb
cast iron	ci	hardwood	hw
damp-proof course	dpc	manhole	mh
deduct	Ddt	mild steel	ms
ditto	do	not exceeding	ne
excavate	exc	reinforced concrete	rc
extra over	EO	softwood	sw
foundations	fdns	tongue and groove	t&g

3. **The draft bill stage.** Using the traditional system the items are now transferred from the abstract to the draft bill, where items are written out in full. This draft bill now has to be printed in the final bill of quantities format.

It can be seen from the above notes that the traditional approach is labour-intensive and therefore little wonder that various systems, increasingly based on IT solutions, have been developed to speed up the process. Nevertheless the ability to measure and abstract items is a skill still used by the modern quantity surveyor throughout pre and post-contract stages of a project and one that is highly sought after by the industry on both demand and supply sides.

Trade-by-trade

This method involves organising the measuring of the quantities in the same order as the final presentation. That is, each surveyor has the responsibility for measuring a complete trade and is issued with a complete set of drawings and other information relating to the project. The principal advantage of this approach is that it removes the need for the abstract stage, thereby speeding up the process

and reducing the man-power needed to produce the bill. In addition, as each section is completed, it can be processed. There are still offices in the UK, mainly in Scotland, that use the so-called 'northern approach' dimension paper when using the trade by trade approach!

Presentation of the bills of quantities

In addition to the approach to the measurement of quantities, there are also various approaches to the presentation of bills of quantities and these are:

- Trade-by-trade
- Elemental.

Over the years there have been other bill formats developed, such as operational, but these have never been widely adopted by the UK construction industry.

Scotland developed its own system for measurement and presentation where the approach was to let each trade as a separate contract rather similar to the lots séparés system used in France; however, during the past 20 years or so, this is used less and less.

Even a medium-sized project will generate a large amount of drawn documentation which is passed to the quantity surveyor for measurement; this can be in the form of:

- Architects drawings
- Door/window, fittings and finishing schedules, etc.
- Engineers drawings detailing structural elements
- Specifications of materials and workmanship
- Specialists drawings relating to piling, mechanical installations, drainage, etc.

During the measurement period it can be expected that the information on drawings and schedules will be revised and updated many times, it is therefore important that the quantity surveyor always uses the most up-to-date information when preparing the bill of quantities. Almost every day will bring an updated set of information. It is of course impossible to keep on including revisions in bills of quantities indefinitely, or otherwise the bills would never be produced, therefore the quantity surveyor has at some point to draw a line in the sand and base the measurement on what information is currently available. As information arrives at the quantity surveyor's office it should be logged in the drawing register as follows;

Table 3.1 Drawing register

Number	Description	Date received		Revisions	
		A	B	C	D
0094	Substructure	24/07/09		02/08/09	21/09/09
0095	Section A–A	24/07/09			

The significance of recording the drawings is that it is possible to identify what drawn information was used to prepare the bills of quantities. In addition, a list of the drawings together with the revision that is used is included in the bill of quantities under the heading:

List of drawings from which these bills of quantities have been prepared

The drawings included in this list will be available for inspection by the contractor at the architect's office. Applications to inspect the drawings shall be made to ABC Architects,

Architectural drawings
0094/B
0095

In this way there can be no doubt as to what information was used. Any subsequent revisions to drawings, schedules, etc. have to be dealt with at the post contract stage with the issue of an architect's instruction.

MEASUREMENT CONVENTIONS

Today, the majority of bills of quantities are produced using proprietary software packages, each system having its own format for inputting dimensions and formulating descriptions. However, in order to fully understand and appreciate the potential problems in the measurement process a thorough knowledge of measurement conventions is essential as measurement is used by the quantity surveyor not just during the bills of quantity stage, but also during measurement and preparation of interim valuations and the final account. The traditional approach to measurement involves starting with recording dimensions on traditional dimension or taking off paper, see Table 3.2.

1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4

Table 3.2

Table 3.2 illustrates traditional dimension paper; it comprises A4 paper, printed on either one or both sides, with two rows of identical columns. These columns are referred to as:

- Column 1 – the timesing column; this column is useful on occasions where there are identical or repeat items
- Column 2 – the dimension column; this column is used to record dimensions
- Column 3 – the squaring column; this column is used to record the computed quantities, and
- Column 4 – the description column; this is the widest column and is used to describe the measured items, in accordance with SMM7. This description will appear in the final bills of quantities.

Finally, as illustrated later, the right-hand side of the dimension column is reserved for what is referred to as the waste calculations. More specifically, they are the 'workings out' behind the figures entered in column 2.

One of the most important disciplines for a quantity surveyor to develop is to 'signpost' or annotate the dimensions so that other people can easily see where and how the dimensions have been calculated. A well signposted set of dimensions can save a lot of time in circumstances where work has to be remeasured at the final account stage.

When taking off quantities in accordance with SMM7 the units of measurement will be: cubic metres, square metres, linear metres and numbered items. In addition, there are some items that are required to be recorded as items, which are descriptions without a quantity, for example testing drainage.

When recording dimensions on the taking-off paper the order in which the dimensions are recorded is always length, width and depth as noted in Figure 3.4.

				Comment
	23.00		Length	
	2.38		Width	Note the use of the dimension column; the dimension is always underlined. SMM7 determines whether the items are measured as cubic, square or linear metres.
	0.89	m^3	Depth	
	23.00		Length	
	2.38	m^2	Width	
	23.00	m	Length	
	1	No	Numbered	
2/	23.00		If there is more than one identical item, the item can be multiplied by the number of the items, in this case two, instead of writing it again. The timesing column is used for this as shown	Dimensions are recorded to two decimal places in the dimension column. At the end of the taking-off stage the dimensions are squared and the result recorded in the squaring column and underlined. Once again two decimal places are used.
	2.38			
	0.89	114.63		
	23.00			
	2.38			
	0.89			
	16.00			
	5.78			
	2.90			
			The description is composed in accordance with the SMM7. Shorthand is often used, for example:	When there is more that one dimension that relates to a single description, the dimensions should be bracketed together.
			Waste calculations	
	23.00		Excavating basements maximum depth over 2 not exceeding 4 metres commencing at reduced level 21.000 Add 2/1.000 2.000 Length 23.000	The waste calculation column is not strictly delineated, but the right side of the description column is used when required. Waste calculations are calculated to three decimal places, then rounded off for the dimension column.
	2.38			
	0.89			
	23.00		Exc basements max depth over 2 but ne 4m dp commencing rl	In shorthand this will be:
	2.38			
	0.89			
			1	Column/page numbers

Figure 3.4 Measurement conventions

One of the cardinal rules when measuring quantities is always to use ink, never pencil. It may be tempting, particularly if learning the process, to use pencil, for ease of correction; however, this can cause embarrassment if the accuracy of the dimensions are called into question at some future date. If an error is made during the measurement process then there is a procedure that should be followed.

	23.00 2.38 0.89 56.90 2.38 0.67 78.09 2.38 1.02 65.00 2.38 0.89	 NIL 	In this case the dimension qualified by 'NIL' will be ignored when the dimensions are squared.	

Figure 3.5

Anding-on

There are quite a few occasions during the measurement process where more than one item has the same set of dimensions. In order to avoid repetition, a description that refers to the same dimensions can be anded-on as illustrated in Figure 3.6.

	23.00 2.38 56.90 2.38 78.09 2.38 65.00 2.38	 	Excavating topsoil for preservation average 150 mm deep & Compact bottoms of excavations	

Figure 3.6

Anding-on can also be used in the situation illustrated in Figure 3.7.

	23.00 2.38 56.90 2.38 78.09 2.38 65.00 2.38		Excavating topsoil for preservation average 150 mm deep & Disposal of excavated material off site X 0.15 = m^3	

Figure 3.7

In this situation although the two items anded-on have different units (m^2 and m^3) the two items can be anded-on and the description column used to make the necessary adjustments.

Adds and deducts

Figured dimensions, that is dimensions shown on the drawings and scaled dimensions, that is dimensions scaled off drawings using a scale rule, can be used when measuring quantities; however, figured dimensions always take preference.

	23.00 2.38 56.90 2.38 78.09 2.38 65.00 2.38		Excavating topsoil for preservation average 150 mm deep & Compact bottoms of excavations	During the measurement process it is often necessary to add to or deduct from the quantities that have been previously measured. This is done by using the notations Add and Ddt. As the item to which the Add or Ddt refers to can be many sheets of dimension paper away it is vitally important that the Add or Ddt is referenced back to the item to which it refers. A common fault when using Adds and Ddts is to continue the sequence over the page to a different column. Never and-on over a page.

Figure 3.8

Timesing

This is a technique used by takers-off in a situation where dimensions are repeated. Frequently, this will occur when making adjustments for items such as windows and door openings, as illustrated in Figure 3.9.

			Windows	Note: the timesing column has been used to multiply the dimensions by the total area of deductions. Using this technique saves the taker off from having to record the same dimension 2, 4 or 6 times. Note also the way in which the windows are referenced in the waste column.
2/	2.30		Ddt 2,3	
	2.38		One brick wall in common bricks as before	
4/	6.90		5,6,7,9	
	2.38		&	
6/	8.09		Ddt 12–17	
	2.38		2 coat plaster to wall exceeeding	
4/	5.00		300 mm wide as before 22–25	
	2.38		&	
			Ddt	
			2 coat emulsion to plaster walls ab	

Figure 3.9

Dotting on

.32	23.00		Excavating topsoil for preservation average 150 mm deep	Dotting on is a technique used to add additional items to ones already measured. In the example illustrated the first dimension has previously been timsed by 2 and then a further 3 have been dotted on to make a total of 5 times.
/	2.38			
	56.90		&	
	2.38			
	78.09		Compact bottoms of excavations	
	2.38			
	65.00			
	2.38			

Figure 3.10

Centre lines and mean girths

A technique used by takers-off when measuring items in the substructure and the external walls is the calculation of a centre line

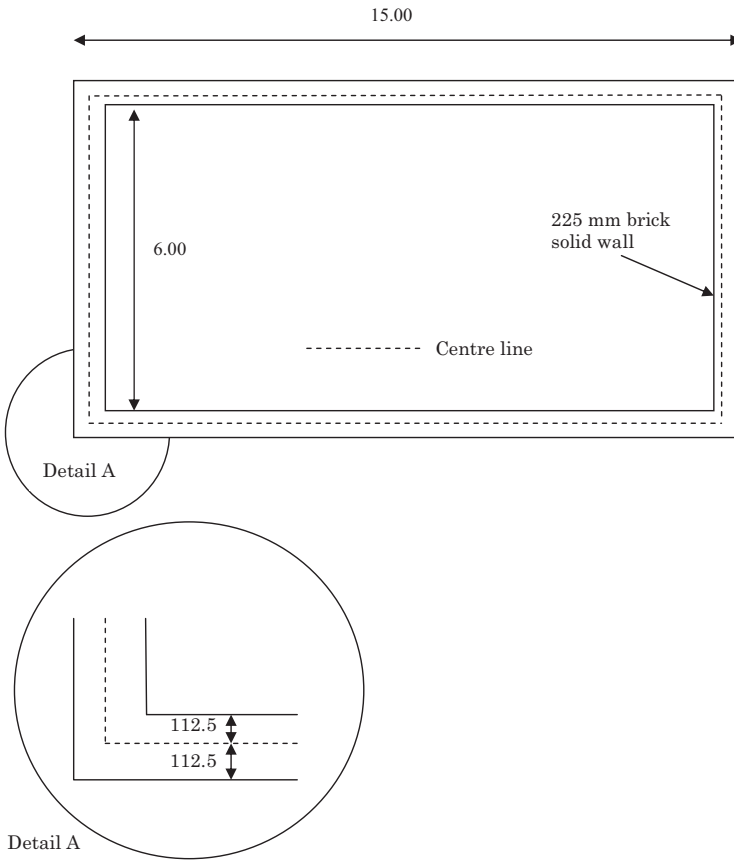


Figure 3.11

or mean girth. In Scotland a different approach is sometimes used, known as 'over and between'.

Figure 3.11 is a plan of a simple building where the mean girth approach would be applicable. Depending on circumstances the mean girth can be calculated from the internal or external face; in the following example the internal dimensions will be used.

				Mean girth		Note: using the internal dimensions as a basis for each internal corner twice times, half times the thickness of the wall is added to the internal girth. The resulting dimension 42.00 represents the average or mean girth and this can be used in the measurement of many items such as trench excavation, masonry, concrete in foundations, etc.
					15.000	
			Less Brickwork			
				2/0.225	0.450	
				Length	14.550	
				Width	6.000	
				2/ 20.550		
				Internal girth	41.100	
		Add		4/2/112.5	0.900	
			MEAN GIRTH		**42.000**	

Figure 3.12 has the same overall dimensions to Figure 3.11 except that there is a 4 m × 1.5 m inset as shown.

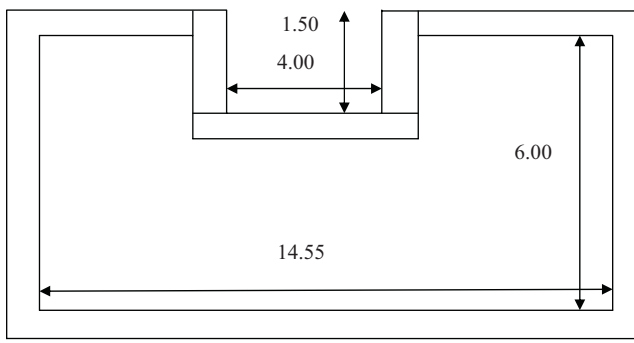


Figure 3.12

				Mean girth		In this example again the mean girth length will be calculated. As far as calculating the mean girth is concerned the internal and external angles in the inset cancel each other out, therefore to calculate the mean girth 4/2/ the thickness of the wall needs to be either added to the internal girth or deducted from the external girth.
			Length	2/14.550	29.100	
			Width	2/ 6.000	12.000	
					41.100	
			Add Inset	2/20.550	3.000	
					44.100	
			Add	4/2/112.5	0.900	
			MEAN GIRTH		**45.000**	

Making a start

Measurement is one of the key skills demanded of a quantity surveyor and goes hand in hand with an in-depth knowledge of construction technology.

Having mastered the basic measurement conventions it is now time to start taking off; but where to start? It is assumed for the purposes of this pocket book that a complete set of drawn information is available, whereas in practice the starting point may be dictated by the information at the surveyor's disposal. It is assumed that the group method is to be used to manage the taking-off process, as described earlier in this section, starting with substructure.

Substructure involves the measurement of all work up to and including the damp-proof course. It includes a variety of trades such as excavation, concrete work and masonry.

Example 1 – substructure

As with most measurement exercises it is good practice to start with a taking-off list containing all the items that have to be included.

Substructure – taking-off list

• Site preparation	Removing trees and shrubs Lifting turf Top soil/removing/preserving
• Excavation	Reduce levels/disposal of excavated material Excavating trenches/disposal of excavated material/filling/surface treatments
• Working space	See D20.6.1
• Earthwork support	To sides of reduced level/sides of trenches
• Concrete	Foundations Beds/formwork/damp-proof membrane
• Masonry	Brick walls/facings Forming cavities Filling to cavities Damp-proof courses

Site levels

Virgin sites will almost certainly be covered with a layer of vegetation that has to be removed prior to excavation and stored separately or removed from site. Top soil cannot be used for backfilling as it would, over time, cause damage to the substructure. The usual default depth for topsoil is 150 mm although it could be more than this and a test pit may be dug to accurately determine the actual depth.

Figure 3.13 shows a 5 m grid of a survey of levels taken on a proposed site.

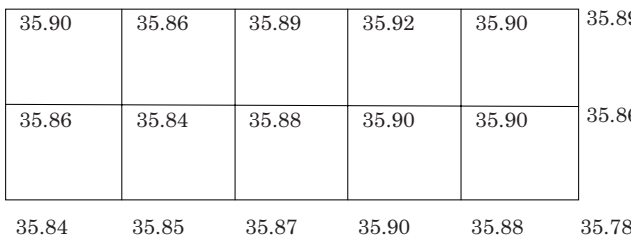


Figure 3.13

The site is required to be reduced to a level of 35.62 and in order to calculate the volume of excavation required the average level of the site must be determined. This can be quite easily done by weighting the levels as follows starting at the top left-hand corner of the site (35.90) and working from left to right:

35.90	35.90
35.86 × 2	71.72
35.89 × 2	71.78
35.92 × 2	71.84
35.90 × 2	71.80
35.89	35.89
35 86 × 2	71.72
35.84 × 4	143.36
35.88 × 4	143.52
35.90 × 4	143.60
35.90 × 4	143.60
35.86 × 2	71.72
35.84	35.84
35.85 × 2	71.70

(*continued*)

35.87 × 2	71.74	
35.90 × 2	71.80	
35.88 × 2	71.76	
35.78 × 2	71.56	
× 41	1470.85	= 35.87

Average site level	35.87
Less	
Reduced level	35.62
Excavation	0.25

In the above case the grid levels have been multiplied by the number of grid squares that are affected by a level, the resultant total is then divided to provide an average depth of 0.25 m.

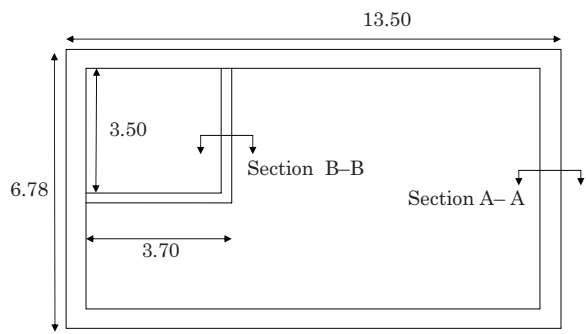


Figure 3.14 Ground floor plan showing external and internal walls

Figure 3.15 shows a cross-section through the trench and reduced-level excavation required for the external wall in Example 1. Note that the levels have been reduced internally by 150 mm to allow for a 150 mm thick bed of hardcore. The top of the hardcore bed when compacted will be covered or blinded with sand to prevent the damp-proof membrane, a layer of polythene sheet with a minimum thickness of 0.30 mm, being perforated by the hardcore. It is important that the material used as hardcore is inert and free from chemicals, vegetable or other deleterious matter. It is a requirement of the Building Regulations that insulation is incorporated into the floor construction and in this case 50 mm thick rigid insulation board has been used. The decision as whether to position the boards above or

below the slab is one of personal choice. The bottom of the trench excavation when completed will be compacted prior to the concrete being poured, this is to prevent the soil being incorporated into the concrete and weakening the mix. This is particularly important when reinforced concrete is being used, where it is common to blind the bottom of the excavation with a weak mix concrete before the reinforcement is placed in position.

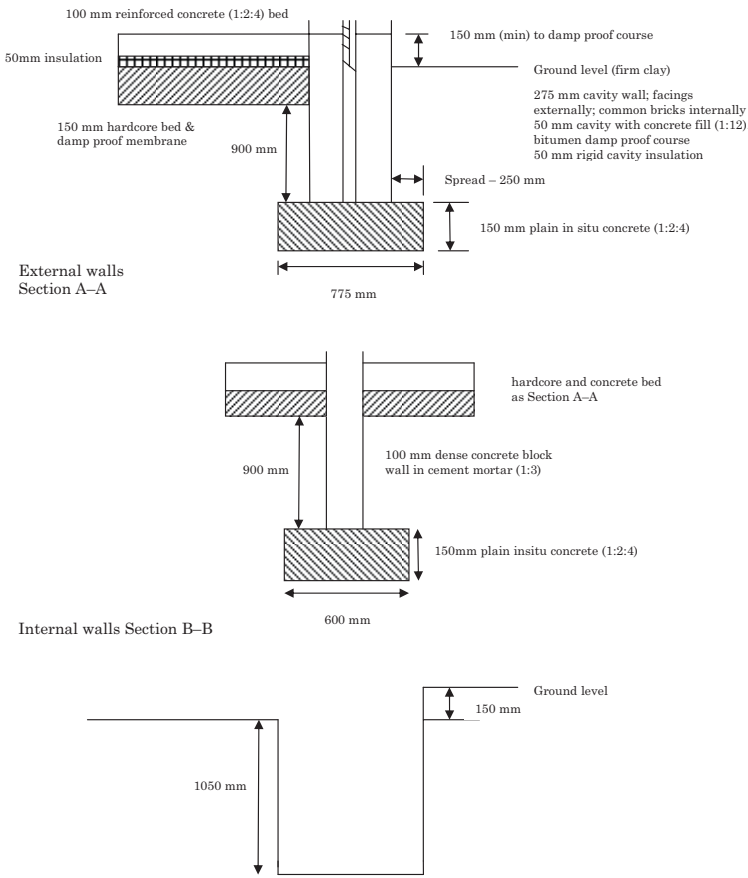


Figure 3.15

It is a requirement of SMM7 that earthwork support is measured to faces of excavation over 250 mm high. However, SMM7 also adds the caveat 'whether or not required' (D20.7), placing the risk on the contractor as whether or not to use earthwork support. There are clear health and safety issues here for the contractor, who must decide, having priced the item in the bills of quantities, whether he is actually going to use earthwork support on site.

Excavation – sundry items

There are some other common items in SMM7 relating to excavation that need to be discussed.

Working space

Clause D20.6 allows working space to be measured in circumstances where workmen have to operate in situations that require them to work in trenches below ground level, for example when working with formwork, rendering, tanking or protection. It is measurable as a superficial item where there is less than 600 mm between the face of the excavation and the work; all additional earthwork support, disposal, backfilling and breaking out are deemed to be included with the working space item. This is another contractor's risk item as he must decide and price what space he thinks is required as illustrated in Figure 3.16.

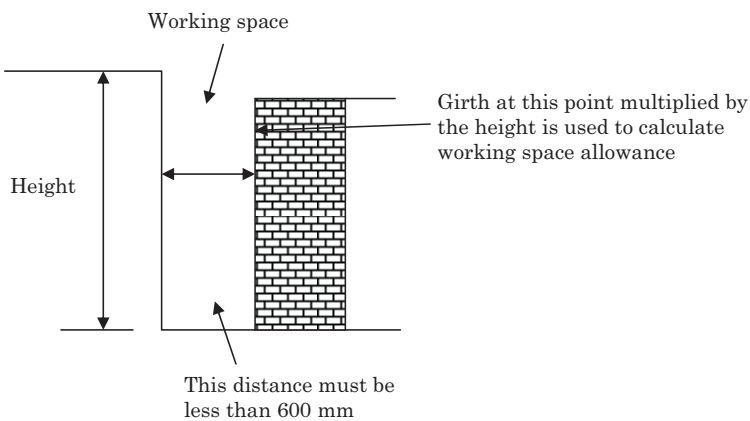


Figure 3.16 Section through trench illustrating working space allowance

Example 1 – Substructure

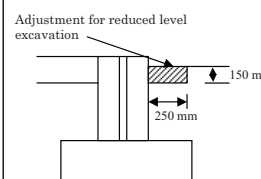
Oversite excavation

		13.500
	Add spread	
	2/0.250	0.500
	LENGTH	14.000
	Width	6.780
	Add spread	
	2/0.250	0.500
	WIDTH	7.280

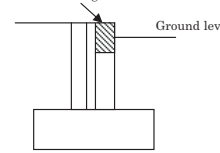
14.00 7.28 0.15	Excavating to reduce levels maximum depth not exceeding 0.25 m	
	&	
	Disposal of excavated material off site	
	Mean girth	The mean girth has been calculated from the outside face of the external wall. To determine the mean girth deduct four times the thickness of the external wall.
	Length 13.500	
	Width 6.780	
	2/20.280	
	40.560	
	Ddt 4/2/½/0.275 1.100	
	Mean girth 39.460	
	Internal partition	
	3.500	If the starting level of the trench excavation is over 250 mm below the existing ground level, then this must be stated in the description, SMM7 D20.1.
	3.700	
	7.200	
	Ddt	
	Spread to external walls	
	2/0.250 0.500	
	6.700	
39.46 0.78 1.05 6.70 0.60 1.05	Excavating trenches width over 0.30 m	
	&	
	Filling to excavations average thickness exceeding 0.25 m	At this point it is assumed that all of the trench will be backfilled. When concrete and brickwork are measured later the quantities of filling will be adjusted.
14.00 7.28	Surface treatments compacting bottoms of excavations	

2/	39.46		Earthwork support maximum depth not exceeding 1.00 m and distance between opposing faces not exceeding 2.00 m	The centre line can be used to measure the earth work support, but an additional length must be included for reduced level.
	1.05			
	42.56			
	0.15			
2/	6.70		Intl partition Earthwork support to RL	
	1.05		14.000	
			7.280	
			2/21.280	
			42.560	
				Earthwork support has also been included to the trench for the internal partition.
	39.46		In situ concrete (1:2:4) foundations thickness not exceeding 150 mm poured against earth.	Now that the concrete has been measured the filling can be adjusted together with the disposal of excavated material.
	0.78			
	0.15			
	6.70			
	0.60		&	
	0.15			
			Ddt	
			Filling to excavation avg thickness exc 0.25 m ab	
			&	
			Add	
			Disposal of excavated mats ab	
			Brickwork	
			Foundations 0.900	
			Hardcore 0.150	
			Insulation 0.050	
			Concrete bed 0.100	
			Height 1.200	
2/	39.46		Walls half brick thick in common bricks laid stretcher bond in cement mortar (1:3)	
	1.20			
			Internal partitions	
	7.20		Walls in dense concrete blocks 100 mm thick in cement mortar (1:3)	
	1.20			
			2	

	39.46 1.20		Forming cavities in hollow walls 50 mm wide with and including stainless steel twisted wire wall ties @ 5 per square metre.	Wall ties are generally spaced at 900 mm horizontal and 450 mm vertically for cavities between 50 and 75 mm wide
	39.46 0.08 1.15		In situ concrete (1:12) filling to hollow walls not exceeding 150 mm thick.	The cavity filling is slightly less than the item for forming cavities to take account of the splay to the top edge. Note cavity fill should be stopped at least 225 mm below the base of the dpc.
			Adjustment for brickwork in trenches	
	39.46 0.28 0.90		Ddt ***External walls*** Filling to excavation ab	
	7.20 0.10 0.90		& ***Partitions*** Add Disposal of excavation mats ab	
			Girth of external face 40.560 Add 4/2/½/0.250 1.000 41.560	
	41.56 0.25 0.15		Ddt Disposal of excavated mats ab	
			&	
			Add Filling to excavation ab	
2/	39.46 0.11 7.20 0.10		Horizontal dense polythene damp-proof courses not exceeding 225 mm wide lapped 150 mm at joints and bedded in gauge mortar (1:1:6)	Damp-proof courses come in variety of materials including bituminous felt, lead cored felt and dense polythene. It is applied to both leaves of a cavity wall and lapped 150 mm at joint in the dpc. It must not bridge or span the cavity.
			3	



			Ground floor	
			13.500 Less Extl walls 2/0.275 0.550 12.950 6.780 Less Extl walls 2/0.275 0.550 6.230	
	12.95 6.23		Reinforced in situ concrete (1:3:6) bed not exceeding 150 mm thick X 0.10 = m³ & Fabric reinforcement Ref A252 weighing 3.95 kg/m² with 150 mm minimum side and end laps. & Imported hardcore filling to make up levels not exceeding 0.25 m thick compacted in layers 150 mm thick X 0.15 = m³ & Surface treatment compacting filling including blinding with sand & 1200 gauge polythene horizontal damp-proof membrane exceeding 300 mm wide laid on blinded hardcore to receive insulation & 50 mm thick horizonal rigid sheet insulation laid on concrete	Note: the damp-proof membrane and damp-proof course are lapped on the inner skin of the external wall.
	7.20 0.10		Ddt Internal partition Last 6 items	
			4	

2/	12.95		Damp-proof membrane ad not exceeding 200 mm wide	
2/	6.23			
	3.50			
2/	3.60			
2/	3.70			
			Adjustment of facings to external skin	
			Centre line for external skin	Previously, the external wall has been measured with two skins of common bricks. However, the external skin is built in facings, a much more durable and weather resistant brick. Facing bricks also provide a much superior finish. The facings extend 150 mm below the finished ground level
			External face 40.560	
			Ddt 4/2/½/0.112.5 0.450	
			40.110	
				Adjustment for facings 
	40.11		Half brick wall in facings, vertical pointed one side	
	0.30			
			&	
			Ddt Half brick wall in common bricks ab.	The SMM7 requires other items to be included in the substructure such as disposal of surface water, which is included as an item. This is best done at draft bill stage.
			5	

Extra over items

SMM7 stipulates that certain types of excavations have to be measured as extra over. These include: excavating below ground water level, next to existing services and breaking out rock, reinforced concrete, etc. – see D20.3.4.5 for a full list.

Example 2 – walls from damp-proof course to wall plate

This section includes work from the damp-proof course up to eaves level and includes both internal and external walls. Work is measured over all doors, windows and other openings, these being adjusted at a later stage. The theory is that it is better to overmeasure and then make deductions and adjustment later, rather than measure net. In this way, if items are missed then at least something has been included!

SMM7 Section F deals with the measurement of masonry and includes brick and block walling, the unit of measurement is generally the square metre.

Brickwork

The standard size for a brick is accepted to be 215×102.5×65 mm thick; however, when the mortar is included this becomes 225×112.5×75 mm thick. Therefore a one brick wall will be assumed to be 225 mm thick and a two brick wall 450 mm thick. Bricks are delivered to site pre-packed on wooden pallets for easy unloading and bought by the thousand, except for specially made units. Bricks can be broadly categorised as follows:

Common bricks: these are suitable for general building work where the finish is not important. Common bricks are made from clay and are cheaper than other alternatives.

Facing bricks: facings come in a wide variety of finishes, colours, strengths and prices and are used typically in the external skin of cavity walls. Also made from clay, facing bricks are weather resistant and generally finished with pointed joints.

Engineering bricks: these bricks have low water absorption properties and a high compressive strength. Typically used in retaining walls, bridges and manholes.

Calcium silicate bricks: sometimes referred to as sand lime facings, these are of the more easily recognisable forms of facings made from sand, crushed flint and lime.

Walls of one brick thick and over can be built in common brickwork with facings on one side. In this case the facing brickwork is measured as extra over.

Expansion joints
In order to avoid excessive cracking 16 mm thick vertical expansion joints are required in brickwork, generally at 12 metre centres, whereas when using calcium silicate bricks the joints must be at 7.5–9.0 metre intervals and 10 mm thick. The material used for expansion joints can be:

Flexible cellular polyethylene
Cellular polyethylene
Foam rubber

The joint is finished with a sealant at least 10 mm deep.

Blockwork

Blockwork comes in larger units than brickwork with the standard size being 440×215×100 mm, as well as a variety of thicknesses. As with brickwork, once the mortar is included this becomes 450×225×100 mm, therefore six standard bricks are equal in size to one block; an important fact, as bricks and blocks are used for inner and outer skins of hollow walls.

Dense blockwork
Dense blocks are suitable for above and below ground situations and are made from cement, sand and crushed gravel.

Lightweight blockwork
Lightweight blocks include lightweight aggregates and are generally used for the internal skins of external walls or where a high degree of thermal insulation is required. They are lighter and easier to handle on site than dense concrete blocks with poor sound insulation qualities.

Mortar

There are a variety of commonly used mortar mixes that should match the type, location and strength of the masonry. As a general

rule the mortar should not be as strong as the brick or block, thereby allowing any cracking to take place in the joint and not the masonry. Therefore, a mortar mix of cement:sand (1:3) would be classed as a strong mix whereas a mix of cement:lime:sand (1:1:6) would be classified as a weaker mix. Liquid plasticisers can be used in place of lime to improve mortar workability.

Walls: taking-off list

- External walls — External skin, Internal skin, Forming cavity
- Cavities — Insulation, Blockwork
- Internal partitions — Stud partitions

The external and internal walls contain windows and doors and the adjustment for these elements will be included in the measurement of the doors and windows.

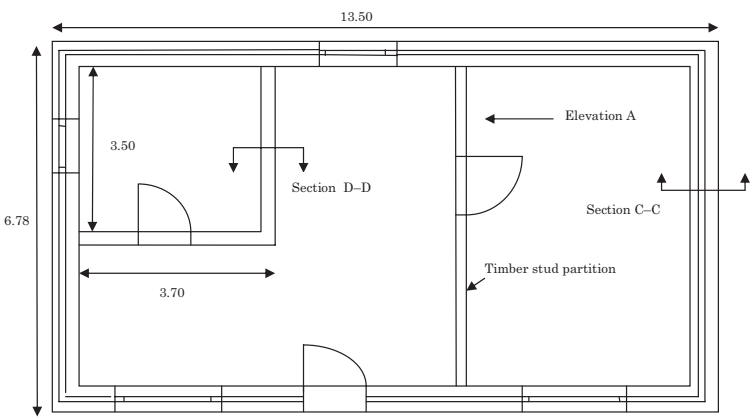
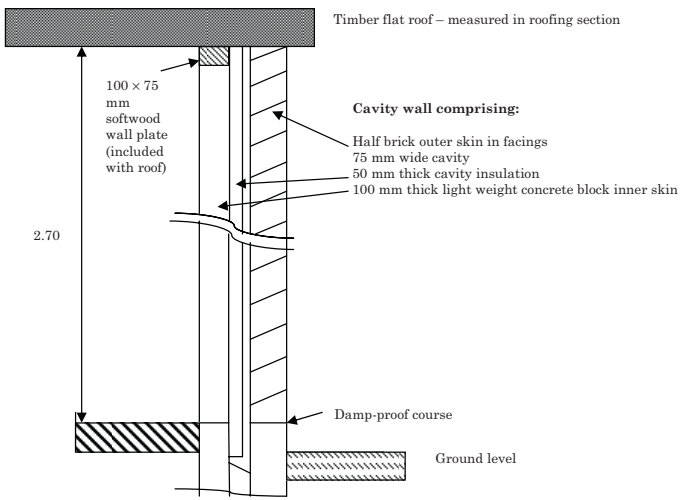


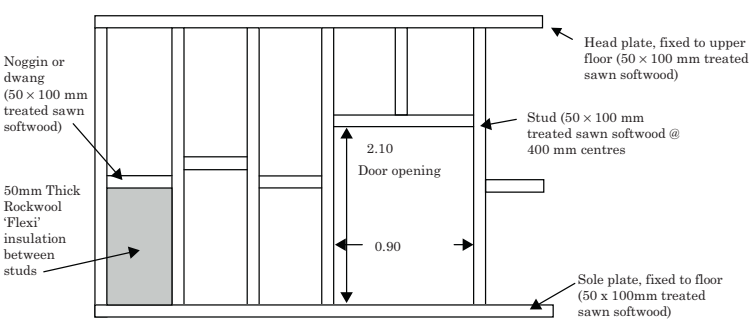
Figure 3.17 Plan showing external and internal walls

Stud partitions

Timber stud partitions are generally non-load bearing internal partitions comprising a framework of timber struts covered both sides with plasterboard. It is common practice to insulate the partitions to reduce sound transmission. The joints are formed with nails.



External wall Section C–C



Elevation A–A – plasterboard not shown

Example 2 – Walls

External walls

Mean girths

Facings	13.500
	6.780
	2/20.280
	40.560
Ddt 4/2/½/112.5	0.450
Mean girth	40.110

40.11 × 2.70 — Half brick wall in facings, vertical pointed one side ab

Blockwork

	13.500
Less 2/0.275	0.550
	12.950
	6.780
Less	0.550
	6.230
	12.950
	2/19.280
	38.560
Add 4/2/½/.100	0.400
	38.960
	Height
	2.700
Less Wall plate	0.075
	2.625

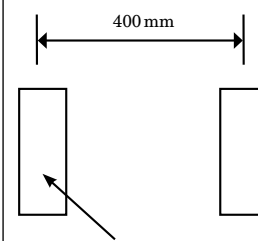
38.96 × 2.63 — Walls in lightweight concrete blocks 100 mm thick in gauge mortar (1:1:6)

	12.950
Add 2/0.10	0.200
	13.150
	6.230
	0.200
	6.430
	13.150
	2/19.580
	39.160
Add 4/2/½/0.08	0.320
Cavity centre line	39.480

39.48 × 2.70 — Forming cavities in hollow walls 75 mm wide with and including stainless steel twisted wire wall ties @ 5 per square metre.

	38.560
Add 4/2/½/0.150	0.600
	39.160

	39.16 2.70		50 mm Rockwool cavity wall insulation including polypropylene insulation retainers @ 5 per square metre.	
			Internal walls	A timber stud partition is a common form of construction for internal partitions. They may either be load bearing, in which case they will be formed from 50 × 100 mm treated sawn softwood or, none load bearing, in which case they will be formed from 75 × 50 mm timber and in some cases can be 38 × 75 mm. In order to provide sound insulation, studs around bedrooms and bathrooms often have a sound deadening quilt or sheet sandwiched between the studs. The head and sole plates are fixed directly to the ceiling and floor joist or board flooring. The sole plate can be plugged and screwed to concrete. Stud partitions can be covered with various types of plasterboard or other sheet finishes.
			Timber stud partition Number of studs	
			6.230 ÷ 0.400 centres = 15.575 This figure should be rounded up to 16. However, 16 is the number of spaces, not studs, therefore another item should be added = 15 + 1 + 1 = 17 No	
17/ 2/ 16/	2.55 6.23 0.35		50 x 100 mm treated sawn softwood wall or partition member	
	0.90		Door head	
			Height 2.700 Less Head and sole plates 2/0.75 0.150 2.550	
			Head and sole plate 6.230	
			Noggings Studs @ 400 mm centres 0.400 Less 2/½/0.050 0.050 Length 0.350	Note SMM7 only requires details of fixing when it is not at the discretion of the contractor. In other words where some specific method of fixing is specified by the architect or the engineer.
			Adjustment for door opening	
2/	2.10 0.35		Ddt Last item	
	6.23 2.70		50 mm thick Rockwool Flexi vertical sheet insulation between members @ 400 mm centres.	
			2.550 Less Nogging 0.050 2.500	
	0.90 2.10		Ddt Ditto Door	
			2	



50 × 100 mm stud

In addition to timber stud partitions can be made from proprietary metal systems.

Sundry items of masonry

The following items are commonly met by the quantity surveyor when measuring masonry.

Apart from half brick skins in hollow walls, brickwork comes in three classifications from the SMM7 viewpoint, these are:

Common brickwork, where the wall of whatever thickness is built entirely of common brickwork. The brickwork will have an 'as built' finish and will be used where the appearance of the finished work is unimportant.

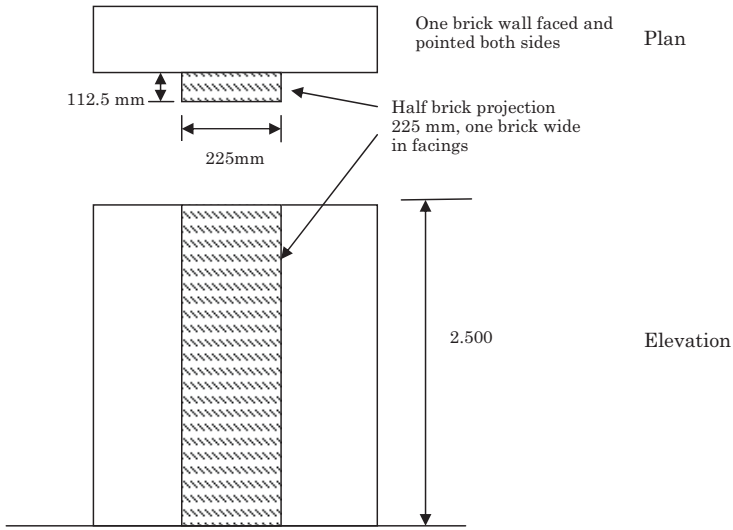
Common brickwork with facework one side. This can be used in any situation where the brickwork thickness is of one brick and is built with an 'as built' finish on one face, whereas the other face can be built with a more expensive facing brick with pointing. For example:

			One brick wall in common bricks, vertical, English bond in gauged mortar (1:1:6) facework and pointed one side in facings with recessed joint as the work proceeds.	

Brick facework both sides, where both sides of the brickwork are finished fair with facings or a fair face and pointing. It is therefore possible to have a two brick thick wall, built from common bricks with facings both sides.

			Two brick wall in common bricks, vertical, Flemish bond in gauged mortar (1:1:6) facework and pointed both sides in facings with recessed joint as the work proceeds.	

With the exception of closing cavities and bonding new work to existing, all labour such as rough and fair cutting, throats, mortices, etc. is included and does not have to be measured separately.



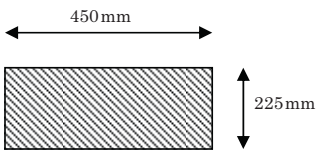
	0.23 2.50		Ddt One brick wall in facings vertical pointed both sides ab. & Add One brick wall in common bricks vertical in English bond in gauged mortar (1:1:6) faced and pointed one side with a recessed joint as the work proceeds.	Because the thickness of the brickwork for the length of the pier is over one brick this portion of the wall becomes a one and a half brick wall in common bricks, faced both sides according to the SMM7 conventions. In reality the contractor would build the wall entirely of facings as it would be impractical to do anything else.
	2.50		Projections in facings in English bond one and half bricks wide and half brick projection, vertical in gauged mortar (1:1:6) and pointing as the work proceeds	Note: according to SMM7 Clause F10.5.1.1, projections are measured in linear metres. Extra pointing to the reveals is included in the item and not measured separately.

Projections

Brick walls are often built with piers (projections) beyond the face of the wall as a means of adding structural stability.

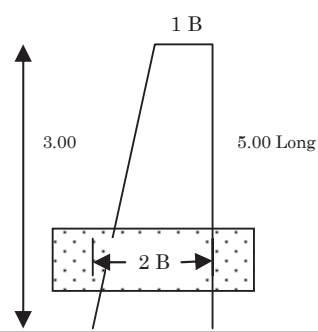
Isolated piers

According to SMM7 a wall becomes an isolated pier when the length on plan is less than four times its thickness. Conversely, when the length on plan exceeds four times the thickness then the classification is wall. For example:



	0.45 2.50		Isolated pier, one brick thick vertical in common bricks laid English bond in gauged mortar ab.	Isolated piers are measured in square metres.

Tapering walls

	5.00 3.00			Tapering walls have to be described and the average thickness calculated.

1½ (Average) thick wall tapering one side in common bricks in cement mortar (1:3)

Example 3 – floors

Traditionally, ground and upper floors in domestic construction have been constructed from timber because it is:

- Readily available
- Cheap, and
- Easy to work with and fix on site.

Floor covering for most domestic construction is now provided with flooring grade tongued and grooved (t&g) chipboard as opposed to softwood boarding. Chipboard is cheaper and quicker to lay as it comes in large sheets although a disadvantage is that maintenance and access to the floor space can be more difficult compared with board flooring. Concrete and steel are just as suitable for floor construction although these materials are mainly used in medium and high rise buildings.

The SMM7 requires that timbers in excess of 6 m are kept separate and described as such as timber in such lengths as this is difficult to obtain and handle.

To stop floor joists twisting and deforming it is usual to insert a line of strutting fixed at right angles to the joists. Solid or herringbone strutting can be used.

Floor joists are generally spaced at 400 mm centres and can either be built into the inner leaf of the cavity wall provided a good seal can be afforded to the cavity (less common practice) or supported in a galvanised steel joist hanger built into the wall. In certain situations galvanised or stainless steel straps are required every 2 metres to provide restraint and prevent movement of the external walls. It may be necessary to incorporate sound insulation into the floor space.

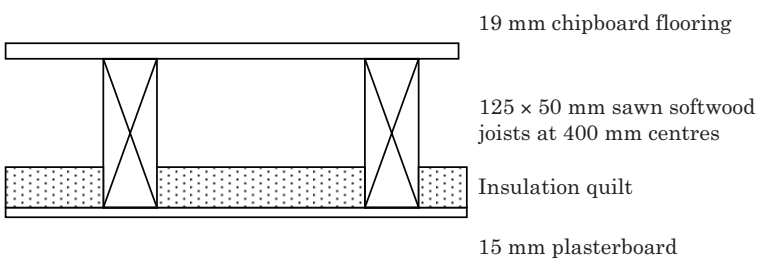


Figure 3.18 Section through timber upper floor

Figure 3.19 Galvanised mild steel joist hanger

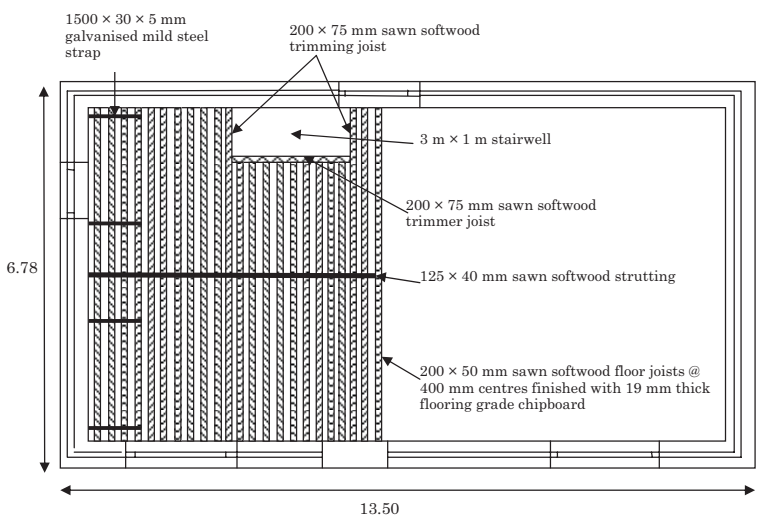


Figure 3.20 Plan showing upper floor joists

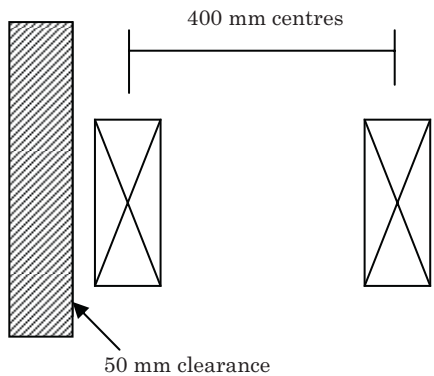


Figure 3.21

At openings in upper floors for stairs, etc., the floor joists are trimmed with larger timbers to provide extra support.

Upper floors – taking-off list

• Joists	Main flooring Trimming joists to stairwells, etc.
• Fixings	Joist hangers Straps
• Finishes	Boarding/chipboard Trimming

			Example 3 – Upper floors	The numbers of floor joists are calculated by dividing the centres into the required length.
			Numbers of joists	
			13.500	
			Less 2/ 0.275 0.550	Note that the first joist is not placed against the internal skin of the external wall, this is to reduce the chance of the timber becoming wet and rotting and allows space to run services, therefore the first joist is located 50mm from the masonry (see Figure 3.21).
			12.950	
			Ddt first &	
			Last joist 2/0.050 0.100	
			Ddt to centre	
			Lines 2/½/0.050 0.050 0.150	
			12.800	
			÷ 0.400	
			32 Spaces	
			+1 = 33 Joists	
			Length	
			6.780	
			Less 2/ 0.275 0.550	
			6.230	
33/	6.23		50 × 200mm treated sawn softwood floor members over 6m long in one length	
			Ddt ***Stairwell***	
9/	1.08		Last item 1.000	
2/	6.23		Add trimmer 0.075	
			1.075	
	3.00		75 × 200mm treated sawn sw floor members	
2/	6.23		75 × 200mm ditto over 6m long	
			1	

2/	33		2 mm galvanised mild steel joist hanger for 50 × 200 mm joist built into blockwork	
			Less Trimming joists 2 Trimmed joists 9	
2/	2 9		Ddt Last item	
2/	2		2 mm galvanised mild steel joist hanger for 75 × 200 mm joist built into blockwork	
	9		2 mm galvanised mild steel joist hanger for 50 × 200 mm joist built fixed to softwood	These hangers are for the ends of the trimmer and trimmed joists.
	2		2 mm galvanised mild steel joist hanger for 75 × 200 mm joist built fixed to softwood	Where joists run parallel to the external wall restraining straps are used. They should extend over at least three joists and are fixed at 2 m centres. One end is turned down and fixed into the cavity.
2/	4		30 × 5 × 1500 mm long galvanised mild steel restraint strap once bent	
	12.95		38 mm thick sawn treated softwood joist strutting to joists 200 mm deep	Strutting is measured over the joists and not between them.
	12.95 6.23		19 mm thick flooring grade tongued and grooved chipboard exceeding 300 mm	
	3.00 1.00		Ddt ***Stair well*** Last item	
			2	

Example 4 – roofs (pitched and flat)

The majority of roofs found in domestic construction are pitched and covered with tiles or slate. For medium and high rise buildings it is more usual to have a flat roof covered with a high performance sheet finishing. Flat roofs are generally more problematic from a maintenance and life-cycle cost point of view. Traditionally, roof structures were constructed in-situ from individual timbers, as detailed in Figure 3.22; however, most domestic roofs are today constructed from prefabricated timber roof trusses that are delivered to site by lorry and hoisted into place with a crane. Increasingly, eaves boards and fascias, traditionally made from softwood and plywood, are being manufactured in plastic, to reduce maintenance.

Pitched roofs – taking-off list

• Construction	Wall plate Rafters/hips/ridge/valley/ceiling joists Trusses/gable ladder
• Coverings	Tiling/battens/underlay Ridges/hips/valley/eaves courses/flashings/soakers
• Earthwork support water goods	Fascia/eaves soffit/support/spandrel boxed ends/ tilting fillet/painting Rainwater gutters/pipes/fittings

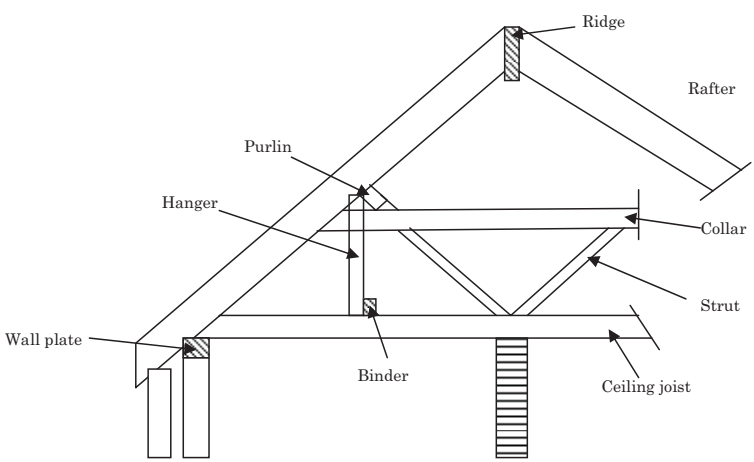


Figure 3.22 Pitched roof members

Mono-pitch roof

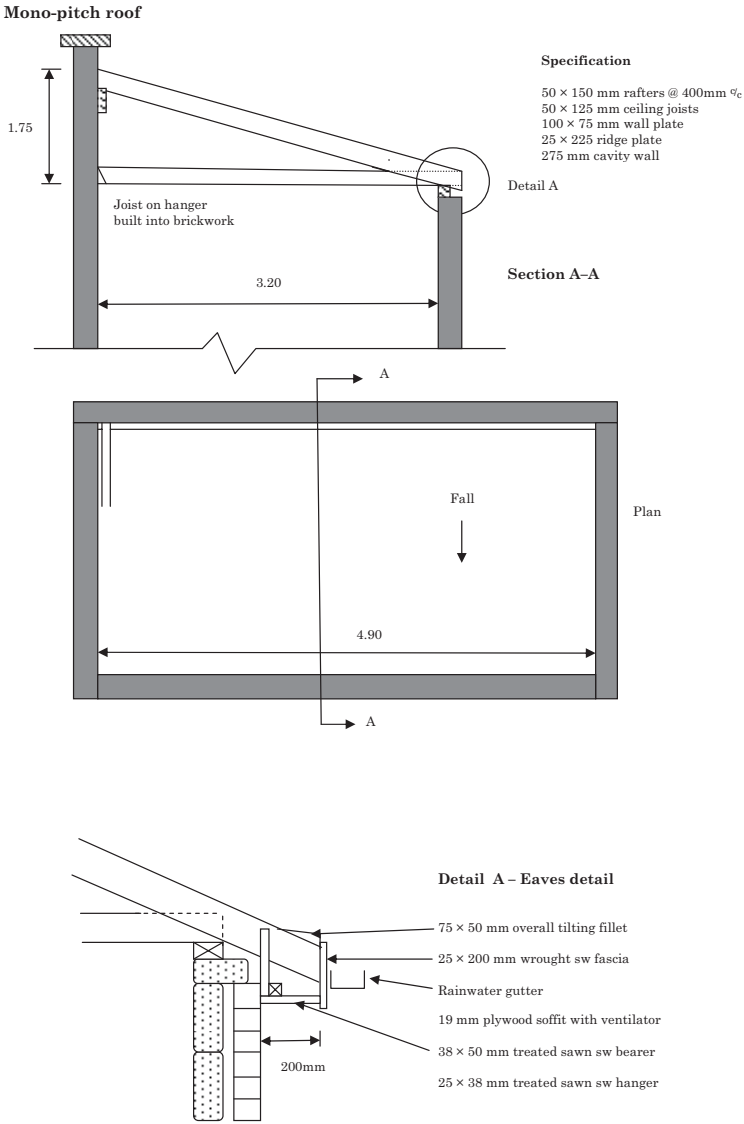


Figure 3.23 Mono-pitched roof

Example 4 – Roofs

4.90 100 × 75 mm treated sawn softwood plate.

Rafters

4.900
Less 2/0.050 0.100
2/½/0.50 0.050 0.150
÷ 0.400 4.750
12 + 1 = 13
Length
3.200
Add External wall 0.275
3.475
$1.750^2 = 3.063$
$3.475^2 = 12.076$
$\sqrt{15.139}$

Length of rafter 3.891

13/
3.89 50 × 150 mm treated sawn softwood pitched roof member

Joists

13/
3.48 50 × 125 mm treated sawn softwood pitched roof member

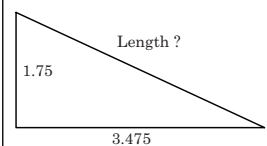
4.90 25 × 225 mm treated sawn softwood plate plugged and screwed to brickwork

13 2 mm galvanised mild steel joist hanger for 50 × 125 mm joist built into brickwork

Insulation

4.90
3.20 150 mm thick insulation laid between joists at 400 mm centres

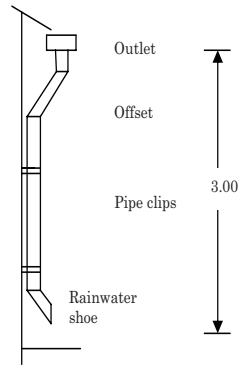
The rafters are spaced at 400 mm centres which gives almost exactly 12 spaces + 1 = 13 rafters.
Length of rafters



If the drawing was to scale then it could be quite possible to measure the length of the rafters off the drawing. However, given that figured dimensions take preference over scaled dimensions it is preferable to calculate the length of the rafters using basic trigonometry.

			Eaves detail A ***Tilting fillet***	In this example a traditional form of eaves construction is detailed. The end of the eaves must be sealed with a single piece of plywood or timber referred to as a Spandril boxed end in the following shape:
	4.90		75 × 50 mm overall treated sawn softwood triangular individual support	
			4.900 Add Brick walls 2/0.275 0.550 5.450 Less Spandrils 2/0.025 0.050 5.400	In order to prevent the spread of rot or other timber defects in the roof timbers, the eaves should contain permanent ventilation.
	5.40		25 × 200 mm wrot softwood fascia board grooved & Eaves board 0.200 Rebate 0.010 0.210 19 × 210 mm external quality plywood eaves soffit board	Sundry items of softwood support are grouped together and measured in accordance with G20.13.
	2		19 mm external quality plywood spandril boxed end size 225 × 250 mm overall	Joint of fascia and eaves soffit.
13/	0.20		25 × 38 mm treated sawn softwood individual support	
	5.40		38 × 25 mm ditto plugged and screwed to blockwork	
	4.90		Manthorpe crossflow eaves ventilator fixed to plywood	
			2	

2/	5.40		Prime only before fixing wood general surfaces n.e. 300 mm girth	In this example timber and plywood have been used for boxing out the eaves and therefore it will need to be painted for protection against the elements. The traditional specification is:
2/	1		**Spandrils** Ditto isolated areas n.e. 0.50 m^2	Knot, prime, stop, two coats of undercoat and one coat gloss.
			Fascia & soffits	Knot refers to painting knots in the wood with shellac knotting to prevent sap leaking from the knot and spoiling the finish. Prime refers to painting with a coat of primer before any paint is applied. Stopping refers to filling in any imperfections in the surface of the timber with linseed oil putty/premixed wood filler. After all this preparation the timber is sanded down and two undercoats and one coat of gloss are applied.
			Fascia 0.200 Add 2/0.025 0.050 Soffit 0.200 0.450	
	5.40 0.45		Knot, prime, stop, two undercoats and one coat gloss to general surfaces of wood exceeding 300 mm externally	
			Rainwater goods	This convention relates to the time when most paint was oil based and three coats were required in order to provide adequate protection. However, with modern painting systems the specification should be studied to discover the correct approach to decoration.
			5.450 Add overhang 2/0.050 0.100 5.550	
	5.50		114 mm Hunter plastics Squareflo black rainwater gutter (ref. R114) with and including support bracket (ref. R395)	
	1		Extra over for running outlet (ref. R376)	Items such as skirtings and architraves have the backs of the timber sections primed before they are fixed.
2/	1		Ditto stopend (ref. R380)	
	3.00		65 mm Hunter plastics Squareflo rainwater pipe (ref. R300) with push fit socket joints and stand off brackets (ref. R388) at 2 m centres plugged to masonry	Rainwater goods include rainwater gutters and pipes and associated fittings such as stop ends and offsets.

	1		Extra over for adjustable offset (ref. R399) & Ditto rainwater shoe (ref. R391) 3	

Double pitch roofs

Trussed rafters

Most modern roofs (1970 onwards) are constructed using trussed rafters, the most common of which is the Fink truss (after Mr Fink). Trussed rafters are prefabricated off site and because of their engineered design, the timber sections used in the truss, typically 70–80 mm deep×30–47 mm wide, are considerably smaller than traditional pitched roofs. Joints are formed using toothed metal plates, sometimes known as 'gang-nails' pressed into the timber. Trussed rafters are able to offer the following advantages over traditional roof construction:

- Span up to 12 m
- Speed of construction
- Do not require skilled labour
- Eliminate load bearing internal partitions.

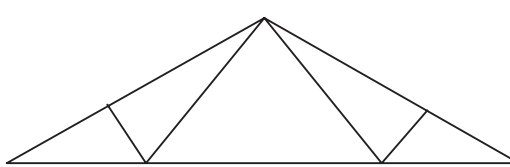


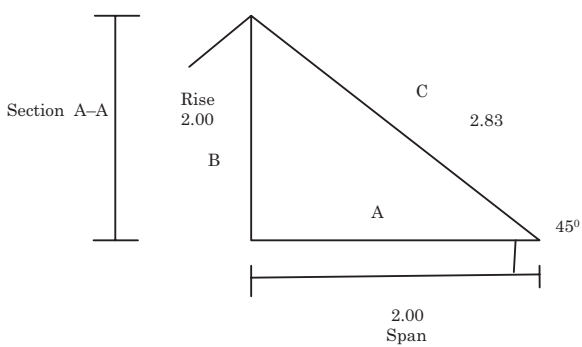
Figure 3.24 Typical Fink or W type truss

As with traditional roof construction a trussed rafter sits on a wall plate and is fixed by either nailing or with the use of special clips. It is good practice to strap the wall plate down to external walls. Once the trusses are erected, stability is achieved with longitudinal binders and diagonal braces that are required to prevent deformation of the roof from wind, etc. Overhanging verges at gables can be formed with the use of prefabricated gable ladders. It may be necessary to locate water tanks in the roof space, in which case the load should be distributed evenly over at least three trusses.

	18		Trussed rafters in sawn softwood Fink pattern 4000 mm clear span as drawing ref. DF127 Type 1	For engineered items such as a roof truss it is good practice to include a component drawing as SMM7 5.2.

The calculation of roof members is slightly different between hipped and gable ends as roof measurement requires the quantity surveyor to carry out a number of calculations depending on the amount of information available in order to calculate lengths of rafters and areas of roof coverings; once again figured dimensions take preference over scaled dimensions. It is common to have the span and rise of a pitched roof marked on the drawings.

The length of rafter and the area of sloping roof coverings can usually be calculated using simple trigonometry, for example (see Figure 3.25): the length of the rafter C can be determined using Pythagoras: $C = \sqrt{B^2 + A^2} = 2.83$.



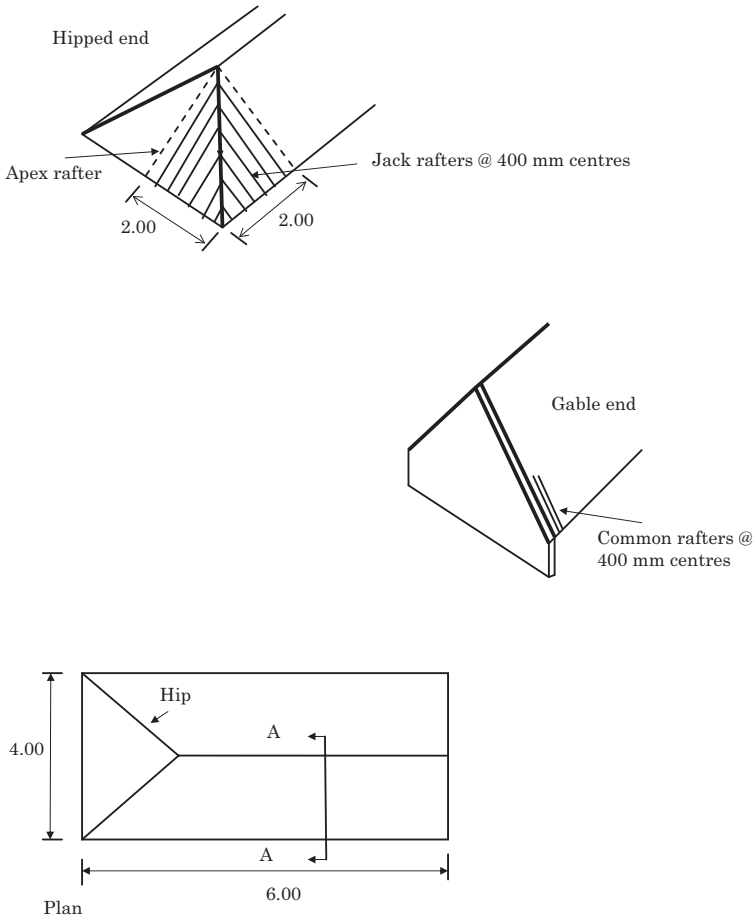


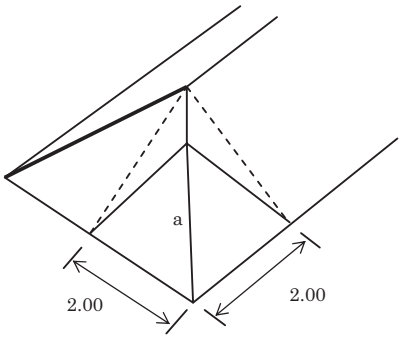
Figure 3.25 Details of pitched roof with one hipped and one gable end

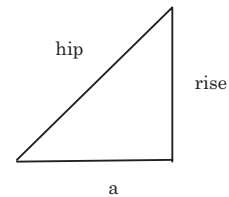
The span is taken to the extreme projection of the roof and includes eaves projections, etc.

The length of the hip also has to be calculated as follows:

To calculate a: $a = \sqrt{2.00^2 + 2.00^2} = 2.83$

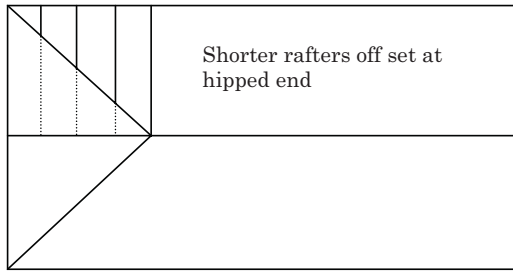
Therefore length of hip $= \sqrt{2.83^2 + 2.00^2} = 3.47$





As can be seen on the next page opposite, the formation of the hipped end requires a number of rafters to be cut in order to fit against the hip rafter. These shorter rafters are referred to as jack rafters and present no real problems to the measurer as the shorter rafters offset each other lengthwise in cases where the roof pitch at the hip equals the pitch of the main roof. However, an additional rafter, known sometimes as an apex rafter, must be added as indicated on Figure 3.26, as this is a complete addition to the structure.

Figure 3.26 A trussed roof with diagonal wind bracing and showing a gable ladder (left of picture)

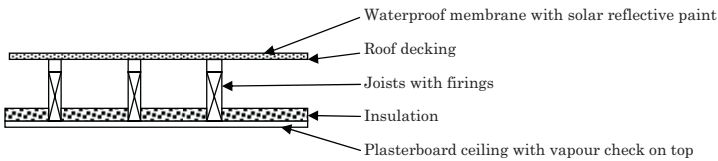


Therefore the number of rafters required for the hipped roof in Figure 3.26 is as follows:

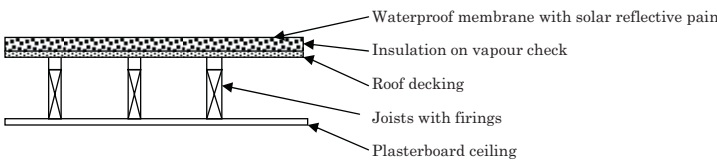
			Rafters	
			6.000	The length of the roof 6.00 is adjusted to take account of the gable end where the first rafter is on the inside face of the external wall. As previously, a clearance of 50 mm is allowed between the first rafter and the wall and the length is further adjusted to the centre line of the first rafter.
			Gable end	
			Less	
			External wall 0.275	
			Clearance 0.050	
			Cl of rafter 0.025 0.350	
			5.650	
			÷ 0.400	
			14.13 Spaces = 15 rafters	
2/15/	2.83		50 × 100 mm treated sawn softwood pitched roof member.	The number of rafters is multiplied by two for both slopes and an addition apex rafter is included.
	2.83			
			Hip rafters	
2/	3.47		50 × 150 mm ditto	

			Example 5 – Pitched roof coverings	
			(See Figure 3. 27)	
			The following in: Marley Eternit, Hawkins Staffordshire Blue plain clay roofing tiles and fittings	The following section is devoted to a proprietary form of tiling and therefore to avoid constant repartition it is common practice to include a heading 'The following in:' The end of the section should also be signposted.
2/	6.00 2.83		Roof coverings 265 × 165 mm tiles with 75 mm head lap 40° pitch each tile nailed with 2no 44 mm composition nails to 38 × 25 mm treated sawn softwood battens to one layer of felt to BS Type 1F with 100 mm minimum laps fixed with galvanised clout nails Ridge 6.000 Less 2.000 4.000	This example relates to Figure 3.27. The dimensions have been multiplied by 2 for both roof slopes. The area of the roof coverings do not need to be adjusted for the hipped end provided the hip and the main roof have the same pitch.
	4.00		250 mm half round ridge	
2/	3.47		125 mm angle arris hip	
2/	6.00 4.00		Double course of tiling at eaves including 165 × 215 mm eaves tile	
2/	2.83		Verge including tile and half	Undercloak courses are deemed to be included with tiling to verges – H60.C2 as are filled ends to verges and hips.
			End of: Marley Eternit Hawkins, Staffordshire Blue plain clay roofing tiles and fittings	

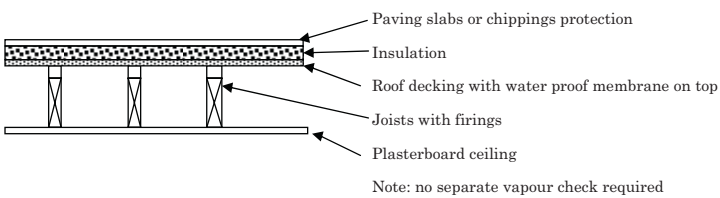
Cold roof



Warm roof – sandwich type



Warm roof – inverted type



Concrete flat roof

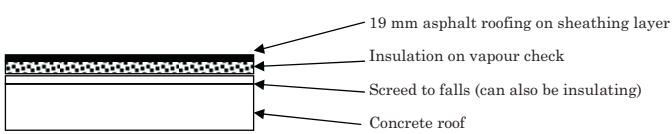


Figure 3.27 Types of flat roofs

Pitched roof coverings

Coverings to pitched roofs in the UK are usually tiles or slates both of which are laid on underlay and battens. In addition to the general roof area the eaves, verges, ridges, hips and valleys require separate items to be measured in linear metres in accordance with SMM7. Although not strictly required for measurement purposes, the differences between the various types of slates and tiles is explained in Section 5.

Generally, roof tiling is covered in SMM7 starting at clause H60.

Taking-off list – timber flat roof

• Construction	Wallplate/joists/strutting Joist hangers/straps
• Coverings	Decking/firings/fillets Coverings/upstands/flashings
• Eaves and rain-water goods	Fascia/eaves soffit/support/spandrel boxed ends/tilting fillet/painting Rainwater gutters/pipes/fittings

Metal flashings

When roof coverings abut vertical brickwork some type of flashing is required to prevent the ingress of water. The traditional material for flashings was lead, but today zinc is a more common material due to the high cost of lead. Where the joint to be flashed is raking then a soaker is also used and SMM7 states that soakers must be measured in two items: supply and handing to others for fixing. This arcane procedure is because traditionally soakers were supplied by plumbers but fixed by roofers. The number of soakers required is calculated by dividing the length of the abutment by the gauge of the tiling or slating. The size of the soakers will vary according to circumstances and are calculated as follows:

Length = Gauge + Lap + 25 mm

Width = 100 mm + 50 mm (upstand)

Flat roof coverings

Flat roofs are generally cheaper to construct than pitched roofs; however, from a whole life cost point of view they have a shorter life span depending on the degree of exposure and climate as follows:

3 layer built-up felt: 15–20 years

Asphalt: 20–60 years

Copper: 100–300 years

Zinc: 20–40 years

uPVC: 30–40 years

Lead: 60–100 years

compared with natural slate and clay tiles that have an expected life of 100 years plus.

Solar protection

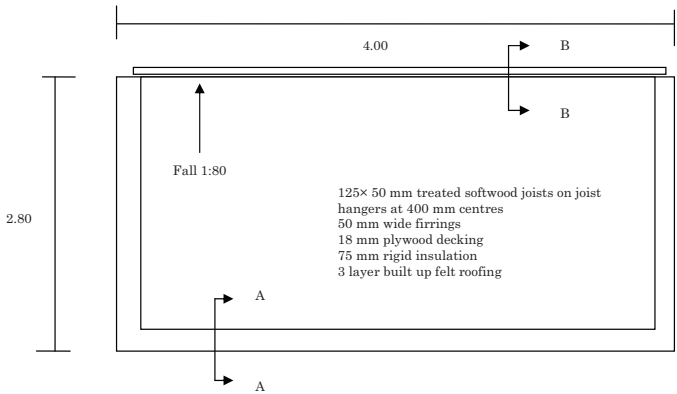
Continued exposure to sunlight causes asphalt and felt roofing to deteriorate more quickly and therefore some form of solar protection is required. Traditionally, solar protection has been provided with a layer of white stone chippings to reflect the sunlight and protect the coverings. Unfortunately, chippings, even if bedded into the covering, tend to become dislodged and block up rainwater systems, therefore as an alternative solar reflecting paints are now widely used.

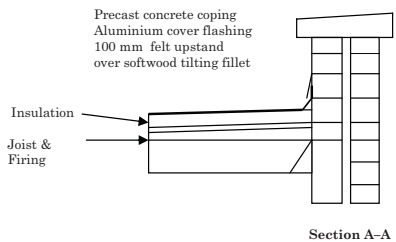
Insulation

One of the problems with flat roofs is the build-up of condensation within the roof. The position of the insulation in a flat roof will determine the category as either cold roof or warm roof.

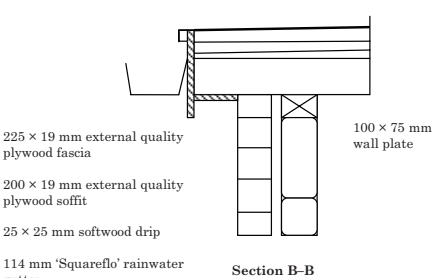
When a cold roof is constructed, as shown in Figure 3.27, the insulation is placed above the plasterboard finish and therefore the roof space remains cold. Importantly, cold roofs need to be well ventilated to dissipate condensation.

Warm roofs can be subdivided into two categories: sandwich and inverted.





Section A–A



Section B–B

Figure 3.28

			Example 6 – Flat roof construction and coverings	
			Roof plate	
			4.000	
			Less 2/ 0.275 0.550	
			Length 3.450	
	3.45		100 × 75 mm treated sawn softwood plate	
			3.450	
			Less	In this case dividing the roof length by 400 mm centres gives 8 spaces and 100 mm remainder. Therefore it was decided to include 8 + 1 = 9 joists. Had the remainder been, say, 200 mm then an extra joist would be added to equal 8 + 1 + 1 = 10 joists.
			Clearance 2/0.50 0.100	
			Centre line 2/0.025 0.050 0.150	
			3.300	
			÷ 0.400	
			= 8 spaces + 1 = 9	
9/	2.73		50 × 125 mm treated sawn softwood flat roof member	
			Length	
			2.800	
			Less Bkwk 0.275	
			2.525	
			Add Overhang 0.200	
			2.725	
	3.45		38 mm thick treated sawn softwood joist strutting to joists 125 mm deep	
9/	9		2 mm galvanised mild steel joist hanger for 50 × 125 mm joist built into blockwork	
			Firings	
			Max 0.080	
			Min 0.030	
			0.110	
			Avg 0.055	
2/	2.73		50 × 55 mm (avg) treated softwood flat roof support	
			1	

	3.45 2.53		50 × 50 mm (avg) triangular ditto	
	3.45 2.73		19 mm plywood external grade flat roof sheathing over 300 mm wide external fixed to softwood	
			&	
			75 mm Rocksilk horizontal insulation	
			&	
			Coverings	
			3 layer Ruberoid built-up felt flat roofing to plywood sheathing laid in accordance with manufacturer's instructions	
			Upstands	
	3.45 2.53		Ruberoid felt roofing ad upstand at abutment to dressed over softwood fillet to brickwork not exceeding 200 mm girth	
			&	
			22 SWG aluminium horizontal flashing 100 mm girth	
			Eaves	
	3.45		Ruberoid roofing felt ad eaves drip girth not exceeding 200 mm girth	
			2	

			Eaves and rainwater goods	
	3.45		25 × 25 mm treated sawn softwood individual support & 225 × 18 mm external quality plywood fascia & 200 × 18 mm ditto as soffit board	
	2		18 mm external quality plywood boxed end size 200 × 225 mm	
2/	3.45		Prime only before fixing wood general surfaces n.e. 300 mm girth	
			Spandrils	
2/	1		Ditto isolated areas n.e. 0.50 m^2	
			Fascia & soffits	
			Fascia 0.225 Add 2/0.025 0.050 Soffit 0.200 0.475	
	3.45 0.48		Knot, prime, stop, two undercoats and one coat gloss to general surfaces of wood exceeding 300 mm externally	
			3	

			Rainwater goods 3.450 Add Overhang 2/0.050 0.100 4.550	
	4.55		114 mm Hunter plastics Squareflo black rainwater gutter (ref. R114) with and including support bracket (ref. R395)	
	1		Extra over for running outlet (ref. R376)	
2/	1		Ditto stopend (ref. R380)	
	2.30		65 mm Hunter plastics Squareflo rainwater pipe (ref. R300) with push fit socket joints and stand off brackets (ref. R388) at 2 m centres plugged to masonry.	
	1		Extra over for adjustable offset (ref. R399)	
			4	

Internal finishes

Generally

The majority of finishes are either applied in situ, e.g. plaster and other forms of rendering, or tile, slab and sheet finishes. There can be a considerable amount of repetition when measuring finishes, therefore it is important to ensure that dimensions that relate to one type of finish are grouped together on the dimension sheets. Most finishes are dealt with by Section M in the SMM7 although items such as skirtings and other unframed isolated trims are dealt with in Section P. Even for fairly simple projects the use of a schedule can greatly simplify the process of specifying materials and measurement, see Table 3.3.

Most modern in situ plasterwork is carried out in lightweight gypsum plaster, known by its trade names Carlite or Thistle although Carlite has now been merged into the Thistle brand. Thistle plasters come in a variety of types depending on where they are to be used and the background to which the plaster is applied. According to SMM7, work over 300 mm wide is measured in square metres while work under 300 mm wide is measured in linear metres.

In many cases the area of floor and ceiling finishes are identical and can be anded-on.

It is very important that the correct type of plaster is used; the five types (four undercoat and one topcoat) available are as follows.

Undercoats

Browning plaster is an undercoat plaster for moderate suction solid backgrounds that have a good mechanical key, such as brickwork or blockwork. A slow setting variety is available that gives greater time for application.

Bonding plaster is an undercoat plaster for low suction backgrounds, for example concrete or plasterboard or surfaces sealed with pva (a universal water-based adhesive).

Toughcoat is an undercoat plaster for solid backgrounds of high suction with an adequate mechanical key.

Hardwall is an undercoat plaster that provides a much harder and more durable finish and is also quick drying.

Table 3.3 Internal finishes schedule
Job No. ABC/09

Room	Floor	Ceiling		Walls		Skirting
		Finish	**Decoration**	**Finish**	**Decoration**	
G1	35 mm cement and sand (1:3) screed Carpet PC £25/m^2	9.5 mm plaster-board and 5 mm skim	Two coats of emulsion paint	13 mm two coats of plaster	Wall paper PC £7.00 per piece	19 × 75 mm softwood skirting. KPS and three coats
G2	35 mm cement and sand (1:3) screed 305 × 305 mm vinyl floor tiles	9.5 mm plaster-board and 5 mm skim	Two coats of emulsion paint	13 mm two coats of plaster	Two coats of emulsion paint	80 mm vinyl skirting
G3	Etc.					

Finishing coats

Finishing plaster is an idea choice over sand and cement bases and can be used on still damp backgrounds.

Board finishing plaster is a one coat plaster for skim coats to plasterboard.

Multi finish is used where both undercoat and skim coat are needed on one job. Suitable for all suction backgrounds and ideal for amateur plasterers.

In addition the following is available.

Universal one coat is a one coat plaster for a variety of backgrounds, suitable for application by hand or machine.

The White Book published by British Gypsum is a good source of reference for all types of plaster finishes. It can be viewed at: http://www.british-gypsum.bpb.co.uk/literature/white_book.aspx

What is used in practice?

For plasterboard ceilings, board finish plaster.

For blockwork walls, an 11 mm thick undercoat of browning plaster followed by 2 mm skim coat of finishing plaster. The undercoat is lightly scratched to form a key.

Metal lathing: two undercoats are often required followed by a finishing coat.

Galvanised or stainless steel angle beads are used to form external angles in in situ plaster.

In situations where damp walls are plastered following the installation of an injection dpc, most gypsum plasters are not suitable as they absorb water and fail.

Sand/cement screeds

The function of a floor screed is to provide a smooth and even surface for finishes such as tiling and is usually a mixture of cement and course sand, typically in the ratio of 1:3. It is usually a dry mix with the minimum of water added, has a thickness of between 38 and 50 mm and is laid on top of the structural floor slab.

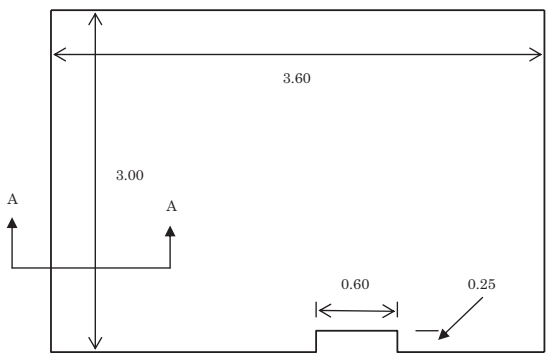
Board finishes

Plasterboard is available in a variety of thicknesses the most common being 9.5 mm and 12 mm and is fixed to either metal or timber studs

with screws. Standard sheets are 900×1800 mm and 1200×2400 mm. It is also possible to fix plasterboard to blockwork with plaster dabs. Boards can either be pre-finished and require no further work or finished with a skim coat of plaster. Boards with tapered edges and foil backing are also available.

Floor and wall tiling

Most wall tiles are 100×100 mm with spacers to ensure ease of fixing. Tiles require adhesive for fixing and grout for the joints. Thickness can vary and floor tiles can be found in a wider variety of sizes.



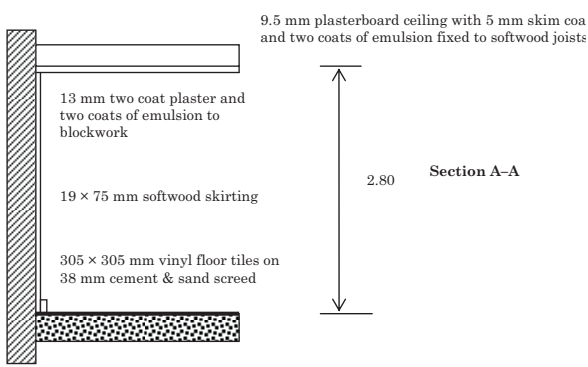
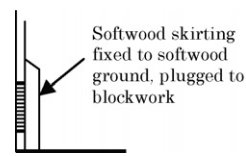


Figure 3.29

			Example 7 – Internal finishes	
	3.60 3.00		9.5 mm gypsum plasterboard with 5 mm skim coat in Thistle board finishing plaster ceiling fixed plasterboard nails exceeding 300 mm wide	Note work to ceilings over 3.5 m high have to be kept separately and described. SMM7; M4.
			&	
			Two coats of emulsion general surfaces of plaster over 300 mm girth	Note that the room has a small pier size 600 × 250 mm. It is not necessary to deduct this from the area of floor and ceilings because it is less than 0.50 m^2 SMM7; M2.
			&	
			305 × 305 × 2.5 mm thick vinyl tiles fixed with approved adhesive ad to cement sand screeded bed	Note: wall finishes are measured gross and deductions for windows, doors, etc. are deducted with door and window measurements; see next example.
			&	
			38 mm thick cement and sand (1:4) level screeded bed on concrete	Work less than 300 mm wide has to be measured in linear metres. Therefore the sides of the pier, 250 mm wide, are measured in linear metres. M10
			Walls 2/3.000 6.000 2/3.600 7.200 13.200	Skirtings are fixed to blockwork by either plugging them directly or, on softwood grounds.
	13.20 2.80		13 mm thick two coat Thistle plaster exceeding 300 mm wide to blockwork ***Sides of pier***	
2/	2.80		Ditto not exceeding 300 mm wide	If grounds are used then the plaster will not extend to ground level and the appropriate deduction will have to be made.
			1	

2/	2.80		Expamet galvanised mild steel angle bead (ref. 595) to blockwork with plaster dabs	The external angles of the pier will have metal angle beads to give a hard finish to the detail as well as providing a guide for the plasterer. The angle beads are fixed with plaster dabs or nails.
			Height 2.800 Less Screed 0.038 Sktg 0.075 0.113 2.687 Girth 3.600 3.000 2/6.600 13.200 Add 2/0.250 0.500 13.700	Note that the height of the emulsion has been adjusted to take account of the timber skirting. The rules for painting and plasterwork are slightly different when it comes to narrow widths, that is, widths not exceeding 300 mm. Plasterwork in this category is kept separate and measured in linear metres, but painting is only measured in linear metres if it is less than 300 mm wide in isolated areas. In other words if the narrow width is bordered by different finishes or materials. In this example although the side of the pier is 250 mm wide, because it is not in an isolated area, it is included with the main wall.
	13.70 2.69		Two coats emulsion ab	
	13.70		19 × 25 mm wrot softwood chamfered skirting plugged to blockwork & Prime only general surfaces of woodwork before fixing n.e. 300 mm wide & KPS one coat undercoat, one coat gloss on general surfaces of woodwork in isolated surfaces n.e. 300 mm girth	Classified as isolated in this case.
			2	

Windows, doors and joinery

In days gone by, items such as doors and windows would have arrived on site separately from their associated linings, frames and ironmongery, to be assembled on site. The increased use of standard units, dimensional coordination, AutoCAD, etc. means that for most projects, with the exception of so-called signature schemes, items of joinery are available in standard sizes. In the case of doors, for example, these are regularly specified as door sets that include the door leaf or leaves, frame or lining and ironmongery that arrive on site packaged together.

Many windows and doors are UPVC and pre-glazed, and require only to be built in and then protected until the works are complete.

Irrespective of whether standard units or individual units are used the measurement of doors and windows will require adjustment for door or window openings. As has been previously mentioned, masonry, finishes and painting and decoration are measured gross; these must now be adjusted. Work is also required to be measured to cover:

- Lintels at the window head, these can be steel or precast reinforced concrete
- Damp-proof courses
- Work to window reveals and sills both inside and out.

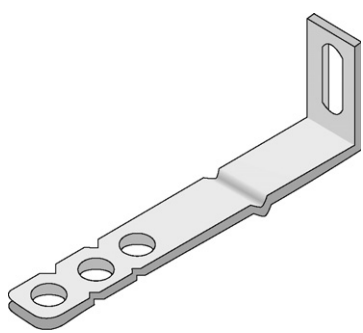


Figure 3.30 Frame cramp

External window and door frames are usually fixed with galvanised fixing cramps that are screwed, in the case of softwood, to the door or window frame and then built into the masonry as work proceeds, see Figure 3.30.

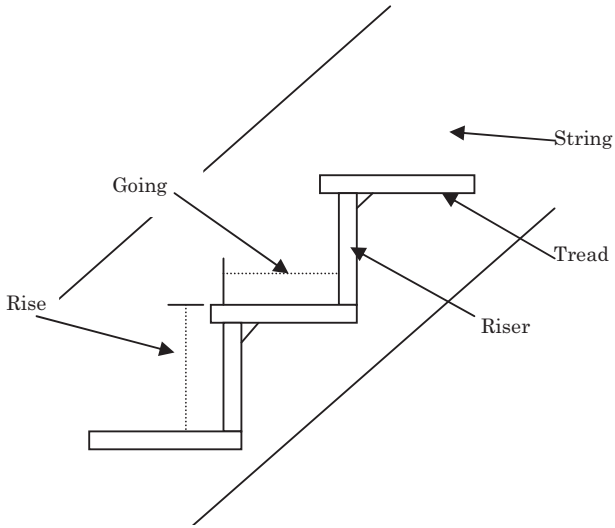


Figure 3.31 Section through staircase

Modern timber staircases are also usually prefabricated and brought to site for final assembly.

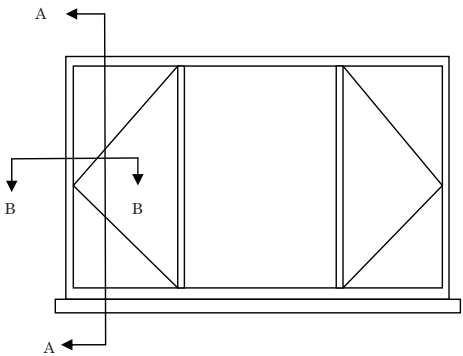
Windows

Taking-off list – softwood windows

• Windows	Casement Bedding frame/window board/glazing/painting
• Opening adjustment	Facings/cavity/insulation/blockwork/ plaster/decoration Head/reveals/sill/damp-proof courses/plasterwork/decoration

Taking-off list – softwood door

• Door	Door unit/door set/fixing/ironmongery Frame/architrave/moulding/decoration
• Opening adjustment	Wall/head/threshold Plasterwork/decoration



1400 × 780 mm softwood window ref Stormsure 789

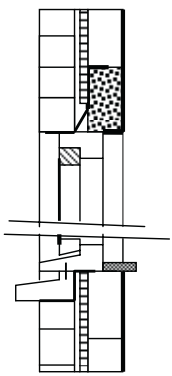
Painted finish

Double glazed

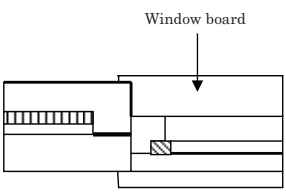
Outer skin in facings, 75 mm cavity, 100 mm blockwork inner skin

Section A–A

13 mm plaster
100 × 150 mm precast concrete lintel
Steel lintel and cavity tray
50 mm rigid insulation



25×100 mm wrought softwood window board
Water bar
150 × 100 mm precast concrete sub-sill
Damp proof course



Section B–B

Detail at jamb. Cavity closed with blockwork and vertical damp proof course

Figure 3.32

			Example 8 – Softwood window	
	1		1400 × 780 mm Stormsure softwood window (ref. 789) and fixing with 4 No galvanised frame cramps, screwed to softwood and built into blockwork as work proceeds as drwg (ref. 1234)	Clause L10 requires that a dimensioned diagram is included. This is a standard window unit and comes already fitted with standard ironmongery. If ironmongery is not supplied then it must be measured separately in accordance with SMM P21. Note that hinges or butts are normally specified in pairs. Therefore 3 butts or hinges would be measured as $1\frac{1}{2}$ PAIR.
2/	1.40		Bed wood frame in gauged mortar (1:1:6)	SMM L10.10.
2/	0.78		Including pointing one side in Evostik mastic.	
			1.400 Returns 2/ 0.038 0.076 1.476	Note that window boards continue past the opening.
	1.48		25 × 100 mm wrot softwood window board plugged and screwed to masonry	Window boards can be plugged or plugged, screwed and pelleted in work requiring a high class finish. Traditionally, a pellet is a piece of timber dowel that fits into the screw hole to disguise the head. Today, filler is most likely to be used in lieu of timber dowel.
2/	0.40 0.70 0.60 0.70		4 mm clear sheet glass and glazing to wood with glazing strip in panes over 0.15–4.00 m^2	Windows are supplied either glazed or unglazed. If glazing is not included then it must be measured separately. SMM7 L40 refers. Work to the head and sill will be measured with the open adjustment.
			1	

2/	1.40 0.78		Prime only wood window before fixing in panes 0.10–0.50 m^2	All work in SMM7 Section M is deemed to be internal unless described as external.
	1.40 0.78		One coat undercoat, one finishing coat on glazed wood windows in panes 0.10–0.50 m^2 exceeding 300 mm girth & Ditto external	
			Window board	
	1.48		Prime only general surfaces of woodwork before fixing not exceeding 300 mm girth & One coat undercoat, one finishing coat on general surfaces exceeding 300 mm girth X 0.16 = m²	The window board is not isolated as it will be painted together with the window frame
			Opening adjustment	First, the opening is adjusted to take account of the window, followed by work and adjustments to the head, reveals and sill.
	1.40 0.78		Ddt Half bk wall in facgs ab & Ddt Formg cavity 75 mm wide ab & Ddt 50 mm cavity insulation ab & Ddt 100 mm blockwork wall ab & Ddt 13 mm plaster to block walls exceeding 300 mm ab & Ddt Two coats of emulsion to plaster walls ab	
			2	

			Head Lintel Opening 1.400 Building in 2/ 0/150 0.300 1.700	Lintels are built in at either end by 150 mm minimum.
	1		100 × 150 mm × 1700 mm long precast concrete (mix A) reinforced with and including 2 No 12 mm diameter mild steel bars built into blockwork in gauged mortar (1:1:6) & Hy-ten galvanised mild steel lintel and cavity tray 1700 mm long built into brickwork in gauged mortar (1:1:6)	
	1.40		13 mm plasterwork ab to concrete walls not exceeding 300 mm & Expamet galvanised mild steel angle bead (ref. 595) to concrete with plaster dabs & Two coats of emulsion to plaster walls ab X 0.10 = m²	Plasterwork to underside of lintel.
			Reveals	
2/	0.78		Closing cavity 75 mm wide with blockwork vertical	
			3	

2/	0.78 0.10		Vertical pitch polymer dpc not exceeding 225 mm wide bedded in gauged mortar (1:1:6)	
2/	0.78		13 mm plasterwork ab to blockwork walls not exceeding 300 mm & Expamet galvanised mild steel angle bead (ref. 595) to blockwork with plaster dabs & Two coat emulsion ab to plater walls X 0.10 = m²	
			Cill	
	1		150 × 100 × 1700 mm long precast concrete (mix 123) cill, sunk, weathered, grooved and throated, bedded on brickswork in gauged mortar (1:1:6)	
	1.70 0.10		Ddt Half brick wall in facings ab	
	1.70		5 × 30 mm galvanised mild steel water bar bedded in concrete in gauged mortar (1 :1 :6)	
			To take dpc	When taking a break from measuring, for whatever reason, it is good practice to leave yourself a note as to what is to be done next!
	1.70 0.33		1 layer horizontal pitch polymer stepped dpc width exceeding 225 mm bedded in gauged mortar (1:1:6)	It should be scored through once measured.
			4	

Internal Doors

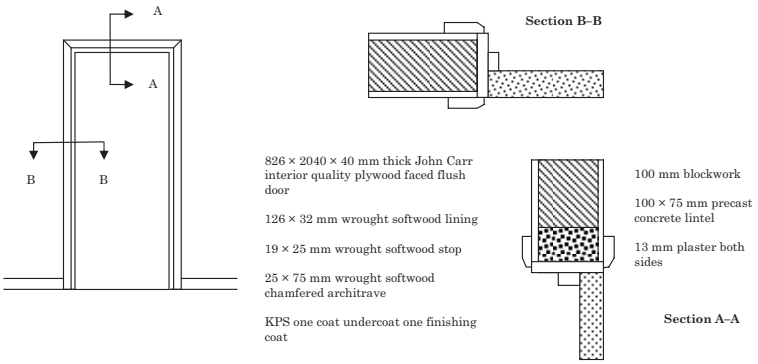


Figure 3.33

For this example it is assumed that the door lining is not a prefabricated unit but made up on site. As this is not a fire door the door stop is nailed to the lining and there is no intumescent strip. Fire doors are used to slow down and/or limit the spread of fire and smoke and are designated according to the time period that they are designed to resist fire, while maintaining their integrity. Intumescent strips are fitted into grooves in the door lining or door and expand when exposed to heat to fill the gap between the door and frame. Fire doors are generally fitted with automatic door closers to ensure that they are always in place.

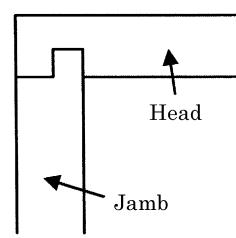
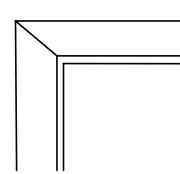
Plumbing installations and drainage

The measurement of plumbing is often characterised by a lack of detailed information and drainage is seldom designed at bills of quantities stage, being treated as 'Provisional' for measurement purposes to be remeasured when actually carried out on site. Drainage therefore is often the first item in the final account and its measurement is usually reserved for trainees or year-out students.

Plumbing

Traditionally, the approach to dealing with services, that is to say, plumbing, heating and electrical installations, is to include a prime cost sum or provisional sum for a named specialist or nominated subcontractors

			Example 9 – Internal door and lining	
	1		826 × 2040 × 40 mm thick interior quality flush door faced both sides with plywood as John Carr (ref. KL56)	In this example the ironmongery has been covered by the inclusion of a prime cost sum as the decision has not yet been taken as to a supplier.
			Include the provisional sum of £25.00 for the supply of ironmongery	The hardwood refers to the hardwood lipping to the edge of the door.
			Add Profit	
	Item			
			Fix only the following ironmongery to hardwood and softwood	
	1		Pair 75 mm pressed steel butts	
			&	
			Mortice latch	
			&	
			Set lever handle furniture	
			End of fixing the following	
			1	

			Lining The following in 1 No wrot softwood lining set(s) tongued at angles	Note: SMM7 L20.7 requires the number of lining sets to be stated. In addition repeats of identical sets are required to be stated.
			Door 0.826 Add Lining 2/ 0.032 0.064 Head 0.890	The traditional approach is to include all items relating linings under an appropriate heading as shown.
	0.89		32 × 126 mm head Door 2.040 Tongue 0.012 Jamb 2.052	Linings are constructed by being tongued at the angles (the joint of the jamb and head as shown below):
2/	2.05		32 × 126 mm jamb plugged to blockwork	
			End of 1 No lining set	
2/	2.04 0.79		19 × 25 mm wrot sw stop 0.826 Ddt 2/ 0.019 0.038 0.788 Architraves 0.826 Add Lining 2/0/010 0.020 2/0.075 0.150 2.040 0.010 0.075 2/ 2.125 4.250 5.246	The joint between the plaster and the lining is covered by an architrave, mitred at the angles as shown below: 

	5.25		25 × 75 mm wrot sw chamfered architrave		
				Painting	
				Door	
				0.826	
			2/½/0.040	0.040	Doors are painted on both sides as well as the vertical edges. However, it is the convention to paint either the top or bottom edge, not both! Check how many flush doors have a painted top edge.
				0.866	
				2.040	
			½/0.040	0.020	
				2.060	
2/	0.87		KPS one undercoat and one finishing coat gloss paint to general wood surfaces exceeding 300 mm wide		
	2.06				
	0.89		Prime only general wood surfaces before fixing n.e. 300 mm girth		
2/	2.05				
2/	2.04				
	0.79				
	5.25				
	4.91		KPS one undercoat and one finishing coat gloss paint to general wood sufaces exceeding 300 mm girth		The individual parts of the lining/stop/architrave are collected together and a girth calculated for painting purposes.
	0.40				
			2/ 0.075	0.150	
			2/0.025	0.050	
				0.126	
			2/0.019	0.038	
			2/0.020	0.040	
				0.404	
			2/ 2.040	4.080	
				0.826	
				4.906	
				3	

			Opening adjustment	
			0.826 Add 2/ 0.032 0.064 0.890 2.040 Add 0.032 2.072	
	0.89 2.07		Ddt 100 mm thick blockwork wall ab & Ddt 13 mm plaster to wall exceeding 300 mm ab X2 = m²	
			0.890 Add Architrave 2/0.070 0.140 1.030 2.072 Add Ditto 0.070 2.142	
2/	1.03 2.07		Ddt Less Skirting 0.075 Two coats of emulsion on plaster ab 2.067	
			0.890 Building in 2/0.150 0.300 1.190 Say 1200	
	1		100 × 75 mm × 1200 mm long pre-cast concrete (mix A) reinforced with and including 1 No 12 mm diameter mild steel bar built into blockwork in gauged mortar (1:1:6)	
			4	

	1.20 0.08		Ddt 100 mm thick blockwork wall ab	
2/	1.03		Ddt Softwood skirting ab & Ddt Prime only before fixing not exceeding 300 mm girth ab & Ddt KPS one undercoat and one finishing coat gloss finishing not exceeding 300 mm girth To take adjustment for flooring **5**	

to tender for a later date. However, over the years clients have become less tolerant to this approach, as the quantity surveyor would still receive a fee for the services sections of the bills of quantities, as if they had been measured in detail. The demand to have services measured is even more understandable when it is considered that for some projects the value of the services elements can be in excess of 50%. That is not to say, as service installations become ever more complicated, that the quantity surveyor should have a detailed knowledge of every system on the market but it is useful for a quantity surveyor to have a basic knowledge of how services are measured.

Incoming supply

The incoming supply from the water main should be run in a duct at a minimum depth of 750 mm below ground or finished level, in order to avoid damage from frost. The detail of how the incoming main is dealt with varies according to the water supplier and some customers are metered. At the point where the rising main enters the building there should be a stop valve and drain tap.

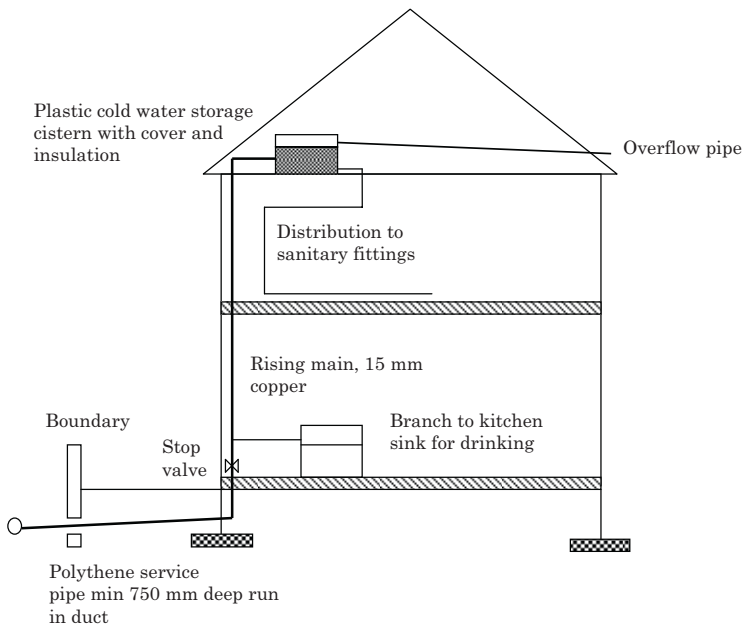


Figure 3.34

Distribution pipework

The pipework from the incoming main to the fittings and storage is referred to as the distribution pipework and is often not shown on the drawings. It is left to the quantity surveyor to determine the size and length of pipes as well as fittings such as bends, elbows, stop valves, etc.

The rising main is usually 15 mm copper and the distribution pipes from the cylinder are 22–28 mm diameter, reducing to 15 mm for sinks and WCs and 22 mm for baths. In recent years plastic has become a popular alternative to copper, it should be remembered when positioning pipework to make allowances for ease of access in the case of maintenance. When measuring pipework it is a good idea to have a copy of the manufacturer's catalogue to hand so that the appropriate fitting can be chosen.

Hot water supply

As well as cold water, most buildings also require a hot water supply and there are a number of alternatives available to provide this depending on the nature of the project and the amount required. The broad choice is between local instantaneous heaters, which can vary between a single appliance over a sink to a larger unit (a multipoint) that feeds several appliances, and centrally heated and stored hot water. If a centrally stored system is selected there are two types of cylinder: direct and indirect. With a direct system the central heating hot water is the same water that is used for the taps of the appliances and therefore has to be continuously replaced and is the less common form. With the indirect system the hot water is passed through the hot water cylinder by means of a heat exchanger in the form of a copper coil. The hot water to the taps therefore is heated indirectly by the heat exchanger and is the most commonly used.

Central heating

Most wet central heating systems are based on either a one or two pipe system. With a one pipe system the water is fed to and flows from the radiators by a single pipe. The disadvantage of this approach is that the water tends to cool more quickly than the two pipe system detailed in Figure 3.35. The two pipe system has a separate flow and return pipe therefore the water to the radiators is more or less the same temperature.

Central heating

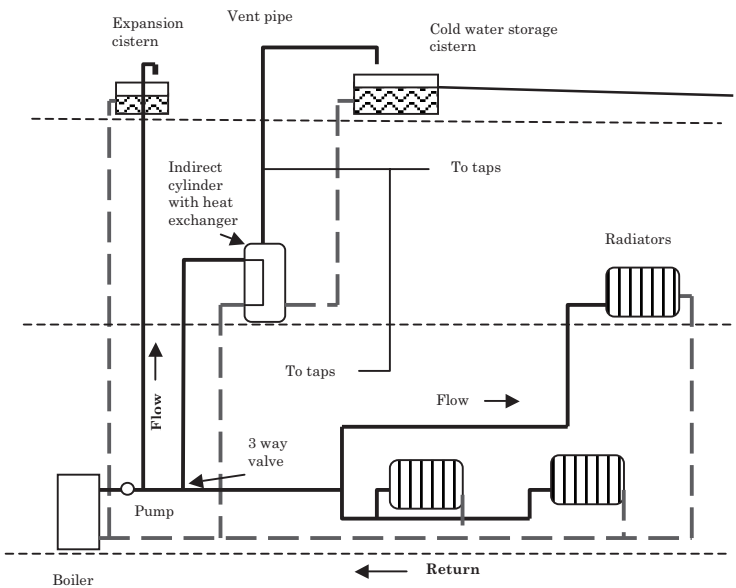


Figure 3.35

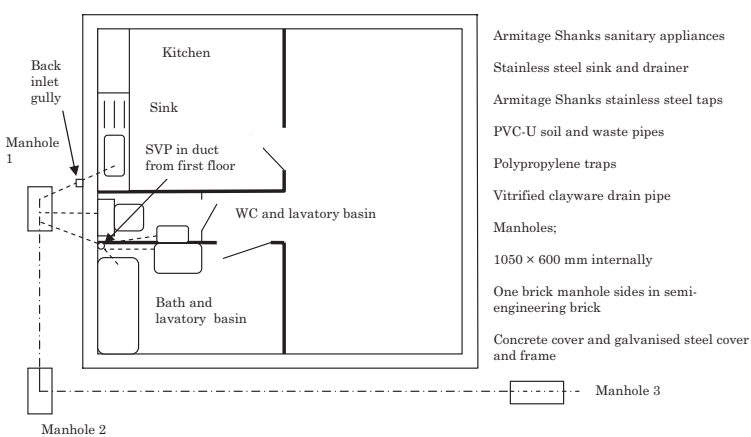


Figure 3.36 Ground floor sanitary appliances and drainage

			Example 10 – Plumbing installations	
			Sanitary appliances	
			Accolade sanitary fittings (as manufactured by Armitage Shanks), including all assembly and jointing together of components and fittings.	As all the sanitary appliances are from the same manufacturer, it is good practice to use a heading as shown.
	1		***Bathroom*** 600 × 490 mm white vitreous china wash basin and pedestal with one tap hole, plug and chain and 12 mm Accolade chromium plated basin mixer tap including plugging and screwing brackets to masonry and bedding pedistal to floor and basin in mastic & 1685 × 800 mm overall white vitreous china bath with one tap hole, plug and chain and 19 mm Accolade chromium plated bath mixer tap including setting and levelling on feet plugging and screwing brackets to masonry and feet to concrete & ***WC*** Close-coupled vitreous china WC unit with white plastic seat and cover, 9 litre cistern with dual flush and refill unit and P trap connector, including plugging and screwing to masonry and screwing pan to floor.	The fittings in this example are measured on a supply and fix basis. It is also possible to include a provisional sum for supply only fittings. In this case an item for fix only would be included in the bills of quantities.
			1	

	1		450 mm white vitreous china cloakroom basin and pedestal with tap holes, plug and chain and pair 12 mm Accolade chromium plated basin pillar taps including plugging and screwing brackets to masonry and bedding pedestal to floor and basin in mastic	
			End of sanitary fittings	
			Kitchen	
	1		Leisure stainless steel single bowl and drainer with pair Armitage Shanks 12 mm Supataps, chromium plated waste and fixing in position on timber base unit (measured elsewhere)	
			Traps and fittings	
			LB	Sanitary appliances need to be fitted with a trap to prevent obnoxious smells and vermin from entering the building from the sewer. The trap is formed from a water seal and there are basically 3 types, bottle, P traps and S traps, and are generally made from plastic and have ring sealed screwed joints. There is a chance that the water in the trap can be siphoned out and the trap made ineffective and so the soil stack, into which the appliance discharges, is ventilated by leaving the stack open to the atmosphere at the top. A WC does not require a separate trap as a seal is designed into the pan.
2/	1 1		32 mm Osma polypropylene 'P' trap with 76 mm seal including screwed joint to fitting and solvent weld joint to PVC-U pipe	
			Kitchen sink	
			&	
			Bath	
			40 mm ditto with 32 mm overflow	
			2	

			WC	
	1		110 mm diameter Osma PVC-U WC connector	The waste pipework for measurement purposes is separated into above and below ground.
			&	
			EO ditto for rest bend (ref. 4589B)	
				In this example the above ground drainage is carried out in plastic, whereas the below ground drainage pipework and fittings are in vitrified clayware. The advantage of clayware is that it is very durable. Plastic pipes are also popular for underground drainage as they are lightweight and easy to lay although undue loading can cause plastic pipes to deform and cause blockages to form.
			Above ground drainage	
	5.00		110 mm pipes, OsmaSoil solvent weld PCV-U (ref. 4SO3B) with and including pipe bracket (ref. 4SO82B) plugged and screwed to masonry in duct	Length has been assumed. SMM7 requires that pipes in ducts must be described.
	1		EO last for joint to 100 mm vitrified clayware drain including Osma drain coupler (ref 4S 107G)	
			Sink 0.600 LBs 2/2.50 5.000 5.600	
	5.60		32 mm straight OsmaWeld pipes with welded joints with and including pipe bracket (ref. 4ZO81G) plugged and screwed to masonry	
			Bath	
	1.00		40 mm ditto	
			3	

2/	1		Extra over 110 mm OsmaSoil pipe for bossed access pipe for 32 mm OsmaWeld pipe	When the bills of quantities are being prepared two additional items of:
	1		Ditto for 40 mm ditto	• Marking the position of holes, mortices and chases, and • Testing the system when complete
			The following in builder's work in connection with plumbing installation	have to be added in accordance with SMM7 Clause R11.
	1		Hole through 100 mm thick blockwork ad for pipe n.e. 55 mm diameter	Builder's work is dealt with in SMM7 clause P30 and includes the measurement of the hole, chases and other work required for the installation of pipework, etc. through various parts of the structure.
			End of builder's work in connection	
			Cold water installation	
			British Standard Table X light gauge copper pipes with capillary joints and fixed with and including pipe clips to masonry	
	2.50		15 mm pipe straight	
2/	3.00			
	2.50		***Bath***	
	3.00		22 mm pipe ditto	
			Fittings	
	1		Combined high pressure screw down stop valve and drain tap with compression joints to copper tube	For rising main.
			4	

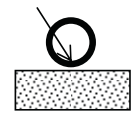
			Fittings (contd)	
	5		E.O. 15 mm pipe ad for fittings two ends	Pipes have to change direction and there are two ways to do this; the first is with the use of a 'made bend', when the plumber bends the copper pipe in situ using a special tool to the required angle. More common is the use of standard fittings such as elbows or tees. SMM7 does not require that fittings are differentiated but must be described according to the number of ends. Hence a tee will
	3		Ditto fittings with three ends	
	2		E.O. 22 mm pipe ad for fittings two ends	
	3		E.O. 15 mm pipe ad for joint to fitting including straight connector	be described as 'fitting three ends' and an elbow as 'fitting two ends'. As there is little difference in cost between fittings this approach is considered adequate. See SMM7 clause Y10.7.
	1		E.O. 22 mm pipe ad ditto	
			End of BS Table X light gauge copper pipe	
			To take	
			Builder's work in connection	
			Insulation	
			5	

Example 11 – Drainage

				Manholes
				1.050
			Add Bkwk 2/0.225	0.450
				1.500
				0.600
				0.450
				1.050
				Depth
			Ground level	45.000
			Invert level	44.600
				0.400
			Pipe and bedding	0.040
			Manhole base	0.150
				0.590
3/	1.50		Excavate pit n.e. 1 m deep (3 No)	
	1.05			
	0.59		&	
			Remove excavated material from site	
				1.500
				1.050
				2/2.550
				5.100
3/	5.10		Earthwork support n.e. 1 m deep and	
	0.59		n.e. 2 m between opposing faces	
3/	1.50		Surface treatment, compact bottom of	
	1.05		excavation	
			&	
			Plain in situ concrete (mix A) bed n.e.	
			150 mm thick poured against earth	
			X 0.15 = m³	
				5.100
			Ddt 2/2/½/0.225	0.900
			MEAN GIRTH	4.200
				0.590
			Less base 0.150	
			Bedding 0.040	0.190
				0.400

For this example a traditional brick built manhole is used.

Invert level of pipe



There is no spread on the foundations, therefore no backfilling is required.

3/	4.20 0.40		One brick wall, vertical in semi-engineering bricks built English bond in cement mortar (1:3) built fair face and flush pointed one side	
	3		Benching 1050 × 600 mm × 200 mm average high in plain concrete (mix A) and finished with cement and sand (1:3) with trowelled finish	When using a traditional brick manhole the bottom of the manhole is finished with cement and sand benching. The benching is haunched up from the sides of the channels at the bottom of the chamber to direct any spillages or overflow back into the main channel.
	1		100 mm vitrified clay half round curved main channel 1400 mm girth bedded in cement mortar (1:3) & Ditto 900 mm girth ditto & 100 mm vitrified clay half round straight main channel, 1050 mm long ditto	
	2		100 mm ditto three quarter section branch channel bends ditto	
	7		Building in end of 100 mm pipe to one brick wall	
			2	

	3		1500 × 1050 mm × 100 mm thick precast reinforced concrete (mix B) manhole cover slab with rebated opening size 600 × 400 mm bedded in cement mortar (1:3) on masonry	Deep manhole will need galvanised mild steel step irons built into the sides of the manhole.
			&	
			600 × 400 mm galvanised mild steel light duty manhole cover and frame bedding in cement mortar (1:3) on masonry	
			Drain runs	
	4.80		Excl. trenches for pipes n.e. 200 mm	
3/	7.90		diameter average depth 500–750 mm	
	1.00		deep	
			4.800	The pipes are longer than the trenches as they have to pass through the manhole walls whereas the bed under the pipe will be the same as the trench.
			0.450	
			5.250	
			7.900	
			0.450	
			8.350	
			1.000	
			0.225	
			1.225	
	5.25		100 mm vitrified clay pipe with push fit	
3/	8.35		flexible joints	
	1.23			
3/	1		E.O. 100 mm pipe for bend	2 bends per branch.
	4.80		In situ concrete (mix A) bed to 100 mm	
3/	7.90		pipe, 425 mm wide × 100 mm deep	
	1.00			
	1		Clay trapped gully with 100 outlet and horizontal back inlet for waste pipe	
			To take	
			Testing drains	
			3	

Drainage

Drainage is another trade that uses schedules to simplify the measurement process and contains many of the trades previously discussed, such as excavation, masonry, etc. Traditionally, manholes or inspection chambers were built from semi-engineering bricks on an in situ concrete base, but it is more common now to use preformed units made from plastic or concrete, these have considerable advantages as they are quicker and cheaper to use. Inspection chambers are essentially the same manholes but they are shallower.

Drainage pipes, according to their position and type, require to be bedded, or bedded and surrounded with suitable granular material.

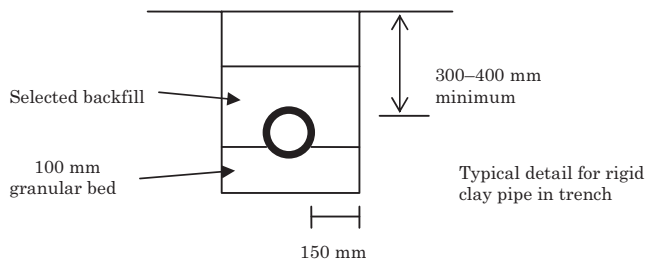


Figure 3.37

Alterations – spot items

The final section in the measurement section is the drafting of spot items for alteration works and is covered in SMM7 Clause C20. The art of writing good spot items is, first, a knowledge of the construction technology and methodology involved, as this is not normally marked on the drawings, combined with a logical approach, which makes the item straightforward for the contractor to visualise and price.

Alteration work is composed from a number of items, for example cutting openings, where the following items need to be considered:

- Size and purpose of opening, for example new door, window or blank opening – note: if the opening is for a new door or window these will be measured separately in the new work
- Finishes to existing wall, plastered on one or both sides
- Treatment at threshold/sill

	Item		Cut blank opening in rear of existing stage, size 0.95 × 2.10 m high, in existing one brick wall plastered one side including preparing a level bed at threshold quoining up jambs and providing and building in 225 × 225 mm precast concrete lintel (mix LC30) reinforced with and including 4 No 12 mm diameter mild steel bars bedded in gauged mortar (Group 3) on brickwork, extend finishes and make good all work disturbed	Note that the location of the alteration item should be included in the description to facilitate location.
	Item		Alter and adapt door opening between Room A and toilet to form new blank opening size 1.20 m wide × 2.50 m high including taking down half brick wall for a length of 1.60 m and a height of 2.50 m including single door and frame, extending one jamb for a width of 0.40 m and a height of 2.50 m in common brickwork one brick thick in gauged mortar (Group 3) cut, toothed and bonded to existing, preparing level bed at threshold, extend finishes and make good all work disturbed	

- Treatment at jambs/closing cavities/damp-proof courses
- Treatment at head lintel/damp-proof courses/wedging and pinning
- Clearing away and making good all work disturbed.

SPECIFICATIONS

The specification is an important part of the contract documentation, it lays down the quality and types of materials that must be priced for and used by the contractor, as well as setting out the standards of workmanship that are expected from him. It is also a vital point of reference for a number of members of the design team during both pre- and post-contract stages. In its traditional format a specification is divided and presented in the following sections:

- Materials
- Workmanship
- Construction – these clauses are only used when the contract does not have a bill of quantities.

The JCT 05 Standard Form of Contract has an edition specifically drafted for instances where the specification and not the bill of quantities is a contract document. This is usually the case when the project is reasonably small, say up to £250,000.00, as there can be considerable savings in both time and cost for a client compared to preparing a detailed bill of quantities. However, the decision to base the contract on a specification and drawings does not come without risk, as this strategy is far less prescriptive than a bill of quantities and therefore can carry a higher degree of uncertainty.

Uses of a specification:

- As previously stated, for small projects, when the cost of a bill of quantities cannot be justified, the specification together with drawings forms the basis on which the contractor calculates his tender price. Under these circumstances the contractor when preparing his bid usually takes his own dimensions using builders quantities (see Section 2) and prices them accordingly
- Used by the quantity surveyor during the preparation of the bills of quantities. In this case the specification is incorporated into the contract documents as the preambles to the bill of quantities in much the same format with only the materials and workmanship sections being used
- Used during the post-contract stages by the clerk of works, site agent, etc. as a point of reference for quality and standards, but *never* for the ordering of materials
- At final account stage when using a specification and drawings, the specification forms the basis of valuing variations and the final account.

There are two main types for specifications:

- Traditional descriptive specifications, as described previously and
- Performance specifications; this format is being increasingly used, especially in Private Finance Initiative (PFI) contracts. Unlike

the traditional descriptive format, a performance specification is not prescriptive, but rather it lays down the standards and the operational requirements of the project or element and allows the contract to, in the case of a PFI contract, design and build the appropriate solution to meet the performance criteria. A performance specification need not be as wide ranging as this though and is a more conventional contract used for mechanical and electrical installations, for example. The advantages of using this less prescriptive approach are that it enables the contractor to use his expertise to design and deliver the best possible solution and value for money as well as allowing the development of alternative solutions.

Examples of these formats are given below.

Traditional (prescriptive) format

The rules for preparing a descriptive specification are as follows. This format is used when the contract is based on a specification and drawings. Unlike bills of quantities, prepared in accordance with a standard method of measurement, there are no rules of measurement. Nevertheless, the order of the specification generally follows trade order, for example:

- Preliminaries
- Ground work
- Concrete work
- Masonry
- Etc. through to external works and drainage.

When using this approach, each trade is a self-contained item which contains clauses relating to:

- Materials
- Workmanship
- Construction.

Another approach is to present the specification in an elemental format, where the project is divided into elements (see Section 2 for a definition of element) for example:

- Preliminaries
- Substructure
- Frame
- Etc.

Unlike the trade order approach, when using an elemental format the materials and workmanship clauses that apply to the job as a whole are grouped together in the front of the specification; the construction clauses are then included for each element.

Example

The completed specification is presented with a cover sheet similar to a bill of quantities, as shown in Figure 3.38.

There are a number of sources of information available to the specification writer and these include the following.

For materials

- British Standards (BS). British Standards Institution is the UK national standards organisation that produces standards and information that share best practice
- European Standards – Comité Européen de Normalisation (CEN). CEN develops European Standards and promotes voluntary technical harmonisation in Europe in conjunction with worldwide bodies and its partners in Europe. BSI is a leading member of CEN in the development of European Standards
- Manufacturers' literature. Now widely available online
- Trade associations such as the Copper Development Association, the Brick Development Association, etc.

Coordinated project information (CPI)
Lack of coordination in the preparation of project information can manifest itself in the following ways:

- Impractical design, resulting in difficulties during construction
- Conflicting information
- Inadequate information
- A high volume of variations during the contract
- A high volume of contractor claims
- A high degree of defects in completed building.

In 1979 the coordinating committee for project information was established to investigate the ways in which construction documents are produced and presented. It finally presented its recommendations in 1987 and included proposals for ways in which problems of uncoordinated project information could be prevented. The recommendations include:

- Better procedures for producing documents, including the use of standard libraries of specification clauses
- Checking the specification against the information contained on the drawings
- Better arrangement of contract documents.

If the CPI approach is used then the specification is arranged in the same order as SMM7, for example:

A Preliminaries and general conditions
C Demolition/alterations
D Groundwork
E Concrete
F Masonry
Etc.

Standard library of descriptions

In practice, very few specifications are written from scratch, they are prepared in the main using a cut and paste approach. To help specification writers a number of standard libraries of specification clauses have been developed that can be adapted as necessary for each individual project. The National Building Specification (NBS) is one such solution that provides a number of solutions to cover new work, reburbishment work and small domestic projects. The library allows the specification writer to use his/her own clause instead of the library option. The NBS is available by subscription in electronic format. Standard libraries can cope with standard items well enough; however, in the case of alteration work a more flexible approach is required to take account of the bespoke nature of the works.

For workmanship

- Codes of practice. Codes of practice are also published by the BSI and lay down standards for good practice, although these are not mandatory
- Building Research Establishment (BRE) Digests. These digests cover a wide range of topics relating to construction design and defects in existing buildings.

Note: when writing a specification the imperative tense should be used; that is to say, in the form of an unambiguous direct command. The reason for this is that it leaves no doubt about what needs to be done. For example, 'The contractor shall…' or 'Portland Cement shall comply with BS EN 197-1 CEM I 52,5N….'

Cover all clauses
It is common practice to include a clause in a specification such as:

> The contractor is to include in his price for everything necessary to complete the works, whether or not included in this specification.

Putting aside whether it is either professional or ethical to include such clauses, the effect is to transfer large amounts of risk to the contractor, who realising this will either price the works accordingly or use the vagueness of such a clause as the basis for a claim against the client should there be substantial amounts of extras not included in the specification.

Performance specifications
Perhaps the ultimate performance specification is the output specification that is used as the basis of obtaining bids for Private Finance Initiative projects. The output specification is included in the outline and full business cases and is regarded as one of the most difficult and important parts of the PFI bidding process and concentrates on outputs, that is to say, what is actually consumed by the user of the services. For example, in the case of a new PFI prison, instead of asking for bids on the basis of drawings and bills of quantities a statement of outputs will be given, for example:

> Full custodial services for 800 category B prisoners including: secure management and control of prisoners, visiting facilities, healthcare, training and employment, recording keeping, etc.

The point about using a statement of outputs is that it gives the maximum freedom to the consortia to develop alternative solutions and innovative forms of construction, etc. while still conforming with all statutory and legal regulation relating to prisons and prisoners.

Specifications for works of repair and alteration
As is the case when preparing a bill of quantities, works of alteration and repair present the quantity surveyor with particular challenges. There are no set rules of measurement and all embracing omnibus items must be drafted that include all the items that require to be carried out and priced by the contractor. It therefore follows that the person preparing the specification needs a sound and wide ranging

SAMPLE SPECIFICATION COVER SHEET

for

THE REINSTATEMENT OF FIRE DAMAGE AND REMEDIAL WORK

at

WESTERN AVENUE, ASHFORD, KENT

Duncan Cartlidge FRICS
Chartered Surveyors
36 Castle Hill Road
Folkestone
Kent

Daniel Hunt & Partners
Chartered Building Surveyors
7 Station Road
Ashford
Kent

April 2009

Section F | **£**

MASONRY

Item

Materials

A. Portland cement

Cement shall be normal setting Portland cement to comply with BS12.

B. Sand

Sand for use in mortar shall be clean, sharp sand obtained from an approved source and complying with table 10 of BS 1200.

C. Lime

Lime for use in gauged mortar shall be hydrated lime to BSEN 459-1: 2001

D. Water

Water shall be clean, fresh drinking water.

E. Mixes

Gauged mortar for brickwork and blockwork shall be composed of a 1:2:9 mix (by volume) of cement/lime/mortar.

F. Concrete blocks

Aerated concrete blocks shall be to BS 6073 strength 3.5 N/mm^2.

G. Common bricks

Common bricks shall comply with BS 3921 Class 3; 20.5 N/mm^2.

H. Facing bricks

Facing bricks shall comply with BS 3921 and shall be Westbrick multi-facings.

	Masonry		
1	Carried to Collection	£	

Section E | | **£**

MASONRY (contd)

Item

Materials (contd)

A. Air bricks

Air bricks shall comply with BS 493 Part 2 to match main facings, size 225 ´ 75 mm

Workmanship

B. Mixing mortar

1. Mix mortar by mechanical mixer or by hand on a clean, level banker board.
2. Mix thoroughly so that all individual constituents are incorporated evenly but do not overmix mortars containing plasticisers.
3. Use mortar within two hours of mixing at normal temperatures.
4. Do not use after initial set has taken place and do not re-temper
5. Keep plant and banker boards clean at all times.

C. Laying and jointing

1. All bricks shall be wetted before being laid.
2. All courses shall be kept level and perpends shall be plumb throughout.
3. No part of the brickwork shall be built up higher than 915 mm above any other.
4. The contractor shall be deemed to have included for all labours: forming chases, pointing, toothing and bonding new work to existing, wedging and pinning new work to existing.
5. No brickwork shall be built in frosty weather and in seasons liable to frost all brickwork laid during the day shall be properly protected against frost at night.
6. Facing brickwork shall be built fair to match existing and care shall be taken to ensure that all face work is kept free from mortar droppings.

D. Cavities

Keep cavity and ties completely free from mortar and debris with laths or other suitable means.

Section E	**£**	
MASONRY (contd)		
Item		
Construction		
A. Build the 275 mm external cavity walls for the lengths, widths and height shown of Drawing No. 123/b		
B. Build the 100 mm thick internal partitions to the lengths, widths and height as shown on Drawing Nos 123/b and 124/c		
Masonry Carried to collection £		
	COLLECTION **£**	
Page 1		
Page 2		
Page 3		
Masonry Carried to summary £		
3		

Figure 3.38 Specification

knowledge of construction technology. For example, the following two examples are typical alteration work items:

Item	**Zone E – existing caretaker/porch**
A	Form new door opening size 1.45 × 2.10 m in one brick thick wall, east of existing porch, including preparing level bed at threshold, quoining up at jambs, cutting away and building in 225 × 225 precast reinforced concrete lintel (mix LC30), reinforced with and including 4 No 12 mm diameter mild steel bars bedded in gauged mortar (Group 3) on brickwork and make good all work disturbed and remove materials from site.

Note that the location of the item is referred to in the description. When commencing a specification for alteration works it is good practice to adopt a logical sequence for the section, for example:

- All internal works starting on the lowest floor and moving through the building room by room in a clockwise direction, then progressing to the upper floors, if present
- Roof and external walls
- External works.

In this way the builder trying to price the specification can easily trace and follow various items. In the above example, the new door to complete the opening will be included in the woodwork section of the specification.

Measurement for Energy Performance Certificates (EPC)

From the start of 2009 most new and existing public, commercial and domestic properties have to have an Energy Performance Certificate. In order to do this several specialised forms of measurement have been developed as follows for:

- New build domestic EPCs
- Existing domestic EPCs
- Non-domestic (commercial) EPCs)
- Public buildings – Display Energy Certificate (DEC).

New build domestic EPCs

The assessment methodology for new build houses is Standard Assessment Procedure (SAP), a system devised in the early 1990s. A SAP derived CO_2 emissions rate is now required by the Building Regulations for all new houses. A SAP rating needs data that can only be obtained from plans and the specification of the house. The data is fed into software to produce the rating as follows:

- 1–10 Very poor
- 11–30 Poor
- 31–50 Standard
- 51–60 Above average
- 61–80 Good
- 81–100 Very good
- 101–120 Outstanding.

The UK average SAP rating is 48; new build properties tend to be above 80 points.

Existing domestic EPCs

Reduced data Standard Assessment Procedure (RdSAP) is the system used to calculate energy ratings and produce EPCs for existing domestic buildings. RdSAP is based on SAP. SAP requires the input of many measurements and details that cannot be readily seen or accessed in an existing dwelling and therefore the RdSAP was developed based on a much reduced requirement for data collection.

Irrespective of which accreditation scheme the energy assessor belongs to, the same RdSAP data set is used to calculate the energy rating and CO_2 emissions. The assessor has to visit the site and record details using a standard pro-forma on the following, based on the information required by NHER:

Property type:

- Whether the property is a house, bungalow, flat or maisonette. The property type is required as different types of property have differing heat loss walls
- The procedure for dealing with flats is different to houses as flats very often open onto unheated corridors and have unexposed upper floors.

Built form:

- Whether the property is detached, end-terrace, semi-detached, mid-terrace, enclosed mid-terrace or enclosed end-terrace
- The number if any of rooms in the roof
- The number of habitable rooms
- The number, age and form of any extensions
- The number of open fireplaces
- In addition to the above the energy assessor is required to calculate the floor area, room height and heat loss perimeter for each floor.

Property age:

- There are 11 age bands ranging from pre-1900 to 2007 onwards. The property age is required for the software to select the default

heat-loss values (U valves) for the wall, roof and floor and to calculate the window area. Houses of different ages have different window to wall and window to floor ratios. The age bands for newer properties correspond to changes in the Building Regulations, when regulations stipulated maximum window areas in order to reduce heat loss.

Construction:

- The materials in the construction of the house have to be recorded, for example granite, cavity wall, filled cavity, etc.
- If more than 10% of the external walls are built from an alternative type of construction, e.g. tile hanging on battens, then this has to be measured and recorded
- Other items that concern the assessor are rooms in the roof (loft conversions), etc., external porches and conservatories.

Windows:

- The assessor should note:
  - The area of glazing compared to the average for its type
  - The proportion of double glazing, and
  - The age of the double glazing.

Heating systems:

- The following details are required of the heating system(s):
  - Type of electricity meter
  - Type of heating system and controls together with the date of manufacture
  - The type of secondary heating system, bottled gas, coal, portable heater, should also be recorded
  - The type of water heating system
  - Hot water cylinder size, type and insulation
  - Whether there is a hot water cylinder thermostat.

Other details:

- The assessor should record any solar or photovoltaic panels.

Non-domestic (commercial) EPCs

As explained earlier, the process of carrying out a domestic EPC is generally a one person job involving fairly straightforward processes.

Non-domestic EPCs can involve several people and take several days depending on the size of the building. Basically, the process is as follows:

- Assessors visit the site and make a note of the building characteristics with regards to:
  - Building fabric: materials, insulation, windows, etc.
  - Heating, hot water and lighting
  - Ventilation and air conditioning
  - Fuels used
- At the same time the assessor will begin the process of zoning the building into various activities. Large buildings have several activities in progress; from office zones, rest and restaurant areas to car parks, and each of these zones will have different heating and cooling loads from an energy assessment point of view
- After the site visit the assessor returns to the office and for each zone, using a set of scaled floor plans, enters the details for each zone, together with the dimensions: floor areas and room heights for each zone.

Using an approved data set, described earlier, the assessor then inputs the information into the software and the EPC is produced.

Display Energy Certificates (DEC)

Display Energy Certificates are required for public buildings greater than 1000 m^2 floor area from 1 October 2008. Public buildings include:

- Public libraries
- Schools and education centres
- Hospitals (private hospitals are excluded)
- Care homes under local authority control
- Offices
- Courts
- NHS trusts
- Universities and colleges
- Police
- Prisons
- MOD
- Army
- Executive agencies of the government
- Statutory regulatory bodies

- Leisure centres (but not private clubs)
- Public golf club houses
- Museums and art galleries which are sponsored by public authorities.

The DEC must be accompanied by an Advisory Report. DECs are valid for 12 months, Advisory Reports seven years. This report is a listing of recommendations provided by the energy assessor after completion of the energy survey. It will detail improvements to the energy rating of the building. Such recommendations may include improved glazing or lighting, for example heating systems, etc.

The penalty is £500 for failing to display a DEC at all times in a prominent place clearly visible to the public and £1000 for failing to have possession of a valid advisory report. In addition to these penalties, it is still necessary to commission the documents.

A DEC must contain, by law, the following information:

- The operational rating and the asset rating (if available) as determined by the government approved method
- The operational ratings for the building expressed in any certificates displayed by the occupier during the last two years before the nominated date
- A reference value such as a current legal standard or benchmark
- The unique certificate reference number, the address of the building, the total useful floor area of the building, the name of the energy assessor, their employer (or trading name if self-employed), the name of their accreditation scheme and the date when the DEC was issued

4

Procurement

INTRODUCTION

The dictionary definition of procurement is 'the obtaining of goods and services'. Put in a construction context this can be taken to mean obtaining the whole spectrum of goods, materials, plant and services in order to design, build and commission a building that delivers the best possible value for money for the client over its life cycle.

Traditionally, the criteria for the selection of goods, materials, plant and services has been the cheapest or lowest priced bid; however, recently the emphasis has changed from cheapest cost to best value.

The approach to construction procurement and the choice of the appropriate construction strategy will vary between clients (public or private sector) and projects (new or refurbishment). Traditionally, the public and private sectors have had very different approaches towards construction procurement, with the public sector being heavily regulated, with an emphasis on transparency and accountability. However, with the private sector the emphasis has been less regulated and accountable with the end result being more important than the process. During the last 20 years or so there has been increasing cooperation between the two sectors, for example the increasing use of Public Private Partnerships, explained later in this section. For the public sector another layer of procurement legislation in the form of the EU Public Procurement Directives also has to be taken into account.

GUIDELINES TO PROCUREMENT

There are a number of standard guides to construction procurement such as those published by the National Joint Consultative Committee for Building (NJCC). Although the NJCC was disbanded in 1996

the documentation is still used as a reference. In 1969, the NJCC, in conjunction with the Ministry of Public Building and Works, published the *Code of Procedure for Selective Tendering,* which was the first of a long line of practice guides published for the guidance of clients using the industry as well as their professional advisers administering their projects. This document was republished as the *Code of Procedure for Single Stage Selective Tendering* in 1977. By this time the Ministry of Public Building and Works had been replaced by the Department of the Environment and they collaborated in its production, together with the JCCs in Scotland and Northern Ireland. There followed codes of procedure for:

- Tendering for Industrialised Building Projects (1974)
- Two Stage Selective Tendering (1983)
- Selective Tendering for Design and Build (1985)
- Letting and Management of Domestic Sub-Contract Works (1989), and
- Selection of a Management Contractor and Works Contractors (1991).

These publications were augmented with nine guidance notes, 20 procedure notes and two tendering questionnaires. Interestingly, the NJCC Code of Practice under the heading 'Assessing Tenders and Notifying Results' places emphasis for the selection of bids on the lowest cost as it recommends that 'The lowest tenderer should be asked to submit his priced bill(s) of quantities as soon as possible….'

In addition to NJCC guidance, the UNCITRAL model law provides a useful starting point and sets out the general principles for successful construction procurement as follows:

- Maximising economy and efficiency in procurement
- Fostering and encouraging participation in procurement proceedings by suppliers and contractors, especially where appropriate participation by suppliers and contractors, regardless of nationality, and thereby promoting international trade
- Promoting competition among suppliers and contractors for the supply of goods, construction or services procured
- Providing for the fair and equitable treatment of all suppliers and contractors
- Promoting the integrity of, and fairness and public confidence in, the procurement process, and
- Achieving transparency in the procedures relating to procurement.

Although primarily for use in the public sector, the UNCITRAL model law's reference to competition, equity, fairness, confidence and transparency can be said to be the essential requirements for any procurement strategy whether public or private sector.

To an extent the procurement strategy that is dominant at any particular time is influenced by a number of external factors as illustrated in Table 4.1.

A GENEALOGY OF PROCUREMENT

1834–1945

- 1834 – the birth of the quantity surveyor, a profession still synonymous with construction procurement
- The Joint Contracts Tribunal in their publication *The Use of Standard Forms of Building Contract* advises that from about 1870 the possibility of a standard form was discussed among various trade bodies and the RIBA
- Agreed forms were subsequently issued in 1909 and 1931. New editions followed to take account of change in industry practice.

1946–1969

- The aftermath of the Second World War left a massive demand for new buildings and infrastructure
- The election of a Labour government in 1964 attempted to shackle developers from making what were considered to be excessive profits, with the introduction of a Betterment Levy, which was included in the Land Commission Act of 1967
- The predominant forms of procurement/contract during this period were single-stage lump sum contracts based on bills of quantities. A Code of Practice for Single Stage Selective Tendering was developed as a highly prescriptive guide to this form of procurement
- The emergence of cost reimbursement contracts allowed a contractor to be reimbursed for the costs of a project on the basis of actual cost of labour, material and plant plus a previously agreed percentage, to cover profit and overheads. The theory was that work could commence on site much more quickly than traditional procurement routes although the higher the cost the greater the contractor's profit.

Table 4.1 A genealogy of procurement

Dates	Economic milestones	Procurement trends	Construction activity
1934–1945	Few corporate clients	Sequential, fragmented process Bills of quantities, competitive tendering	Traditional approach
1946–1969	Post-war regeneration	High value = Low cost Lump sum competitive tendering Cost reimbursement	Rebuilding post-war Britain
1970–1979	Rampant inflation 25%+ pa Historically high interest rates	Management contracting Two stage tendering	Property boom 1970–1974
1980–1989	1989 base rate reaches 15% Financial deregulation Privatisation 1987 Inflation reaches 7.7% pa 1987 Stock market crash	Construction management Management contracting CCT Bespoke contracts to load risk onto contractors	Property slump 1980–1984 Property boom 1985–1990
1990–2000	Globalisation Low interest rates and inflation World economic slump	Partnering PPP/PFI	Property slump 1991–1997 Property boom 1997–2000
2001–2008	Globalisation Sustained economic growth Low interest rates and inflation	e-Procurement Prime contracting Relationship contracting	Property boom
2009–	Sub-prime market collapses End of ten years of economic growth	Design and construct Lump sum competitive tendering	Slump in housing sector, credit crunch

1970–1979 – a highly volatile period characterised by:

- The election of a Conservative government in 1970 and the start of a property boom. The previous Labour government restrained property development with legislation as well as controlling house building with mortgage lending restrictions
- In 1970–1974 the Conservative government decided to increase the money supply and much of this money found its way into property development. Between 1970 and 1973 bank lending increased from £71bn to £1332bn, with most of the increase going to property companies
- Rents doubled within two years
- Developers became increasingly impatient with existing procurement techniques, they demanded short lead-in times and fast completion
- Inflation rose to 25% per annum with historically high interest rates. The faster that buildings could be procured the fewer profits were eaten up by interest charges, inflated material and labour prices
- Mid-1972 the continuing Arab/Israeli war caused oil prices to soar and a loss of confidence in the UK economy
- There was a period of comparative political instability with the election of a minority Labour government in February 1974 followed by another general election in October 1974. Labour was to remain in power until 1979 when a new Conservative government was elected
- In the private sector fast track procurement strategies were developed. Although faster than traditional methods they had little cost certainty. However, lack of cost certainty was to some extent tolerated in times when property values were rising so quickly. Many of the problems that were to be associated with the so-called fast track methods of construction, management and management contracting, were due to lack of pre-contract planning. These new methods, however, sought to collapse the construction programme by using a concurrent approach with, in some cases, design and construction being carried on in parallel.
- In the public sector traditional procurement, that is single stage selective tendering, still predominated in an attempt to ensure accountability.

1980–1989

- High interest rates contributed to the recession 1979–1982
- The developer/trader appeared. This was often an individual, who had as many projects as money could be found for. The completed

projects were sold for a profit at a time of rising rental values, the bank repaid and the next project undertaken
- By the end of the decade UK banks were exposed to £500bn of property related debt
- Fee scales came under threat. During the 1980s the Conservative government introduced compulsory competitive tendering (CCT) for public sector projects which by the end of the decade had spread to the private sector and consultants faced with a reduction of fee income of up to 60% had to adopt a more pragmatic approach to procurement
- The later part of the 1980s was characterised by the increasing use of modified standard forms of contract. Private clients/developers became increasingly frustrated with what was perceived as unfair risk allocation and as a result lawyers were increasingly asked to amend, in some cases substantially, standard forms of contract to redress the balance
- Design and build procurement began to see a rise in popularity as clients perceived it as a strategy that transfers more risk to the contractor.

1990–2008

- The 1990s started with the worst recession the construction industry had known in living memory. Almost 500,000 people left the industry
- The construction industry was not the only sector experiencing difficult trading conditions. In 1992 the oil and gas industries came to the conclusion that the gravy train had finally hit the buffers. It launched an initiative known as CRINE or Cost Reduction Initiative for the New Era, with the stated objective of reducing development and production costs by 30%. The chief weapon in this initiative was partnering and collaborative working in place of silo working and confrontation and the pooling of information for the common good
- The Latham and Egan Reports recommended fundamental changes in procurement practice
- In 1999 the construction industry started to come to terms with the new order. A new breed of client was in the ascendancy demanding value for money and consideration of factors such as life cycle costs. Predominant forms of procurement/contract during this period were partnering, PPP/PFI and design and build
- 2008 saw the end of ten years of economic growth and the collapse of the housing and retail sectors.

2009 – began with predictions of economic meltdown with the housing and retail sectors being particularly badly hit.

RISK AND PROCUREMENT

Construction, in whatever form, is a process that involves various amounts of risk and various procurement strategies, and forms of contract have different mechanisms for the allocation of risk. From a client's perspective risk can manifest itself in the following forms:

- Cost risk – the risk that the final cost may exceed the initial estimate
- Time risk – the risk that the project will be delivered later than planned, and
- Design or quality risk – the risk that the client is unable to easily influence and evaluate the quality of the project.

A widely accepted definition of risk is: an uncertain event or set of circumstances that could, should it occur, have an effect on the achievement of the project objectives. From a procurement perspective the questions that should be addressed are:

- What are the risks?
- What will their impact be?
- What is the likelihood of the risks occurring?

And most importantly:

- Who will be responsible for the management of risk?

These procurement drivers are sometimes illustrated in the somewhat simplistic model as shown in Figure 4.1. The quantity surveyor, when determining the appropriate procurement strategy, asks the client:

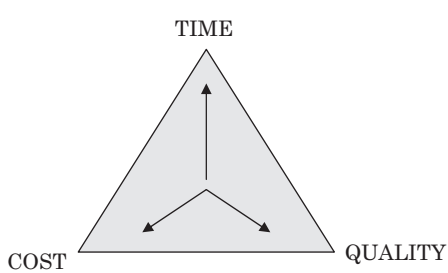


Figure 4.1

which of the drivers is important? Depending on the response a strategy is chosen that matches most closely the client's requirements. For example, a project where it is considered that design quality and cost are high priorities but where completion is not critical, traditional lump sum procurement based on drawings and a bill of quantities may be considered. Other publications are also available from the Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors and the Office of Government Commerce, but in practice there is no substitute for a thorough understanding of the clients' requirements and experience of the characteristics of the various available procurement strategies. There follows therefore details of the most common procurement paths that have been grouped:

- Traditional
- Design and build
- Management.

TRADITIONAL PROCUREMENT

During the 1960s in the UK, the traditional strategy described below was the most commonly used form of construction procurement with approximately 60% plus of all contracts being let on this basis in both the public and private sectors. In recent times client pressure has seen its popularity decrease to around 40%. Figure 4.2 illustrates the traditional model for procurement. The client has, in this illustration, appointed a project manager, usually a quantity surveyor, to coordinate the project on their behalf. From a client perspective this has the advantage that the project manager is a single point of contact to answer any day-to-day queries, instead of having to approach the individual members of the design team. This approach to procurement is also commonly referred to as 'architect led' procurement as traditionally the client has chosen and approached an architect in the first instance and it is then the architect who assembles the rest of the design team: structural engineer, services engineer, quantity surveyor, etc.

The chief characteristics of traditional single-stage competitive tendering are:

- It is based on a linear process with little or no parallel working, resulting in a sometimes lengthy and costly procedure
- Competition or tendering cannot be commenced until the design is completed
- The tender is based on fully detailed bills of quantities, and

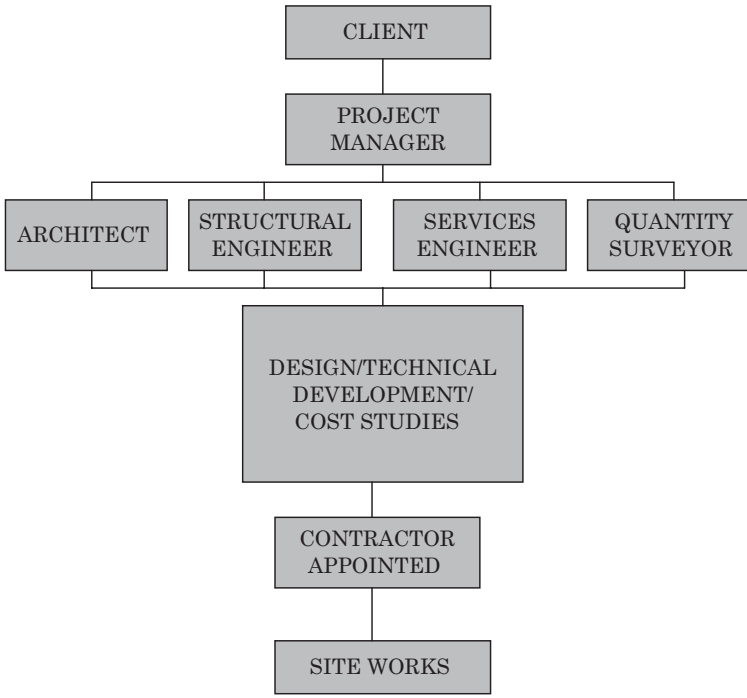


Figure 4.2

- The lack of contractor involvement in the design process, with the design and technical development being carried out by the clients' consultants, unlike some other strategies described later.

Other procurement paths have attempted to shorten the procurement process with the introduction of parallel working between the stages of client brief, design, competition and construction. The following is based on the RIBA Outline Plan of Work 2007, included as table 2.1.

Preparation, stages A and B – Appraisal and Design Brief

Having taken the decision to build, the client, whether a corporate body or an individual, finds an architect and discusses the proposals. Depending on the scale and type of project, the design team, see Figure 4.2, is now brought together.

Following on from the formation of the design team the next stage in the process is for the client to brief the design team on their requirements. For the quantity surveyor there is usually a requirement from the client to provide an estimate of cost based on the preliminary information that may, or may not, be available. It can of course be the case that the client has a cost limit to which the design team have to produce their solution, either way the quantity surveyor's function is to monitor/advise on costs. It can be a problem as the information is so provisional and the techniques that are available for the quantity surveyor are described in 2, Forecosting costs and value. At this stage the decision will also be taken as to which procurement strategy is to be used.

Design, stages C, D and E – Concept, Design Development and Technical Design

During this period the architect and engineer will develop the design and specification. The basis of single stage competitive tendering are detailed bills of quantities and the quantity surveyor must decide at what point the information is of sufficient detail to let measurement commence, without having to become involved with remeasurement. The usually practice is to draw up a taking-off schedule indicating when information is required and when sections will be completed. It is a feature of this type of procurement that all the work must be measured and included in the bills of quantities prior to obtaining bids. During this period the quantity surveyor should draw up a list of tenderers. The list should comprise three contractors who are to be approached to carry out the work. The list may be extended to six in the public sector, although it is increasingly difficult to find this number of competent contractors available at the same time. During the preparation of the bills of quantities the quantity surveyor should contact prospective firms that have the approval of the client and the architect, to determine whether they are available to bid for the project. In the first instance this is done by telephoning the chief estimator of a prospective contractor and giving brief details of the proposed project including the approximate value, date for dispatch of documents and the starting date. The decision by the contractor on whether or not to tender for a project will be influenced by:

- Workload
- Future commitments
- Market conditions
- Capital

- Risk
- Prestige
- Estimating workload
- Timing – one of the decisions that will have to be taken by the design team is the length of the contract period – a critical calculation, as successful contractors will be liable to pay damages in the event of delays and non-completion.

If the contractor is interested and available for the project the enquiry is followed up with a letter giving the following information:

- Name of client, architect and other lead consultants
- Name and type of project
- Location
- Approximate value
- Brief description
- Date for dispatch and return of tenders
- Start on site and contract duration
- Form of contract
- Particular conditions applying to the contract.

In an attempt to make the selection of contractors easier, key performance indicators or KPIs were introduced in 1999 by the government body the Centre for Constructing Excellence. Benchmarking asks who performs better, why they are performing better and how a company can improve? The broad categories that are benchmarked and measured are:

- Building performance – e.g. environmental performance, design quality
- Project performance – e.g. time, cost, defects
- Organisational performance – e.g. health and safety, respect for people
- Relationship quality – e.g. customer satisfaction service.

Therefore, it is claimed that the KPIs can be used by clients or consultants when selecting contracting organisations that perform highly across these categories. The information can be accessed online.

Pre-Construction, stages F, G and H – Production Information, Tender Documentation and Tender Action

This is the stage that the bills of quantities are finalised, as in reality they will have been started as soon as information is available. The

quantity surveyor during this stage begins to assemble the tender documents to be sent to the listed contractors. The tender documents are typically:

- Two copies of the bills of quantities, one bound and one unbound. The bound copy is for pricing and submission, the unbound copy is to allow the contractor to split the bills up into trades so that they can be set to sub-contractors for pricing
- Indicative drawings on which the bills of quantities were prepared
- The form of tender – a statement of the tender's bid
- Instructions (precise time and place) and envelope for the return of the tender.

Only indicative drawings are sent out with the tender documents; however, details are also given where tenderers may inspect a full set of drawings, usually at the architect's office. Details should also be included on access to the site.

- The usual time given to contractors for the return of tenders is four weeks although for particularly complex projects this may be six weeks. The tender documents contain precise details for the return of the tender, usually 12 noon at the selected date at the architect's office. Note that the system described above is the one used in England and Wales; in Scotland it is slightly different insofar as the tenderers submit a priced bill of quantities, not just a form of tender for consideration
- It is common during the tender period for contractors to raise queries with the quantity surveyor on the tender documentation. If errors, omissions or other anomalies come to light, then the quantity surveyor, once the problem has been resolved, must communicate the result in writing to all tenderers, so that they continue to work on the same basis
- Completed tenders are submitted to the architect's office on or before the required deadline stated in the instructions. Any tenders that are submitted late should be discarded as it is thought that it may have been possible to gain an unfair advantage. In England and Wales a submitted tender may be withdrawn any time prior to acceptance
- The tenders are opened and one selected; but what criteria should be used for selection? Traditionally, the lowest price was chosen on the basis that this provides the client with the best value for money; however, there is an increasing realisation that cheapest

price may not provide clients with best value to money over the life cycle of a building

- One tender is chosen and another bid is selected as a reserve; both selected and reserve tenderers are informed with the first choice bidder being instructed to submit fully priced bills of quantities for checking as soon as possible, usually within 48 hours. The unsuccessful tenderers are told that they have not won the project. Bills of quantities are very comprehensive documents, containing thousands of individual prices and other data relating to a contract, and it is now the responsibility of the quantity surveyor to check the bills and prepare a tender report for the client.

TENDER EVALUATION

The tender evaluation should be treated as a confidential exercise. Once the quantity surveyor is handed the priced bills of quantities the due diligence and evaluation can begin. The checks that should be carried out are as follows:

- Arithmetical checks confirm that prices have been extended correctly, that page totals are accurate and that page totals have been correctly carried forwarded to trade/element summaries and from there to the main summaries. It is not uncommon for extended bills rates to have errors; any errors should be noted. In the NJCC Code of Practice there are two accepted ways to deal with errors in computation:
  - The tenderer should be given details of the errors and allowed the opportunity of confirming or withdrawing the offer. In other words the tenderer would proceed as if the error had not been made. If the tenderer withdraws the offer, the second reserve bills of quantities should be called for and examined. An amendment, signed by both parties to the contract should be added to the priced bills indicating that all measured rates are to be reduced or increased in the same proportion as the corrected total of priced items exceeds or falls short of such items
  - In the second alternative the tenderer should be given the opportunity of confirming the offer or of amending it to correct genuine errors. Should the tenderer elect to amend the offer and the revised tender is no longer the lowest, the offer of the reserve tendered should be examined. If the errors are accepted

by the tenderer, then the rates in question should be altered and initialled

- Any items left unpriced should be queried with the tenderer
- The general level of pricing should be examined and in particular:
  - Check that similar items that appear in different parts of the bills are priced consistently. For example, excavation items that appear in substructure, external works and drainage
  - Items that are marked *provisional* and therefore to be remeasured during the course of the works have been priced at rates that are consistent with the rest of the works
  - Check for caveats inserted by the contractor. For example, 'Removal and disposal of all protective materials has not been included in the prices'.

Once these checks have been carried out and the tender is free of errors then the quantity surveyor can recommend acceptance.

The advantages of single-stage competitive tendering are:

- It is well known and trusted by the industry
- It ensures competitive fairness
- For the public sector, it allows audit and accountability to be carried out, and
- It is a valuable post-contract tool that makes the valuation of variations and the preparation of interim payments easier.

The disadvantages are:

- A slow sequential process
- No contractor or specialist involvement
- Pricing can be manipulated by tenderers, and
- Expensive.

Risk allocation

When using single-stage tendering, risk is transferred for a large part to the client. The contractor has no responsibility for design and his role is basically one of following the design team's instructions. Where tenders are based on incomplete design, the bids can only be considered as indicative of the final cost although the client is not often made aware of this and is vulnerable to additional works and costs.

Bills of reduction

The situation can occur where the tenders exceed the amount of the client's budget. Under these circumstances there are two approaches: to abandon the scheme or to negotiate a reduction with the preferred tenderer. This is best done with the preparation of a bill of reductions, that is a bill of quantities detailing how the cost is to be reduced, perhaps with reduced quantities of the substitution of a revised specification.

A modern variation on the traditional single-stage selective tendering theme is described below:

- A fully developed business case is subjected to rigorous cost planning by consultants in conjunction with the client
- Suitable contractors, say two or three, are preselected using appropriate selection criteria, such as:
  - Commitment to supply chain management
  - The ability to guarantee life cycle costs
  - Capability to deliver the project
  - Etc.
- The pre-selected contractors are asked to fully cost the project proposals and submit their best and final offer (BFO)
- On the basis of the BFO a contractor is selected and enters into contract guaranteeing the BFO price and in some cases whole life costs for a predetermined period
- Work starts on site.

In the first part of the twenty-first century, traditional lump sum procurement, based on bills of quantities, still accounts for approximately 40% of all UK construction activity. The following section is a review of some traditional procurement strategies plus design and build:

- Two stage competitive tendering
- Design and build and variants.

TWO STAGE COMPETITIVE TENDERING

This was first used widely in the 1970s and is based on the traditional single-stage competitive tendering, i.e. bills of quantities and drawings being used to obtain a lump sum bid. Advantages include early contractor involvement, a fusion of the design/procurement/

construction phases and a degree of parallel working that reduces the total procurement and delivery time. A further advantage is that documentation is based upon bills of quantities and therefore should be familiar to all concerned. Early price certainty is ruled out, as the client can be vulnerable to any changes in level in the contractor's pricing between the first and second stages.

Stage 1

The first stage tender is usually based on approximate bills of quantities; however, this does not have to be the case, other forms of first stage evaluation may be used, for example a schedule of rates, although there is perhaps a greater degree of risk associated with this approach. As drawn information, both architectural and structural, is very limited the choice of bid documentation will be influenced by the perceived complexity and predictability of the proposed project. The two stage approach places pressure on designers to take decisions concerning major elements of the project at an earlier stage than normally. A common feature with many non-traditional procurement systems, including Design and Construct and Public Private Partnerships, is that the design development period is truncated and that as a result the design that is eventually produced can lack architectural merit. Assuming that bills of approximate quantities are being used they should contain quantities that reflect:

- Items measured from outline drawings
- Items that reflect the trades it is perceived will form part of the developed design
- Items that could be utilised during the pricing at second stage.

At an agreed point during the preparation of the first stage documentation the design for first stage is frozen thereby enabling the approximate bills of quantities to be prepared. Without this cut-off point the stage 1 documentation could not be prepared. Note that it is important to keep a register of which drawing revisions have been used to prepare the stage 1 documentation for later reference during the preparation of the firm stage 2 bills of quantities. However, while first stage documentation is prepared the second stage design development can continue. During the first stage tender period attention should be focused on the substructure, as it is advantageous if at the first tender stage this element is firm. If a contractor is selected as a

result of the first stage tender then they may well be able to start on site to work on the substructure while the remainder of the project is detailed and the second stage bills of quantities are prepared and priced.

Once completed the first stage approximate bills of quantities together with other documentation are despatched to selected contractors with instructions for completion and return in accordance with normal competitive tender practice. On their return one contractor is selected to proceed to the next phase. It should be noted that selection at this stage does not automatically guarantee the successful first stage bidder award of the project; this is dependent on the stage 2 bidding process.

At this point the trust stakes are raised – assuming that a contractor is selected as a result of the stage 1 tender the following scenarios could apply:

Client	**Contractor**
The client trusts the contractor to be fair and honest during the stage 2 negotiations. Failure could result in the client having to go back to the start of the process.	Although selected by stage 1 process – no guarantee of work. No knowledge as to accuracy of first stage documentation or client's commitment to continue.
Client could ask contractor to join design team to assure buildability.	Contractor could be asked to start on site on substructure while stage 2 is progressed.
Client relies on the design team to prepare documentation for stage 2 timeously. If stage 2 bills of quantities are not accurate the work will have to be remeasured for a third time!	Contractor rewarded on the basis of letters of intent, quantum meruit, etc.
The client could, under a separate contract, engage a contractor to carry out site clearance works while stage 1 bids are evaluated.	Contractor could exploit position during stage 2 pricing.

Stage 2

The purpose of stage 2 is to convert the outline information produced during stage 1 into the basis of a firm contract between the client and the contractor, as soon as possible. With a contractor

selected as a result of the first stage process pressure is placed on the design team to progress and finalise the design. Between contractor selection and stage 2, usually a matter of weeks, the design team should prepare and price the second stage bills of quantities. During this phase it is usually the quantity surveyor who is in the driving seat and he/she should issue information production schedules to the rest of the design team. As design work on elements is completed it is passed to the quantity surveyor to prepare firm bills of quantities which are used to negotiate the second stage price with the contractor on a trade-by-trade or elemental basis. It is therefore quite possible that the contractor will be established on site before the stage 2 price is fully agreed. Unless the parameters of the project have altered greatly there should be no significant difference between the stage 1 and stage 2 prices. Once a price is agreed a contract can be signed and the project reverts to the normal single-stage lump sum contract based on firm bills of quantities; however, the adoption of parallel working during the procurement phase ensures that work can start on site much earlier than the traditional approach. Also the early inclusion of the main contractor in the design team ensures baked-in buildability and rapid progress on site.

Critical success factors

- Trust between the parties
- The appointment of a contractor that can innovate and is prepared to contribute to the design development
- Information production keeping up with requirements, failure to achieve this can lead to a good deal of embarrassment.

The UNCITRAL Model Law referred to previously suggests the following approach to two stage tendering:

- The first stage is used to ask suppliers or contractors to submit their technical proposals but without a tender price
- The client enters into discussion with the supplier/contractor and those who appear to fall short of the criteria are discarded. At the same time the client draws upon the proposals of the first stage tenderers to prepare the basis for the stage 2 documents.

The remaining contractors are then asked to submit tenders based on the revised documentation.

DESIGN AND BUILD AND VARIANTS

Design and build or design and construct are generic terms for a number of procurement strategies where the contractor both designs and carries out the works. This approach is extensively used in France where both contractors and private practices are geared up to provide this service to clients. In the UK this approach has only become common during the last 30 years or so. The various forms of design and build are as follows.

Traditional design and build (D&B)

The contractor is responsible for the complete design and construction of the project. Design and build is one of the procurement systems currently favoured by many public sector agencies. During the past decade the use of D&B variants in all sectors has increased from 11% in 1990 to 40% in 2004, the reasons are:

- D&B gives a client the opportunity to integrate, from the outset, the design and the construction of the project
- The client enters into a single contract with one company, usually a contractor who has the opportunity to design and plan the project in such a way as to ensure that buildability is baked into the design
- With specialist involvement from the start, this approach promises a shorter overall delivery time and better cost certainty than traditional approaches
- The results of the studies indicated that D&B outperforms traditional forms of procurement in several respects; however, the differences are not that significant
- One reason for this could be that, within the UK, for the organisations that provide D&B services, this is not their key competence and therefore when the opportunity comes to bid for a D&B project, temporary organisations of designers and constructors have to be formed specifically for a project. For the contractor and the designers the next project may be traditional contracting and therefore the temporary organisation is disbanded
- Studies conclude that although delivery times are shorter when using D&B improvements in cost certainty are only marginal
- The total delivery speed of D&B compared with traditional approaches is 30–33% faster

- The percentage of projects that exceeded the original estimate by more than 5% was 21% in B&D compared to 32% for traditional procurement
- D&B is recommended by the Office of Government Commerce for procurement within a partnership arrangement.

The main criticisms of D&B procurement are centred on the lack of control over quality of design, with little time being allocated for design development and possible compromises over quality to provide cost savings by the contractor. It is possible for the client to employ independent professional advice to oversee a design and build contract.

Successful use of D&B relies on the contractor preparing proposals that include:

- A contract sum analysis that itemises the financial detail on an elemental basis, and
- Detailed proposals of how the requirements of the client's brief will be satisfied.

Tender appraisal can be more difficult when using design and build as a decision on which tender to accept depends not only on the prices submitted but also on the quality of the design and the delivery time. Design and build procurement is organised in exactly the same way as single-stage lump sum procurement, with the drawing-up of a short list and bids being submitted to a strict timetable. Variants of design and build are:

- Enhanced design and build – the contractor is responsible for the design development, working details as well as construction of the project
- Novated design and build – the contractor is responsible for the design development, working details and supervising the subcontractors, with assignment/novation of the design consultants from the client. This means that the contractor uses the client's design as the basis for their bid
- Package deal and turnkey – the contractor provides standard buildings or system buildings that are in some cases adapted to suit the client's space and functional requirements.

MANAGEMENT PROCUREMENT

During the 1970s and particularly the 1980s, commercial clients and property developers started to demand that projects were procured

more quickly than had been the case with single-stage selective tendering. The three main management systems are:

- Management contracting
- Construction management, and
- Design and manage.

With fast track methods the bidding and construction phases are able to commence before the design is completed and there is a degree of parallel working as the project progresses. This obviously is high risk as the whole picture is often unknown at the time the works commence on site. This risk is exacerbated when this strategy is used for particularly complex projects of refurbishment contracts.

Management contracting

Management contracting is popular not only with developers, as projects are delivered more quickly, but also with contractors, as the amount of exposure to risk for them is substantially lower than other forms of procurement. This is because a management contractor only commits the management expertise to the project, leaving the actual construction works to others. Management contracting was first widely used in the 1970s and was one of the first so-called fast track methods of procurement that attempted to shorten the time taken for the procurement process. This is achieved by running stages such as design and construction concurrently as illustrated in Figure 4.3. Procurement is as follows:

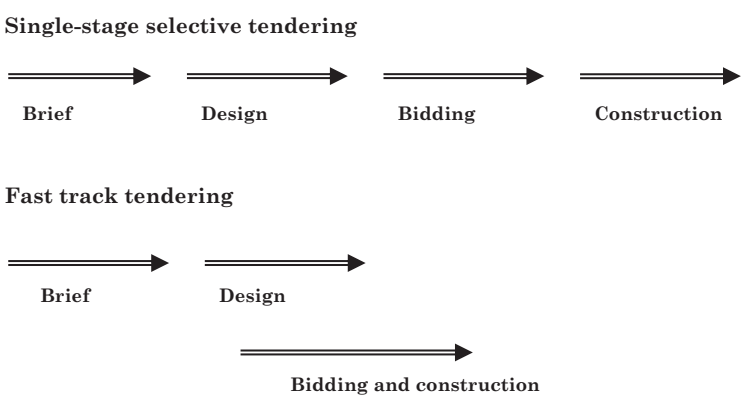


Figure 4.3 Traditional and fast track procurement compared

- Selection of a management contractor; as the management contractor's role is purely to manage, it is not appropriate to appoint a contractor using a bill of quantities. Selection therefore is based on the service level to be provided, the submission of a method statement and the management fee, expressed as a percentage, of the contract sum. This can be done on a competitive basis. As the management contractor's fee is based on the final contract sum, there is little incentive to exert prudence
- The management contractor only bids to supply management expertise, although sometimes they can also supply the labour to carry out the so-called builder's work in connection with services, as this work package can be difficult to organise
- The project is divided into work packages; typically this is between 20 and 30; for example, groundworks, concrete work, windows and external doors, suspended ceilings, etc. The packages are entered into a schedule along with the following information:

Package	To tender	Information from architect	Estimated cost	Start on site
Concrete work	21/09/09	01/08/09	£356,000	15/10/09

  The work packages are in effect a series of mini bills of quantities, produced in accordance with SMM7 and therefore the time allowed for pricing of an individual package can be reduced to around two weeks. The procedure for asking for bids is the same for single-stage selective tendering
- At the same time the cost of the project must be determined and therefore an estimated prime cost is established for each package. For the quantity surveyor, this can be problematic as the design is incomplete and therefore estimates of costs tend to be detailed cost plans, agreed with the management contractor
- Package by package the works are sent to tender; when a contractor is appointed based on the mini bills of quantities, the contractor enters into a contract directly with the client. Therefore, at the end of the process there are 20 or 30 separate contracts between the client and the work package contractors; there is no contract between the client and the work package contractors

- The management contractor's role therefore is to coordinate the work packages on site and to integrate the expertise of the client's consultants
- Payment is made to the management contractor on a monthly basis, who in turn pays the package contractors in accordance with the valuation
- The advantages are that work can start on site before the design work is complete, earlier delivery of project and return on client's investment and the client has a direct link with package contractors
- In order to provide a degree of protection for the client a series of collateral warranties can be put in place
- The disadvantages are high risk for the client, firm price is not known until the final package is let, difficult for the quantity surveyor to control costs and any delay in the production of information by the design team can have disastrous consequences on the overall project completion
- A distinct JCT form of contract exists for management contracts.

Construction or contract management

This approach is similar to management contracting insofar as the project is divided into packages; however, the construction manager adopts a consultant's role with direct responsibility to the client for the overall management of the construction project, including liaising with other consultants. Construction managers are appointed at an early stage in the process and as with management contracting reimbursement is done by way of a pre-agreed fee. Each work package contractor has a direct contract with the client, this being the main distinction between the above two strategies.

Design and manage

When this strategy is adopted a single organisation is appointed to both design the project as well as managing the project using work packages. It is an attempt to combine the best of design and build and management systems. The characteristics are:

- A single organisation both designs and manages
- The design and management organisation can be either a contractor or a consultant
- Work is let in packages with contracts between the contractor or client, dependent on the model adopted
- Reimbursement is by way of an agreed fee.

Cost reimbursement contracts

Cost plus

Cost-plus contracts are best used for uncomplicated, repetitive projects such as road contracts. The system works as follows:

- The contractor is reimbursed on the basis of the prime cost of carrying out the works, plus an agreed cost to cover overhead and profit. This can be done by the contractor submitting detailed accounts for labour, materials and plant that are checked by the quantity surveyor. Once agreed the contractor's costs are added
- There is no tender sum or estimate, and
- The greater the cost of the project, the greater the contractor's profit.

Target cost

A variant of cost-plus contracts, this strategy incentivises the contractor by offering a bonus for completing the contract below the agreed target cost. Conversely, damages may be applied if the target is exceeded.

Term contracts/schedule of rates

These are suitable for low value repetitive works that occur on an irregular basis. Contractors are invited to submit prices for carrying out a range of items based on a schedule of rates. Contractors are required to quote a percentage addition on the schedule rates. Used extensively for maintenance and repair works.

Negotiated contracts

This strategy involves negotiating a price with a chosen contractor or contractors, without the competition of the other methods. Generally regarded by some as a strategy of the last resort and an approach that will almost result in a higher price than competitive tendering, it has the following advantages:

- An earlier start on site than other strategies
- The opportunity to get the contractor involved at an early stage.

The contractors selected for this approach should be reputable organisations with a proven track record and the appropriate management expertise.

PARTNERING

Partnering is viewed as a radical departure from the traditional approach not only to construction procurement, but also the management of supply chain relationships. The term partnering in connection with procurement emerged in the USA in the early 1980s as a technique for reducing the costs of commercial contract disputes by improving communications, process issues and relationships as the principal focus. Partnering relies on cooperation and teamwork, openness and honesty, trust, equity and equality between the various members of the supply chain.

Partnering is:

- A process whereby the parties to a traditional risk transfer form of contract, i.e. the client, the contractor and the supply chain, commit to work together with enhanced communications, in a spirit of mutual trust and respect towards the achievement of shared objectives
- A structured management approach to facilitate teamwork across contractual boundaries that helps people to work together effectively in order to satisfy their organisations' (and perhaps their own) objectives
- A means of avoiding risks and conflict. There is not one model partnering arrangement; it is an approach that is essentially flexible, and needs to be tailored to suit specific circumstances
- A model that enables organisations to develop collaborative relationships either for one-off projects (project specific) or as long-term associations (strategic partnering)
- A process that is formalised within a relationship that might be defined within a charter or a contractual agreement.

Many major clients across all sectors have been adopting partnering in response to the proven long-term benefits that can be achieved through this approach and have reported to have reached savings of up to 40% on costs and 70% on time by using partnering approaches. There is, however, evidence that small, occasional clients have little to gain from the process.

For contractors the continuity of working repeatedly for the same clients is also thought to provide a number of benefits for contracting organisations although whether a contractor's profit margin increases on a partnering project is unclear. Both supply and demand

sides agree that partnering provides a more rewarding environment in which to operate.

Cultural issues

Cultural realignment for an industry is difficult to achieve. The approach generally adopted by organisations is to organise partnering workshops during which the approach is explained. This includes:

- The establishment of trust – vital in the partnering process
- Emphasising the importance of good communications between partnering parties
- Explaining that many activities are carried out by teamwork and how this is achieved in practice
- The establishment of a win/win approach
- Breaking down traditional management structures and empowering individuals to work in new ways.

Commercial issues

Organisations wishing to be involved in partnering arrangements should be able to demonstrate capabilities in the following:

- Establishing a target (base) cost that is based on open book accounting and incorporating pain/gain schemes. Profit margins should be established and ring fenced
- A track record of using value engineering to produce best value solution
- A track record of using risk management to identify and understand the possible impact of risk on the project
- An ability to successfully utilise benchmarking to identify how to measure and improve performance
- The willingness to take a radical look at the way they manage their business and to engage in business process re-engineering if necessary to eliminate waste and duplication.

Key success factors

Some of the following are desirable for project partnering; all are essential for successful strategic partnering:

- There needs to be a commitment at all levels within an organisation to make the project or programme of work a success, which

means a commitment to working together with others to ensure a successful outcome for all participants (win/win situation)
- Partners must have confidence in each other's organisations, and each organisation needs to have confidence in its own team, which means careful selection of the people involved
- Partners should be chosen on the basis of the ability to offer best value for money and not on lowest price; their ability to innovate and offer effective solutions should also be considered.

Clients should normally select their partners from competitive bids based on carefully set criteria aimed at getting best value for money. This initial competition should have an open and known pre-qualification system for bidders:

- Partners need collectively to agree the objectives of the arrangement/project/programme of work and ensure alignment/compatibility of goals. This will require early involvement of the entire team to ensure a win/win situation for all. The agenda must be of mutual interest with a focus on the customer; it must therefore be quality/value driven
- To satisfy the relationship's agenda, there needs to be clarity from the client and continued client involvement. It is essential to define clearly the responsibilities of all participants within an integrated process
- There needs to be a willingness to be flexible and adopt new ideas and different ways of doing things – e.g. different operational methodologies, different administrative procedures, different payment methods, different payment procedures, etc.
- All players should share in success in line with their contribution to the value added process (which will often be difficult to assess). There also needs to be a sharing of information, which requires open-book accounting and open, flexible communication between organisations/teams/people
- Responsibility for risks must be allocated clearly and fairly, but there must be a collective responsibility for problems and an openness and willingness to accept and share mistakes. Adoption of such openness and sharing requires trust
- It is important that all partnering arrangements incorporate effective methods of measuring performance. It has been identified that partnering should strive for continuous improvement, and this must be measurable to ascertain whether or not the process is effective

- It is therefore important that agreed non-adversarial conflict resolution procedures are in place to resolve problems within the relationship. The principle of trying to resolve disputes at the lowest possible level should normally be adopted to save time and cost
- Education and training is needed to ensure an understanding of partnering philosophy. It is important that, regardless of how well versed participants are in the philosophy and procedures, team-building takes place at commencement of the relationship.

Trust is generally regarded as being crucial to the success of partnering; indeed, it has been described as the cornerstone of a successful partnering relationship. Blois (1999) argues that only individuals can trust, and consequently trust between organisations (which are, after all, only collections of people) means a lot of people needing to trust a lot of other people. This makes relationships vulnerable to human fickleness. Careful selection of the correct individuals by each organisation is therefore crucial to success.

ALLIANCING

The terms alliancing and partnering do not have the same legal connotations as partnership or joint venture and therefore there has been a tendency, particularly in the construction industry, to apply them rather loosely to a whole range of situations many of which clearly have nothing to do with the true ethos of partnering or alliances, which is to be regretted. As with partnering, alliancing can be catagorised as follows:

> Strategic alliances can be described as two or more firms that collaborate to pursue mutually compatible goals that would be difficult to achieve alone. The firms remain independent following the formation of the alliance. Alliancing should not be confused with mergers or acquisitions.

A project alliance is where a client forms an alliance with one or more service providers, designers, contractors, suppliers, etc., for a specific project and this section will continue to concentrate on this aspect of alliancing.

The principal features of a project alliance are as follows:

- The project is governed by a project alliance board, which is composed from all parties to the alliance that have equal representation on the board. One outcome of this is that the client has to divulge to

the other board members far more information than would, under other forms of procurement, be deemed to be prudent
- The day-to-day management of the project is handled by an integrated project management team drawn from the expertise within the various parties on the basis of the best person for the job
- There is a commitment to settle disputes without recourse to litigation except in the circumstance of wilful default
- Reimbursement to the non-client parties is by way of 100% open-book accounting based on:

1. 100% of expenditure including project overheads
   Each non-client participant is reimbursed the actual costs incurred on the project, including costs associated with reworks. However, reimbursement under this heading must not include any hidden contributions to corporate overheads or profit. All project transactions and costings are 100% open book and subject to audit
2. A fixed lump sum to cover corporate overheads and a fee to cover profit margin
   This is the fee for providing services to the alliance, usually shown as a percentage based on 'business as usual'. The fee should represent the normal return for providing the particular service
3. Pain/gain mechanism with pre-agreed targets
   The incentive to generate the best project results lies in the concept of reward, which is performance based.

A fundamental principle of alliances is the acceptance on the part of all the members of a share of losses, should they arise, as well as a share in rewards of the project. Risk/reward should be linked to project outcomes which add to or detract from the value to the client. In practice there will be a limit to the losses that any of the alliance members, other than the client, will be willing to accept, if the project turns out badly. Unless there are good reasons to the contrary it may be expected that the alliance will take 50% of the risk and the owner/client the remaining 50%. The major differences between alliancing and project partnering are as shown in Table 4.2.

For example, in project partnering one supplier may sink or swim without necessarily affecting the business position of the other suppliers. Therefore given the operational criteria of an alliance it is vitally important that members of the alliance are selected against rigorous criteria. These criteria, usually demonstrated by reference

Table 4.2

	Partnering	**Alliances**
The form of the undertaking	Core group with no legal responsibilities. Binding/non-binding charters used in 65% of partnering arrangements.	Quasi joint venture operating at one level as a single company.
The selection process	Prime contractor responsible for choice of supply chain partners. Project can commence while selection continues.	Rigorous selection process. Alliance agreement not concluded until all members appointed.
The management structure	By prime contractor. Partnering adviser.	Alliance board.
Risk and reward mechanisms	Partners' losses not shared by other members of the supply chain.	Losses by one alliance member shared by other members.

to previous projects undertaken by the prospective alliance members, vary from project to project but as a guide could be a demonstrated ability to:

- Complete the full scope of works being undertaken from the technical, financial and managerial perspectives
- Re-engineer project capital and operating costs without sacrificing quality
- Achieve outstanding quality with an outstanding track record
- Innovate and deliver outstanding design and construction outcomes
- Demonstrate safety performance
- Demonstrate conversance with sustainability issues
- Work as a member of an alliance with a commitment to non-adversarial culture and change direction quickly if required
- Have a joint view on what the risks are and how they will be managed
- Ensure reasonable provision has been made within the target cost for such items.

The circumstances under which variations arise are limited. Generally, normal changes due to design development are not considered. Changes that could give rise to variations are:

- Significant increases or decreases in the scope of work, e.g. adding in new buildings parts of buildings or facilities
- Fundamental changes in the performance parameters.

PRIME CONTRACTING

Introduced in the 1990s prime contracting is a long-term contracting relationship based on partnering principles and is currently being used by several large public sector agencies. A prime contractor is defined as an entity that has the complete responsibility for the delivery and, in some cases, the operation of a built asset and may be either a contractor, in the generally excepted meaning of the term, or a firm of consultants. The prime contractor needs to be an organisation with the ability to bring together all of the parties in the supply chain necessary to meet the client's requirements. There is nothing to prevent a designer, facilities manager, financier or other organisation from acting as a prime contractor. However, by their nature prime contractors tend to have access to an integrated supply chain with substantial resources and skills such as project management. To date most prime contractors are in fact large firms of contractors, despite the concerted efforts of many agencies to emphasise the point that this role is not restricted to traditional perceptions of contracting. One of the chief advantages for public sector clients with a vast portfolio of built assets is that prime contracting offers one point of contact/responsibility, instead of a client having to engage separately with a range of different specialists.

As with other forms of procurement based on a long-term partnership the objective of prime contracting is to achieve better long-term value for money through a number of initiatives such as supply chain management, incentivised payment mechanisms, continuous improvement, economies of scale and partnering. The approach to prime contracting differs from PFI because the prime contractors' obligations are usually limited to the design and construction of the built asset and the subsequent facilities management; there is no service delivery involved. Also the funding aspects of this approach are much less significant for the prime contractor, in that finance is provided by the public sector client. In some models in current

use, prime contractors take responsibility not only for the technical aspects of a project during the construction phase, including design and supply chain management, but also for the day-to-day running and management of the project once completed. This may include a contractual liability for the prime contractor to guarantee the whole life costs of a project over a predetermined period for as much as 30 years.

The key features of prime contracting are:

- Fewer larger long-term contracts
- Shared risk
- Partnering in the supply chain
- Incentivisation of private sector contractors.

The key commercial issue surrounding prime contracting is setting up long-term relationships based on improving the value of what the supply chain delivers, improving quality and reducing underlying costs through taking out waste and inefficiency. It is claimed that the products and services provided by the companies in the supply chain typically account for 90% of the total cost of a construction project. The performance of the whole supply chain impacts on the way in which the completed building meets the client's expectations. By establishing long-term relationships with supply chain members it is believed that the performance of built assets will be improved through:

- The establishment of improved and more collaborative ways of working together to optimise the construction process
- Exploiting the latest innovations and expertise.

The prime contractor's responsibilities might include the following:

- Overall planning, programming and progressing of the work
- Overall management of the work, including risk management
- Design coordination, configuration control and overall system engineering and testing
- The pricing, placing and administration of suitable sub-contractors
- Systems integration and delivering the overall requirements.

FRAMEWORKS

Framework agreements are being increasingly used to procure goods and services in both the private and public sectors. Frameworks have been used for some years on supplies contracts; however, in respect of works and services contracts, the key problem, particularly

in the public sector, has been a lack of understanding as to how to use frameworks, while still complying with legislation, particularly the EU Directives and the need to include an 'economic test' as part of the process for selection and appointment to the framework. In the private sector BAA were the first big player to use framework agreements, which covered everything from quantity surveyors to architects and small works contractors. The EU public procurement directives define a framework as 'An agreement between one or more contracting authorities and one or more economic operators, the purpose of which is to establish the terms governing contracts to be awarded during a given period, in particular with regard to price and, where appropriate, the quality envisaged.'

A framework agreement therefore is a flexible procurement arrangement between parties, which states that works, services or supplies of a specific nature will be undertaken or provided in accordance with agreed terms and conditions, when selected or 'called off' for a particular need. The maximum duration of a framework under current EC rules is four years and can be used for the procurement of services and works. An important characteristic of framework agreements is that inclusion in a framework is simply a promise and not a guarantee of work. Entering into such a framework, however rigorous and costly the selection process, is not entering into a contract, as contracts will only be offered to the framework contractors, supply chains, consultants or suppliers, as and when a 'call-off' is awarded under the agreement. Interestingly, in November 2004, approximately one year after the roll-out of the ProCure21 framework programme on a national basis, the first signs of discontent among the 12 framework consortia began to emerge. Contractors complained about lack of work and some even threatened to leave the framework.

The framework establishes the terms and conditions that will apply to subsequent contracts but does not create rights and obligations. The major advantages of framework agreements are seen to be:

- It forms a flexible procurement tool
- The avoidance of repitition when procuring similar items
- Establishment of long-term relationships and partnerships
- Whenever a specific contract call-off is to be awarded, the public body may simply go to the framework contractor that is offering the best value for money for their particular need
- Reduction in procurement time/costs for client and industry on specific schemes.

PUBLIC PRIVATE PARTNERSHIPS (PPP)

The procurement process for PPP projects varies according to the model that is used:

- Prior to 1989, British governments were not keen to allow private capital in the financing of public sector projects. In the UK the position was set out in the so-called Ryrie Rules
- The Rules were revised in February 1988 to take account of the privatisation of the previously nationalised industries and the introduction of schemes such as contracting out, opting out, mixed funding and partnership schemes
- The objective of the Ryrie Rules was to stop ministers from insulating private finance from risk so that it could be used to circumvent public expenditure constraints
- The Ryrie Rules were formally retired in 1989. Subsequently, the Treasury promoted private finance as additional and not just substitutional; the Private Finance Initiative was launched in 1992 and revamped as Public Private Partnerships (PPPs) by the Labour government in 1998
- To many, PPPs were seen as a natural progression to the programme of privatisation that was undertaken in the UK during the 1980s and 1990s.

Public Private Partnerships in the UK have developed and continue to be developed in many forms to suit the needs of particular sectors, e.g. education, health, etc., and in some cases subsectors, e.g. primary health care. The principal PPP models currently in use in the UK construction sector are listed below and will be discussed in the section that follows:

- The Private Finance Initiative (PFI)
- Building Schools for the Future (BSF)
- NHS Local Improvement Finance Trust (LIFT)
- Frameworks
- ProCure21
- PRIME
- Public Private Partnership Programme (4Ps)
- Leasing
- Concessions and franchises.

However, in most cases, in PPP arrangements private sector contractors become the long-term providers of services rather than

simply upfront asset builders, combining some or all of the responsibilities for the:

- Design
- Construction
- Finance (which may be a mixture of public and private sources)
- Facilities management, and
- Service delivery

of a public service facility.

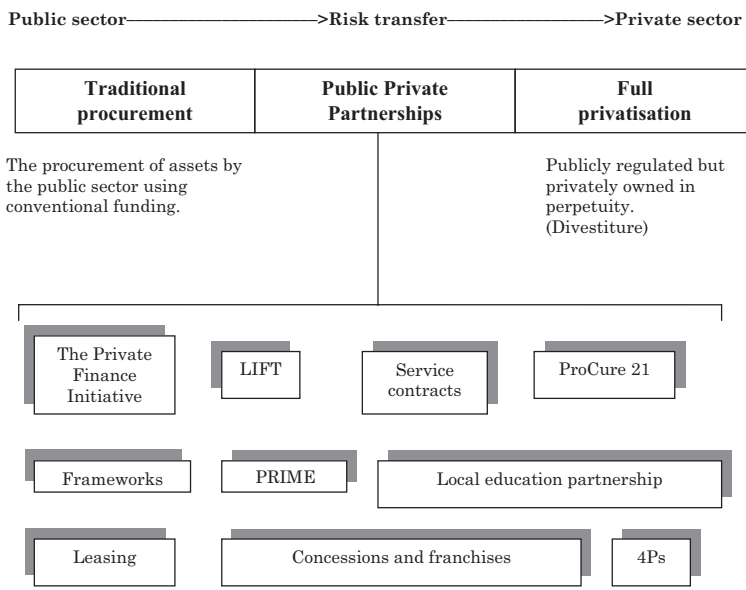


Figure 4.4 PPP models

The procurement process

In general, a PPP project cycle can be broken down into the stages shown in Figure 4.5.

The private finance initiative (PFI)

In the UK during the last 15 years or so, three main PFI procurement models have developed. These are:

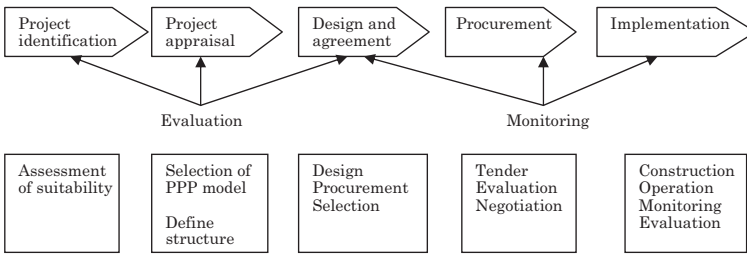


Figure 4.5 Stages of a PPP project cycle

- Joint ventures
- Financially free-standing projects
- Classic PFI.

Joint ventures

Joint ventures are projects to which both the public and private sectors contribute, but where the private sector has overall control. The project as a whole must make economic sense and competing uses of the resources must be considered. The main requirements for joint venture projects are:

- Private sector partners in a joint venture should be chosen through competition
- Control of the joint venture should rest with the private sector
- The government's contribution should be clearly defined and limited. After taking this into account, costs will need to be recouped from users or customers
- The allocation of risk and reward will need to be clearly defined and agreed in advance, with private sector returns genuinely subject to risk.

The government's contribution can take a number of forms, such as concessionary loans, equity transfer of existing assets, ancillary or associated works, or some combination of these. If there is a government equity stake, it will not be a controlling one. The government may also contribute in terms of initial planning regulations or straight grants or subsidies.

Financially free-standing projects

The private sector undertakes a project on the basis that costs will be recovered entirely through a charge for the services to the final user,

for example the Queen Elizabeth II Bridge in Kent/Essex, where the toll charges go directly to the company that constructed and run the bridge. The characteristics of this approach are:

- Government may contribute value to the project in terms of initial planning and statutory procedures, or determining the route of a linking road, etc.
- At the end of the concession period the ownership of the asset may be handed to the public sector.

Classic PFI

The Private Finance Initiative (PFI) is the most widely used, most controversial and best known form of PPP, currently accounting for approximately 80% of all expenditure on PPPs in the UK construction sector.

Classic PFI is characterised as follows:

- Bids are submitted by consortia to:
  - Raise the finance
  - Design
  - Build
  - Operate and maintain

  for a period of 30 years plus. During the currency of the contract the consortia will receive an annual payment, known as a unitary charge, providing that agreed performance standards are met. At the end of the contract the facility is handed back to the public sector in a good state of repair
- Design Build Finance and Operate (DBFO) is the classic and perhaps most widely used PFI model, with a contract structure usually similar to the one illustrated in Figure 4.6.

In order to obtain approval early PFI projects were required to demonstrate two principal advantages over conventional public procurement strategies:

- Value for money compared with traditional service provision. The mechanism used to demonstrate value for money is referred to as the Public Sector Comparator (PSC), a model still used that purports to show in black and white balance sheet terms, which of the two approaches (the PFI or traditional lump sum procurement) delivers the better value. Fortunately, the PSC is no longer used as the sole litmus test for value for money and it is now

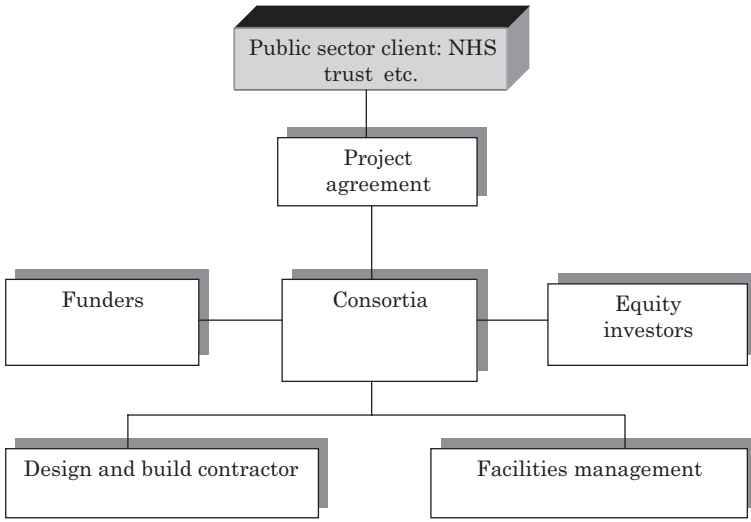


Figure 4.6 PFI contract structure

recommended by the Office of Government Commerce (OGC) that a more holistic approach is adopted when assessing which procurement path to select

- One of the basic premises of PPPs is that the private sector is better able to manage public sector facilities because of its superior management expertise and experience. The second important hurdle for PFI projects to clear is a demonstration that significant risk has been transferred from the public to the private sector operator (i.e. without a guarantee by the taxpayer against loss).

In addition to value for money and risk transfer other characteristics of PFI deals such as DBFO are:

- Selection based on competition on the net present values of the unitary payment
- An output-based specification rather than the traditional prescriptive model
- A long-term contract, usually 30 years minimum
- Performance related payments
- Task integration
- Operation of completed facility.

Unitary payment

Unlike conventional procurement strategies where bids are calculated and assessed on the basis of the current capital cost of building a school or hospital, PFI projects are assessed on the proposed charge of a consortia to finance, build and operate a facility over the duration of the contract. Because of the long-term nature of the projects all costs likely to be incurred over the life cycle of the PFI project have to be reduced to net present values in order that meaningful comparisons may be made.

Output-based specification

Unlike conventional procurement where design and construction is based on a set of prescriptive documentation, in the case of a PFI deal it is the role of the consortia to interpret and comply with a series of outputs specified by the client. The consortia will have the responsibility for the design of the new facility, therefore it is essential that the outputs are described in such a manner that they:

- Comply with all existing regulations/sector benchmarks/etc.
- Allow the consortia the flexibility, within the constraints of the above, to develop solutions that are innovative. In particular, the consortia should have the opportunity to identify sources of additional income stream from within the project, provided of course that the main service delivery is not compromised
- Safeguard the end users against suboptimal service delivery.

Long-term contracting

Historically, construction projects have been undertaken by what have been referred to as 'temporary multi-organisations', that is to say individual organisations – contractors, clients, property professionals, etc. – that come together for a specific project with a specified project period, and then on completion of the project and handover to the client go their own separate ways. With this approach it is entirely possible that the same team of organisations and individuals may never work together again. However, the length of the contractual relationship in PPP projects is such that during its currency there may well be several changes of government, wars, etc. This therefore marks a major cultural shift in the way in which built assets are procured and managed over their lifetime from short termism to long termism, or to quote and paraphrase Sir Denys Linton 'an approach that is based

upon partnership rather than merely a hope of completing the contract unscathed'. This approach has to be based on, among other things, mutual trust, transparency, alignment of aims and objectives and a desire to deliver high-quality public services in new and innovative ways.

Performance related payments

One of the main attractions of PPP/PFI procurement for the public sector is that it gives the procuring body the opportunity to incentivise the private sector contractor to deliver large and prestigious public projects to time and to budget as the public sector will not begin to pay for the assets until such time as they are completed and operational. In addition, once operational, continual performance monitoring ensures that performance remains at previously agreed and contracted levels.

Task integration

Unlike conventional procurement the PFI requires tasks, which traditionally have been carried out in a discrete and fragmented way, to be integrated.

Other strategies used are as follows.

Build Operate and Transfer (BOT)

Example – the Channel Tunnel, Spanish toll roads (autopistas), Skye Bridge.

The process is as follows:

Build: a private consortium agrees to invest in a public infrastructure project. The consortium then secures its own construction finance.

Operate: the consortium then owns, maintains and manages the facility for an agreed concessionary period, say 25 years, and recoups its investment through charges or tolls.

Transfer: after the concessionary period the consortium transfers ownership and operation of the facility to the government or relevant authority.

In its basic form a BOT project is one in which a public sector grants a concession to a private company for a fixed period of time. The private sector company constructs the project to the agreed specification and then operates and maintains it. This gives the private sector the

opportunity to recoup the construction costs and to make a profit. At the end of the concession period the project is handed back to the private sector at no cost. The public sector is then free to run the project itself or appoint a contractor. Typically, the main parties to a BOT project are:

- The project company
- The government
- The government agency
- The investors, lenders
- The contractor
- The operator
- The suppliers.

The benefits of BOT schemes are:

- Large infrastructure projects can be undertaken without risking public funds
- The public sector benefits from private sector expertise
- Investment, construction and technology risks are shifted to the private sector
- Long-term income streams for the private sector consortia
- Combines responsibility for the disparate functions of design, construction and maintenance under one single entity
- Project design can be tailored to the construction equipment and materials
- Tailored maintenance, attention to WLCs, incentivisation, smoother operations.

With a BOT approach the public sector relinquishes much of the control and day-to-day management they possess with more traditionally procured projects. Needs therefore must be identified upfront – see Performance/Output spec.

The BOT scheme can also include the following variations.

Build Rent Transfer (BRT)

Similar to a BOT or BLT project except that the project site, buildings and equipment are rented to the private sector during the term of the project.

Build Lease Transfer (BLT)

Similar to a BOT or BRT project except that a lease of the project site, buildings and equipment is granted to the private sector during the term of the project.

Build Own Operate (BOO)

A method of financing projects and developing infrastructure, where a private company is required to finance and administer a project in its entirety and at its own risk. The government may provide some form of payment guarantee via long-term contracts, but any residual value of the project accrues to the private sector.

Design Construct Manage and Finance (DCMF)

Adopted by the Prison Service when it embarked on its programme of modernisation in 1992, this model has produced the greatest efficiency savings to date. In most PFI models the public sector retains the responsibility for key staff, teachers in schools, clinicians in health schemes, etc.; however, in prison schemes the private sector consortia also provide the prison staff. As the consortia have also been responsible for the design of the prison the need to follow a heavily prescriptive specification has been dispensed with and innovative new ways to deal with questions such as high levels of security and surveillance were introduced. National Audit Office figures show that compared to traditionally procured and operated schemes, PFI prisons save about 10% or £40 million a year (CBI) over their life span. The public sector retains the demand risk as clearly the private sector has no control over the numbers admitted to prison.

e-Procurement

There has been a growth in the number of tender documents being prepared in electronic format. The degree to which the entire procurement process is electronically based can vary widely. The main advantages claimed for e-procurement are:

- Simplification of the process
- Reducing costs and waste
- Avoids the need for duplication of effort when issuing documents
- Fairer assessment of bids.

The main methods available to distribute procurement documents are:

- Disk
- An e-mail attachment, and
- Web-based systems.

Disk

Floppy disks are all but now extinct, so this method of data exchange will involve using CD or DVD or flash drive. The advantages are:

- Familiarity with the technology
- If encrypted can be secure.

The disadvantages are:

- Once transferred to a disk this then has to be posted or couriered to recipient
- Comparatively expensive
- Open to theft and physical damage/corruption.

E-mail

When tendering information is exchanged using e-mail then it will be as an attachment. The advantages are:

- Quick and cheap
- Familiarity with technology.

The disadvantages are:

- Not secure; vulnerable to attack by virus, hackers, etc.
- Some files may prove too big to send
- Difficult to track revisions
- May get lost in sea of spam.

Web-based systems

The most efficient and secure method of conducting e-procurement. An extranet (a closed/restricted) web-based portal is used to send information to the selected bidders only. The advantages are:

- The ability to securely communicate in real time
- All bidders access the same common pool of information.

The disadvantages are:

- Compared to the other two options, relatively expensive
- Proprietary systems may require monthly subscription.

EUROPEAN PUBLIC PROCUREMENT LAW

Procurement in the European public sector involves governments, utilities (i.e. entities operating in the water, energy and transport sectors) and local authorities purchasing goods, services and works

over a wide range of market sectors, of which construction is a major part. For the purposes of legislation, public bodies are divided into three classes:

1. Central government and related bodies, e.g. NHS Trusts
2. Other public bodies, e.g. local authorities, universities, etc.
3. Public utilities, e.g. water, electricity, gas, rail.

Public procurement is different from private business transactions in several areas; the procedures and practices are heavily regulated and, while private organisations can spend their own budgets more or less as they wish (with the agreement of their shareholders), public authorities receive their budgets from taxpayers and therefore have a responsibility to obtain value for money, traditionally based on lowest economic cost. However, in recent years the clear blue water between private and public sectors has disappeared rapidly with the widespread adoption of public private partnerships and the privatisation of what were once publicly owned utilities or entities.

The directives – theory and practice

The EU directives provide the legal framework for the matching of supply and demand in public procurement. A directive is an instruction addressed to the EU member states to achieve a given legislative result by a given deadline. This is usually done by transposing the terms of the directive into national legislation. The European public procurement regulatory framework is regulated by the public procurement Directives 2004/17/EC and 2004/18/EC for supplies, works and services, and utilities, which, together with the general principles enshrined in the Treaty of Rome (1957), established the following principles for cross-border trading (references apply to the Treaty of Rome):

- A ban on any discrimination on the grounds of nationality (Article 6)
- A ban on quantitative restrictions on imports and all measures having equivalent effect (Articles 30 to 36)
- The freedom of nationals of one member state to establish themselves in another member state (Articles 52 *et seq.*) and to provide services in another member state (Articles 59 *et seq.*).

Enforcement directives (89/665EEC and 92/13EEC) to deal with breaches and infringements of the system by member states.

The quantity surveyor and EU public procurement

How is the quantity surveyor likely to come into contact with the European public procurement system? The following scenarios are discussed:

- A surveyor working within a public body (contracting authority) and dealing with a works contract
- A surveyor in private practice wishing to bid for work in Europe as a result of a service contract announcement.

A surveyor within a public body

A quantity surveyor working within a body governed by public law (if in doubt, a list of European bodies and categories of bodies is listed in the directives) should be familiar with procedures for compliance with European public procurement law. The directives lay down thresholds above which it is mandatory to announce the contract particulars. The *Official Journal* is the required medium for contract announcements and is published five times each week, containing up to 1000 notices covering every imaginable contract required by central and local government and the utilities – from binoculars in Barcelona to project management in Porto. Major private sector companies also increasingly use the *Official Journal* for market research. The current thresholds (effective from January 2008) for announcements in the *Official Journal* are:

1. For works contracts (i.e. construction), £3,497,313.00.
2. For supplies and service contracts (i.e. quantity surveying, project management):

   - Central government, £90,319
   - Other public bodies, £139,893

3. Utilities:

   - Water, electricity, urban transport, airports, ports:
     Supplies and services £388,977
     Works £3,497,313.00

   - Oil, gas, coal and railways
     Supplies and services £383,977
     Works £3,497,313.00

(NB: All figures exclude VAT).

DGXV actively encourages contracting authorities and entities to announce contracts that are below threshold limits. Information on these impending tenders is published by the European Commission in the *Official Journal of the European Communities*, often otherwise known as the *OJEU*, which is available free of charge, electronically, at europa.eu.int/.

The directive also clarifies existing law in areas such as the selection of tenderers and the award of contracts, bringing the law as stated into line with judgements of the European Court of Justice.

The EU procurement procedure

The *OJEU* announcement procedure involves three stages:

1. Prior information notices (PIN) or indicative notices.
2. Contract notices.
3. Contract award notices (CANs).

Examples of these notices can be found in Annex IV of the directive.

- *A prior information notice,* or PIN, which is not mandatory, is an indication of the essential characteristics of a works contract and the estimated value. It should be confined to a brief statement, and posted as soon as planning permission has been granted. The aim is to enable contractors to schedule their work better and allow contractors from other member states the time to compete on an equal footing
- *Contract notices* are mandatory and must include the award criteria, which can be based on either the lowest price or the most economically advantageous tender, specifying the factors that will be taken into consideration. Once drafted, the notices are published, five times a week, via the Publications Office of the European Commission in Luxembourg in the *Official Journal* via the Tenders Electronic Daily (TED) database, and translated into the official languages of the community, all costs being borne by the community. TED is updated twice weekly and may be accessed through the Commission's website at http://simap.eu.int. Extracts from TED are also published weekly in the trade press. In order to give all potential contractors a chance to tender for a contract, the directives lay down minimum periods of time to be allowed at various stages of the procedure – for example, in the case of Open Procedure this ranges from 36 to 52 days from the date of dispatch of the notice for publication in the

Official Journal. Restricted and negotiated procedures have their own time limits. These timescales should be greatly reduced with the wide-scale adoption of electronic procurement

- *Contract award notices* inform contractors about the outcome of the procedure. If the lowest price was the standard criterion, this is not difficult to apply. If, however, the award was based on the 'most economically advantageous tender', then further clarification is required to explain the criteria – e.g. price, period for completion, running costs, profitability and technical merit, listed in descending order of importance. Once established, the criteria should be stated in the Contract Notices or contract documents.

Award procedures

The surveyor must decide at an early stage which award procedure is to be adopted. The following general criteria apply:

- Minimum number of bidders must be five for the restricted procedure and three for the negotiated and competitive dialogue procedures
- Contract award is made on the basis of lowest price or most economically advantageous tender (MEAT)
- Contract notices or contract documents must provide the relative weighting given to each criterion used to judge the most economically advantageous tender and where this is not possible, award criteria must be stated in descending order of importance, and
- MEAT award criteria may now include environmental characteristics, e.g. energy savings, disposal costs, provided these are linked to the subject matter of the contract.

The choices are as follows:

Open procedure, which allows all interested parties to submit tenders.

Restricted procedure, which initially operates as the open procedure but then the contracting authority only invites certain contractors, based on their standing and technical competence, to submit a tender. Under certain circumstances, for example extreme urgency, this procedure may be accelerated.

Negotiated procedure, in which the contracting authority negotiates directly with the contractor of its choice. Used in cases where it is strictly necessary to cope with unforeseeable circumstances, such as earthquake or flood. Most commonly used in PPP models in the UK.

Competitive dialogue – the introduction of this procedure addresses the need to grant, in the opinion of the European Commission, contracting authorities more flexibility to negotiate on Public Private Partnership (PPP) projects. Some contracting authorities have complained that the existing procurement rules are too inflexible to allow a fully effective tendering process. Undoubtedly, the degree of concern has depended largely on how a contracting authority has interpreted the procurement rules as there are numerous examples of Public Private Partnership projects which have been successfully tendered since the introduction of the public procurement rules using the Negotiated Procedure. However, the European Commission recognised the concerns being expressed, not only in the UK but also across Europe, and it has sought to introduce a new procedure which will accommodate these concerns. In essence, the new competitive dialogue procedure permits a contracting authority to discuss bidders' proposed solutions with them before preparing revised specifications for the project and going out to bidders asking for modified or upgraded solutions. This process can be undertaken repeatedly until the authority is satisfied with the specifications that have been developed. Some contracting authorities are pleased that there is to be more flexibility to negotiations; however, for bidders this reform does undoubtedly mean that tendering processes could become longer and more complex. This in turn would lead to more expense for bidders and could pose a threat to new entrants to the PPP market as well as existing players. According to the Commission's DGXV department the introduction of this procedure will enable:

- Dialogue with selected suppliers to identify and define solutions to meet the needs of the procuring body, and
- Awards to be made only on the basis of the most economically advantageous basis.

In addition:

- All candidates and tenderers must be treated equally and commercial confidentiality must be maintained unless the candidate agrees that information may be passed onto others
- Dialogue may be conducted in successive stages. Those unable to meet the need or provide value for money, as measured against the published award criteria, may drop out or be dropped, although this must be conveyed to all tenderers at the outset

- Final tenders are invited from those remaining on the basis of the identified solution or solutions, and
- Clarification of bids can occur pre- and post-assessment provided this does not distort competition.

To summarise, therefore, the Competitive Dialogue Procedure is, according to the Commission, to be used in cases where it is difficult to access what would be the best technical, legal or financial solution because of the market for such a scheme or the project being particularly complex. However, the Competitive Dialogue Procedure leaves many practical questions over its implementation, for example:

- The exceptional nature of the competitive dialogue and its hierarchy with other award procedures
- The discretion of the contracting authorities to initiate the procedure; who is to determine the nature of a particular complex project?
- The response of the private sector, with particular reference to the high bid costs
- The overall value for money
- The degree of competition achieved as there is great potential for post-contract negotiations.

Electronic tendering

Electronic auctions

The Internet is making the use of electronic auctions increasingly more attractive as a means of obtaining bids in both public and private sectors; indeed, it can be one of the most transparent methods of procurement. At present electronic auctions can be used in both open and restricted framework procedures. The system works as follows:

- The framework (i.e. of the selected bidders) is drawn up
- The specification is prepared
- The public entity then establishes the lowest price award criterion, for example with a benchmark price as a starting point for bidding
- Reverse bidding on a price then takes place, with framework organisations agreeing to bid openly against the benchmark price
- Prices/bids are posted up to a stated deadline
- All bidders see the final price.

Technical specifications

At the heart of all domestic procurement practice is compliance with the technical requirements of the contract documentation in order to produce a completed project that performs to the standards of the brief. The project must comply with national standards and be compatible with existing systems and technical performance. The task of achieving technical excellence becomes more difficult when there is the possibility of the works being carried out by a contractor who is unfamiliar with domestic conventions and is attempting to translate complex data into another language. It is therefore very important that standards and technical requirements are described in clear terms with regard to the levels of quality, performance, safety, dimensions, testing, marking or labelling, inspection, and methods or techniques of construction, etc. References should be made to:

- *A standard*: a technical specification approved by a recognised standardising body for repeated and continuous application
- *A European Standard*: a standard approved by the European Committee for Standardisation (CEN)
- *European technical approval*: a favourable technical assessment of the fitness for use of a product, issued by an approval body designated for the purpose (sector-specific information regarding European technical approval for building products is provided in Directive 89/106/EEC)
- *Common technical specification*: a technical specification laid down to ensure uniform application in all member states, which has been published in the *Official Journal*
- *Essential requirements*: requirements regarding safety, health and certain other aspects in the general interests that the construction works must meet.

Given the increased complexity of construction projects, the dissemination of accurate and comprehensive technical data is gaining in importance. It is therefore not surprising that the Commission is concerned that contracting authorities are, either deliberately or otherwise, including discriminatory requirements in contract documents. These include:

- Lack of reference to European standards
- Application of technical specifications that give preference to domestic production
- Requirements of tests and certification by a domestic laboratory.

The result of this is in direct contravention of Article 30 of the Treaty of Rome, and effectively restricts competition to domestic contractors. In an attempt to reduce the potential problems outlined above the EU has embarked on a campaign to encourage contracts to be based on an output or performance specification, which removes the need for detailed and prescriptive documentation.

5

Pricing and tendering

The components of a unit rate, that is the rate used to price a bill of quantities or a specification, are composed from some or all of the following:

- Labour costs – the all-in labour rate. This is built up from operatives' wages plus statutory costs such as national insurance, etc.
- Material costs – the basic costs of materials plus the costs of delivery, unloading and storage and allowances for wastage
- Plant costs – the hire cost of mechanical plant plus delivery to site, operating costs (drivers and fuel), etc. Can be included in the Preliminaries section, under the appropriate clause
- Overheads and profit – overheads are such items as head office costs, etc. The profit margin will vary according to a number of external factors, including risk. Surprisingly, in the UK the profit margin for many general contractors is low. The contractor may choose to include overheads and profit in the individual unit rates or make suitable allowances elsewhere in the tender.

Given that contractors working within a given geographical area will almost certainly obtain their labour, materials and plant from similar pools, it follows that the competitive edge between competing contractors must be within the overheads and profit.

SUB-CONTRACTORS

Increasingly, much of the work attributed to a general contractor is carried out by sub-contractors. Sub-contractors can be individuals or substantial firms who agree a contract with the main contractor to complete a section of a project, for example ground works and masonry. During the recent past the percentage of work being carried out by sub-contractors has increased considerably. For the main contractor the advantages are:

- The main contractor's liability to retain, on a full time basis, all the specialists necessary for day-to-day operations is reduced
- Sub-contractors are used as and when required, thereby reducing overheads.

The disadvantages of employing sub-contractors are:

- Programming; some types of sub-contractors may, on occasions, be difficult to engage
- Control and coordination of sub-contractors, and
- Quality of work.

Standard forms of contract vary in the amount of information they are required to provide about sub-contractors as well and the degree of authority vested in those responsible for giving permission for work to be subcontracted.

There are a number of different types of sub-contractors, as follows:

- Domestic sub-contractors
- Named sub-contractors, and
- Nominated sub-contractors.

Named or nominated?

Until the mid-1970s there were only two categories of sub-contractor – nominated and domestic – but increasingly clients were using the named sub-contractor instead of nominated sub-contractor. Contractually, a named sub-contractor is the same as a domestic sub-contractor except that the client states which contractors are acceptable without taking the responsibility for their final selection and appointment. The concept of naming rather than nominating started in the 1970s as relationships within the construction industry became more adversarial. It was first formalised in the JCT Intermediate Form of Contract in 1984. It is a procedure whereby a client selects a shortlist of preferred sub-contractors, usually three, probably asks for quotations based on a common specification and then passes their names and quotations onto the main contractor. Neither the sub-contractor nor the main contractor is obliged to use these quotations as a basis for a tender and they can be renegotiated.

Indeed, either party can decline to enter into a contract with the other party if they have reasonable grounds for not doing so. Named sub-contractors are more popular with clients as:

- Most forms of contract allow for the main contractor to claim an extension of time for delay caused by a nominated sub-contractor, which the main contractor has taken all reasonable measures to prevent. This is often quite an easy claim to make and a very difficult one to refute
- Clients pass on the risk of appointing sub-contractors to the main contractor, and
- Naming allows the client to keep some control over sub-contractor selection without having to take responsibility for performance.

A major change to the JCT 05 was to revise the process of subletting works with the demise of the provisions for nominating sub-contractors in the industry flagship contract. In consequence, all reference to nominated sub-contractors has been removed to be replaced with simply sub-contractor. Clauses 3.7 to 3.9.

DOMESTIC SUB-CONTRACTORS

Domestic sub-contractors are employed directly by the main contractor; it is a private arrangement between the two parties. Domestic sub-contractors do not have a contract with the client but work on site as the main contractor's personnel and they are coordinated by the main contractor's site management team. Domestic sub-contractors have a responsibility to deliver work that complies with the approval of the client and architect and are paid by the main contractor from monies received from the client in interim valuations. The terms of payment, discounts, etc. are negotiated between the domestic sub-contractor and the main contractor. Although the various forms of contract vary slightly, so long as the main contractor informs the architect that certain parts of the works are to be carried out by domestic sub-contractors, consent cannot be reasonably withheld. Domestic sub-contractors are commonly used as follows:

- Sub-contractors that carry out complete sections of the work, including all materials, labour and plant, for example
- Labour only sub-contractors; as the title suggests, unlike named sub-contractors, labour only sub-contractors supply only labour to the main contractor. Fears have been expressed over the use of this sort of labour that centre around:
  - Lack of training and skills
  - Accountability, and
  - Payment of taxation and other statutory obligations

- The usual media image of labour only sub-contractors is of gangs of men on street corners, in the early hours, waiting to be collected by a white van. The Inland Revenue is constantly reviewing the process for employing this type of labour.

The contractual relationship in the case of the above two types of subcontracting is between the main contractor and the sub-contractor only. The main contractor retains the responsibility for ensuring that domestic sub-contractors comply with all relevant statutory legislation and is answerable to the architect for the works done and materials supplied. The use of domestic sub-contractors allows the main contractor the opportunity to transfer risk to the sub-contractors.

Although not obligatory, there are a number of specialist contracts that have been developed for use with domestic sub-contractors, for example DOM1 as developed by the Building Employers Confederation.

NAMED SUB-CONTRACTORS

Named sub-contractors are often used in public sector projects and for projects based on the Form of Contract where there is no provision for nomination. If a named sub-contractor has not been appointed at the time that the bills of quantities are ready for despatch then a provisional sum is included for provision of the works to be carried out by the named sub-contractor. The main features of named subcontracting are:

- The tender documents, usually the bills of quantities, include the names of potential named sub-contractors. The main contractor has the opportunity to reasonably object to any firm on the list
- The main contractor leads the tender process for each named sub-contractor package, by assembling the tender documents, issuing and receiving tenders, and selecting a named contractor, and
- After appointment the named sub-contractor, for all intents and purposes, is a domestic sub-contractor. The main contractor is only paid the rates in the accepted subcontract tender.

Because the contractual relationship between a named and a domestic sub-contractor is similar, named sub-contractors are allowed for due to the inclusion of a provisional sum.

NOMINATED SUB-CONTRACTORS

In cases when the architect or client wishes to restrict and control certain aspects of the project works then nominated sub-contractors can be used. They may also be used in cases where, at the tender stage, parts of the project have not be fully detailed and therefore the use of nominated sub-contractors allows the job to go to tender, with the nominated works being dealt with at a later date. The principal differences between domestic and nominated sub-contractors are:

- The tender process is organised and run by the architect who invites suitable sub-contractors to submit a tender
- The architect selects the preferred tender and then instructs the main contractor to enter into a contract with the sub-contractor.

In order to use nomination a prime cost sum is included in the bills of quantities at tender stage. A prime cost sum (or first cost sum) should be an accurate estimate of the likely cost of works when fully detailed. Unlike the domestic sub-contractor, a nominated sub-contractor does enter into a formal contract with the main contractor and has the benefit of stipulated payment procedures for which the nominated sub-contractor has to agree to give the main contractor 2.5% discount on all sums due, to cover administration costs. In addition to the inclusion of a prime cost sum, the main contractor also has the opportunity to include attendance on the sub-contractors. These allowances vary according to the nature of the works being carried out by the sub-contractor, but could include:

- Unloading, storage and protection of the sub-contractor's materials
- Provision of accommodation, plant, scaffolding and services required by the sub-contractors
- Disposing of rubbish and packaging generated by the sub-contractors, and
- Protecting the finished work until the project is complete.

Attendances can be priced in a variety of ways by the main contractor, for example:

- As a lump sum
- As a percentage addition, and
- Included within profit and overheads allowance.

From a contractor's point of view, the advantages of including a percentage is that this will increase pro rata, if the eventual cost of the

work exceeds the prime cost sum allowance. To avoid duplication, a definition of 'general attendance' is included within the preliminaries section of the bill of quantities. The following is an example of how a prime cost sum should be included with a bill of quantities for the item of:

Include the prime cost sum of **£120,000.00** for vitreous enamelled steel cladding panels, complete with insulation and galvanised steel Z section framework, supplied and fixed by a nominated sub-contractor.	120,000.00
Add for profit	
Add for general attendance as (refer back to preliminaries)	Priced by contractor as a percentage or lump sum or included in overheads
Add for special attendance as including:	

- Mechanical offloading and distribution
- Hoisting
- Dry, covered and secure storage
- Scaffolding and ladders
- Provision of 110 volt AC supply
- Protection of the completed work
- Removal of all debris.

THE NOMINATION PROCESS

The following process relates to contracts where the contract administrator is entitled to nominate:

- Suitable firms are identified by the architect and they are invited to submit tenders for the subcontract works carried out in accordance with strictly defined conditions. In the case of subcontracts where there is an element of design, it is advisable to include a collateral warranty, see explanation later, that establishes a direct contract between the nominated sub-contractor and the employer
- When submitted the tenders are examined by the contract administrator and one is selected
- Instructions are then given to the main contractor to enter into a subcontract with the selected nominated sub-contractor and negotiate the items relating to programming, etc., and
- Following agreement an employer/sub-contractor agreement is put in place.

COLLATERAL WARRANTIES

Collateral warranties are used in cases where the subcontract involves an element of design and are employed to give the client the right to pursue a sub-contractor in the event that the design proves to be faulty. The JCT have developed standard forms of collateral warranty and it is a separate contract between the client and the sub-contractors that operates alongside the main contract. Collateral warranties are dealt with in more detail in Section 6.

Calculating bill rates using domestic sub-contractors

If a contractor chooses to use domestic sub-contractors, then the usual procedure is for the appropriate section of the tagged bill of quantities to be sent by the main contractor to sub-contractors for pricing. When returned, one is selected by the main contractor, and the main contractor adds on the domestic sub-contractor's rates, the main contractor's profit and overheads before using the adjusted sub-contractor's rates to price the bill of quantities as if they were their own.

UNIT RATE AND OPERATIONAL ESTIMATING

There are two alternative approaches to estimating, operational and unit rate. Operational estimating considers a parcel of work as a package; in contrast, unit rate estimating is where prices for bill of quantities items are each calculated separately.

Operational estimating

Civil engineering works have taken a broader brush approach to estimating, due in part to the nature of many civil engineering projects where large quantities are involved as well as extensive use of mechanical plant. In the case of civil engineering works different approaches to carrying out the works can have a significant effect on prices. All the resources needed for parts of the construction are considered together, instead of in isolation. Examples of where this approach is successfully used are:

- Excavation and disposal
- Concrete work, and
- Drainage.

There is no hard and fast rule where operational-based estimating techniques stop and unit rate estimating begins. In fact, it can be difficult to reconcile works priced on an operational basis with a bill of quantities. However, operational estimating is suitable for design and build tendering when the contractor can use their own approach and no bills of quantities have to be submitted.

Unit rate estimating

A price is calculated for each item in the bill of quantities as if the item is to be carried out in isolation to the rest of the works. This is the traditional approach for pricing the majority of building work.

Unit rates will need to calculated by the estimator for directly employed labour and take into account the following.

Labour costs

Labour costs are determined by the calculation of the so-called 'all-in' hourly rate and are the basic costs associated with labour with the addition of the costs that comply with a range of statutory requirements. These on-costs may include all or some of the following items and can be found in the National Joint Council for the Construction Industry's Working Rule Agreement, which is published annually by the Building and Allied Trades Joint Industrial Council (BATJIC) and is available on line at: www.fmb.org.uk/

For example, the BATJIC Standard rate of wages (plain time rates) for a 39 hour week were determined as follows for June 2007/08:

- Craftsmen – between £337.35 and £392.34 per week or £8.65 and £10.06 per hour
- Operatives – £288.60 per week or £7.31 per hour.

Note: these rates change annually.

On-costs

The principal on-costs are as follows.

Overtime payments – Working rule 7
The first hour worked over 39 hours is at plain time rates and thereafter:

- Monday to Friday – For the next three hours: time and a half and then double time after that

- Saturday – Time and a half up to 4.00pm and then double time
- Sunday – Double time.

Holidays – Working rule 4
Annual (21 days) and public holidays 8 days.

Guaranteed week – Working rule 9
Operatives are guaranteed 39 hours employment per week despite stoppages for inclement weather providing that they are available for work.

Travelling, fares and lodgings – Working rule 11
There are a variety of daily allowances based on sliding scales to reimburse the costs of travelling to and from work (see Table 5.1).

Table 5.1 Daily fare allowance

Distance (km)	**Fare £**	**Distance (km)**	**Fare £**
1–6	Nil	29	5.93
7	0.40	30	6.05
8	0.80	31	6.27
9	1.20	32	6.29
10	1.59	33	6.45
11	2.01	34	6.53
12	2.40	35	6.71
13	2.80	36	6.82
14	3.20	37	6.95
15	3.61	38	7.17
16	3.90	39	7.29
17	4.14	40	7.51
18	4.40	41	7.69
19	4.64	42	7.88
20	4.77	43	8.05
21	4.95	44	8.25
22	5.13	45	8.41
23	5.25	46	8.63
24	5.36	47	8.80
25	5.52	48	8.96
26	5.63	49	9.18
27	5.75	50	9.32
28	5.86		

Sickness and injury benefit – Working Rule 12
Payment to operatives for absence from work due to sickness or injury up to a maximum of 12 weeks per year. The first day of any absence is not paid. Current sick allowance is £107.16 per week or £21.41 per day and is in addition to statutory sick pay.

National Insurance contributions are also payable at the appropriate rate and are calculated as follows. Note that the current threshold for NI payments is £97.00, although this does vary:

Craftsman

£379.08 per week × 46 weeks = £17,437.68
Threshold £97.00 × 46 weeks = £4,462.00
National Insurance 12.80% £12,975.68 = £1660.89

Operative

£285.09 per week × 46 weeks = £13,114.14
Threshold £97.00 × 46 weeks = £4,462.00
National Insurance 12.80% £8652.14 = £1107.47

Retirement and death benefit – Working rule 13
Payments made on the retirement or death of operatives.

Tool allowance – Working rule 18
Now consolidated within the basic wage rates, the employer must provide secure storage and replacement if stolen or damaged.

Construction Industry Training Board (CITB) levy
A levy paid to the training board to fund the training of new operatives and the development of new skills.

Other items
Employer's liability insurances
Additional payments for intermittent responsibility – Working rule 1C, as follows:

37 pence per hour for the use of air or percussion tools
58 pence per hour for operating a drag shovel, dumper up to 2000 kg, etc.
81 pence per hour for larger items of plant.

For continuous responsibility the following additions are payable as follows:

between £369.69 and £383.73 per week for tower cranes.

In addition, the working rule agreement lay down standards for the following:

Health and welfare provisions – Working rule 15

Welfare benefit:

Retirement contribution:	£3.00
Stakeholder pension scheme	£7.00
Death benefit contribution	£0.90
Total	**£10.90**

Safety – Working rule 16
Trades union facilities – Working rule 17
Maternity/paternity leave – Working rule 24

All-in hourly rate calculation

In order to calculate the all-in hourly rate, that is the hourly rate charged by a contractor for a construction operative, the estimator must first decide on the following:

- The number of hours worked per week
- Overtime rate – assumed to be time and a half – Working rule 7
- Summer working, in the following example taken as 30 weeks
- Winter working, in the flowing example taken as 20 weeks.

Hours worked
Summer period

Number of weeks	30	
Weekly hours	39	
Total hours		1170
Less holidays		
Annual – 14 days		(109.20)
Public – 5 days		(39.00)

Winter period

Number of weeks	22	
Weekly hours	39	
Total hours		858
Less holidays		
Annual – 7 days		(54.6)
Public – 4 days		(31.2)
Sickness	8	(62.00)
Total hours for payment		1731.60
Allowance for bad weather	2%	34.63

TOTAL PRODUCTIVE HOURS **1766.23**

Annual earnings	**Craftsman**	**Labourer**	**Craftsman**	**Labourer**
Basic weekly wages	£379.08	£285.09		
Hourly rate (1/39)	£9.72	£7.31		
Annual earnings			£16,831.15	£12,658.00
Bonus per hour	£3.00	£2.00	£5,194.80	£3,463.20

Add-on costs

Non-productive overtime*
time and a half only

Hours per week summer	10 × 26 weeks		
Hours per week winter	5 × 20 weeks		
Hours per year summer	260	£2527.20	£1900.60
Hours per year winter	100	£972.00	£731.00
Sick pay per day	£20.22		
Allowance per year – 8 days		£161.74	£161.74
Working rule agreement says £0.25 per hour worked.			
		£432.90	£432.90
Sub-total		**£26,119.79**	**£19,347.44**

Add overheads		
National Insurance 12.80% above threshold	£1,660.89	£1,107.47
CITB training levy	£123.63	£94.11
Holidays with pay allowance		
Annual holidays allowance – 163.8 hours	£1,592.14	£1,233.93
Public holidays allowance – 70.2 hours	£682.34	£513.16
Welfare benefit 52 weeks @ £10.90	£566.80	£566.80
Sub-total	**£30,745.59**	**£22,862.91**
Employer's liability and public liability insurance – 2%	£614.91	£457.26
Annual cost of operative	**£31,360.50**	**£23,320.17**
Hourly rate – divide by productive hours – 1766.23	**£17.76**	**£13.20**

* Non-productive overtime relates to the additional money paid to operatives working overtime. While working overtime, half as much again is paid and yet the physical amount of work produced is not increased – this unproductive paid working is known as non-productive overtime.

Labour constants

Labour output is the most uncertain part of a unit rate. It can vary considerably depending upon the skills and output of the operative, the site organisation, weather conditions and many other factors often outside the control of the contractor. Historical records of labour outputs are kept by most contractors and sub-contractors based on a variety of sources including observing and benchmarking operations on site. These records, which give the average unit time for each operation, are called labour constants. Rates are usually expressed

for an individual craftsman or labourer or in some cases where more appropriate, for example brickwork, a gang rate may be used. In the case of brickwork this will be built up from calculating the output for two tradesmen and one labourer who will provide the bricklayers with the materials that they need.

Gang rates

It is often the case that labour rates are calculated on the basis of gang rates rather than individual skilled and labourer's rates. This is thought to be a more realistic approach as often, for example in the case of bricklayers, roofers and plasterers, two or three skilled operatives will be furnished with materials by a labourer and the gang rate would be based on three skilled to one unskilled operatives per hour. The following is the gang rate for bricklaying:

$3 \times £17.76 = £53.28$
$1 \times £13.20 = £13.20$
£66.48 per hour

Of course the output of the bricklaying gang will increase threefold plus compared to an individual bricklayer; economies of scale can also be achieved as a single labourer is used. A variety of approaches have been used in the following examples.

Materials

The bills of quantities require the contractor to price items in terms of units that are in many cases unlike the units that the materials are bought in. For example, cement, sand and other constituents of concrete in foundations are bought in a variety of units, such as tonnes, whereas the bill of quantities requires concrete in foundations to be priced in m^3. Therefore, during the estimating process the builders merchants rates and costs have to be converted to the unit required by the bills of quantities.

The all-in rate for materials comprises the following allowances:

- The price quoted by the supplier/builders merchant. This will have to be adjusted for:

  - Trade discounts, and
  - Discounts for bulk orders
- Transport to the site
- Storage on site
- An allowance for wastage, which will vary according to the type of material but on average is about 10%. This wastage can be attributed to items such as theft, breakages, misuse and mistakes during use, and
- Bill of quantities items are measured net, in other words no allowances are made in the measurement for overlapping on roofing felt of damp-proof courses at joints, see SMM7. An addition has to be made to take account of this.

Plant

For estimating purposes there are two scenarios relating to the pricing of plant; plant may be owned by the contractor or hired from a specialist plant hire firm.

Before deciding to own plant the contractor must consider the cost and the amount of use and work for the machine. Ideally, the plant should be used continuously. It is quite common for larger contracting organisations to have their own separate plant hire company so that the plant can be used in-house and also hired to other contractors. The principal advantages of hiring plant on an 'as and when' needed basis are that it does not require large sums of capital to be tied up in plant as well as time devoted to maintenance and storage.

All-in rate for plant

The factors that have to be considered when calculating an all-in rate for plant are:

- Fixed costs:
  - Cost of plant and expected operating life
  - Return on capital
  - Maintenance costs, and
  - Tax and insurance.

- Operating costs:
  - Operator's wages
  - Fuel
  - Other consumables, including oil, etc.

Fixed costs

There are two principal approaches for the computation of fixed costs:

(a) Straight line depreciation

Cost of plant:	£20,000
Less scrap value:	£3,000
	£17,000

Assume a life of 4 years therefore annual cost

$$\frac{£17,000}{4} = £4,250$$

Assume a usage of 1500 hours per year:

Cost per hour $\frac{£4250}{1500} = £2.83$

(b) Writing down depreciation

Purchase price	£20,000	Depreciation
Initial writing down 60% during 1st year	£12,000	£12,000
	£8,000	
Second year writing down allowance @ 25%	£2,000	£2,000
	£6,000	
Third year writing down allowance @ 25%	£1,500	£1,500
	£4,500	
Fourth year writing down allowance @ 25%	£1,125	£1,125
Residual value	**£3,375**	
Depreciation		**£16,625**

Working life
Construction plant comes in a variety of types and usually operates in very extreme conditions; however, typical values are as follows:

Concrete mixers	6–7 years
Cranes	8–10 years
Dumper	3–4 years
Excavating plant	5–7 years
Hoists	5–7 years
Lorries	3–5 years

It is usual to assume that plant works for 1500 hours per year. These figures should be used in the calculation of the cost of plant.

Tax and insurance
A road fund licence is required for plant that uses public highways and generally is insured, for an annual premium, against theft.

Maintenance costs
As with any mechanical item, construction plant will require regular maintenance to work reliably and effectively. Maintenance can be allowed for as a percentage of initial costs, based on manufacturers' recommendations as well as historical records. Allowances vary from 10 to 30% depending on type.

Operating costs
Operator's wages
As mentioned earlier in the section, National Working rule 1C allows operatives with continuous skills or responsibilities to be eligible for additional payments. In addition, operators of plant may be eligible for an extra hour per day to fuel and maintain their plant.

Fuel

Typical fuel consumptions for items of plant are a matter of record, for example a rotary drum concrete mixer will use 1 litre of fuel per hour.

Other consumables

This item includes oil, lubrication, etc. and can be allowed for by including 20–25% of fuel costs for the item of plant.

Transportation and maintenance

The cost of transporting mechanical plant to and from site and the setting up and erection of items such as tower cranes have to be allowed for.

Output

The performance of construction plant will affect the cost and therefore it is essential that the output or production of a particular item is known. Once again these statistics are based on historical records. For example:

> An excavator fitted with a shovel and having a 0.5 cubic metre bucket will be able to load 12 cubic metres of excavated material into lorries per hour.
>
> A 14/10 (280 litre) concrete mixer will be able to produce an average of 5.0 cubic metres of mixed concrete per hour.

The output/performance of mechanical plant will be affected by a number of factors, for example:

- Site conditions, including time of year
- The degree to which plant can be incorporated due to restriction on site, site organisation, etc.
- Skill of the operators

and these factors should be taken into account when pricing.

Overheads

Overheads or establishment charges are very often difficult to define. For estimating purposes they include all items which are necessary to the efficient running of a building company and which are not normally charged to a specific contract. They include:

- Head office costs: stationery, stamps, telephone, lighting, heating, depreciation of office furniture, head office salaries, etc.
- Head office building: rent, rates, depreciation, repairs, insurances, etc.
- Finance costs: interest on bank overdrafts, bank charges, etc.

Overheads are usually related to turnover and the required percentage addition is included in the unit rate build-up. For example, if

the annual turnover of a company is £5 million and fixed costs are £250,000 then the required percentage is:

$$\frac{£250{,}000}{£5{,}000{,}000} \times 100 = 5\%$$

Profit

The amount of profit required by a building contractor will vary considerably depending on the size of the company, the turnover, market conditions, the contract value and the perceived risks involved. Historically, UK contractors have operated on profit margins of around 4%; however, in time of work shortages contractors frequently tender for work on much less of a profit margin to ensure turnover is maintained. Profit and overheads may be included either as a percentage addition to measured work, or in the preliminaries section or as a combination of both.

Preliminaries

As described in Section 3 the preliminaries section of the bills of quantities contains items that are of a general nature that may affect the contractor's tender. SMM7 requires that items referred to as Employers Requirements (A30–A37) and General Cost Items (A40–A44) shall be split into:

- *Fixed charges,* the cost of which is considered to be independent of duration, that is to say charges that are not proportional either to the quantity of the work or its duration, for example:
  - The Site/Existing buildings (A12)
  - The Contract/Subcontract (A20)
- *Time-related charges,* the cost of which is considered to be dependent on duration, that is to say charges that are directly proportional to either the quantity of the work or its duration (SMM7 – Section A D1 and D2), for example:
  - Employer's requirements (A30–A37)
  - Contractor's general cost items (A40–A44).

Although the preliminaries section of bills of quantities tends to contain many items, several of them are difficult to quantify

and price and for this reason it is usually only the major items such as accommodation, staffing and mechanical plant that are priced.

Preliminaries items

Employer's requirements – Facilities / Temporary Work / Services – A36

Example – Temporary Accommodation

The contractor shall provide suitable accommodation for the clerk of works, with a minimum floor area of 20 m^2 including desk, four chairs, filing cabinet and all necessary heating, lighting and cleaning.

Data

Contract period: 144 weeks	Transport to and from site: £150 per trip
Hire of hut: £70 per week	Hire of furniture and heaters, etc.: £30 per week

Fixed charges	**£**	**£**
Transport to and from site 2 trips × £150	300.00	
Erection 10 hours		
Dismantle 5 hours		
15 hours labourer @ £13.20	198.00	
Total of fixed charges	498.00	498.00
Time related charges		
Hire of hut 144 weeks @ £70 per week	10,080.00	
Furniture and heaters 144 weeks @ £30 per week	4320.00	
Energy costs for heating and lighting: 144 weeks @ £4.00 per week	576.00	
Cleaning – 2 hours per week × 144 weeks = 288 hours @ £13.20	3801.60	
Total of time related charges	18,777.60	18,777.60
Rate per week = £130.40		
Total (fixed and time related charges)		**£19,275.60**

Example – Site Fencing/Hoardings – A44
The contractor is to allow for enclosing all boundaries of the site. It shall be the contractor's responsibility to provide all necessary precautions, protection and security to safeguard the works using fences, hoardings, gates, etc. as considered necessary.

Data

Contract period: 144 weeks

Fencing	£	£
Fixed charges; erection and taking down		1,000.00
50 metres of solid fencing; 1.8 metres high @ £25/m	1,250.00	
1 pair gates and security	200.00	
	1,450.00	1,450.00
Maintenance and repairs		
1 hour per week labourer		1,900.80
144 week @ £13.20	Total	£4,350.80

Contractor's general cost items

Example – Mechanical plant – A43
The contractor shall provide all necessary plant, tools, vehicles, equipment and associated labour, etc. for the proper execution of the works.

Some items of plant are used by several trades; as such it is difficult to apportion the cost accurately to each trade and therefore the contractor has the opportunity to allow for them in the preliminaries section. Typical items included are tower cranes, hoists, etc.

Section D – Groundwork

Excavation and filling

An important point to remember with groundworks is that when ground is excavated it increases in bulk. This is due to the fact that broken-up ground has a greater volume than compacted ground; a point that has to be taken into consideration when transporting or disposing of excavated materials. Volumes in the bills of quantities

are measured net, without allowance for bulking; therefore the estimator must make an allowance. What is more, the degree to which excavated material bulk depends on the type of ground is as follows:

- Sand/gravel – 10%
- Clay – 25%
- Chalk – 33%
- Rock – 50%.

Other points to take into account are:

- The time of year when the excavation is to be carried out and whether the excavated materials and the bottoms of the excavation are likely to be flooded
- The nature of the ground will affect the type of earthwork support required and the labour constants for carrying out the works. Although earthwork support is required to be measured by SMM7 it is often regarded by contractors as a risk item and as such may not actually be used although it is priced in the bills of quantities
- The distance and availability of the nearest tip to which any excavated material has to be transported plus charges for tipping. Contaminated spoil must be dealt with and disposed of separately, higher tipping charges will be incurred for contaminated waste
- The sections of the works that are to be carried using hand digging or mechanical plant.

It is advisable to visit the site, study the results of test pits, soil samples, etc. and to check site access.

Hand excavation or machine

The majority of excavation is now done by machine; however, there may be instances where there is restricted access, or where there are small quantities involved, where hand excavation is used. The unit rate for hand excavation is generally more expensive than excavation by machine.

The following are average labour constants for hand excavation under normal conditions and in medium clay or heavy soil.

Item	**Hours/m³**
Excavate surfaces to reduce levels, maximum depth not exceeding 0.25 m	2.40
Excavate basements, maximum depth not exceeding 1.00 m	2.70
Excavate pits, maximum depth not exceeding 2.00 m deep	4.00
Excavate trenches, width not exceeding 0.30 m and not exceeding 2.00 m deep	3.30
Filling to make up levels, average thickness not exceeding 0.25 m	1.00
Disposal of excavated material wheeling not exceeding 50 m	1.00

For excavation other than medium clay the following multipliers should be applied to the above:

Loose sand	0.75
Stiff clay or rock	1.50
Soft rock	3.00

Example

Excavate surface to reduce levels, maximum depth not exceeding 0.25 m – cost per m³.

Assume 10 m³

24 hours labourer @ £13.20	£316.80
Add Profit and overhead 15%	£47.52
Cost per 10 m³	£364.32
Cost per m³	**£36.43**

Excavate trenches, width not exceeding 0.30 m and not exceeding 2.00 m deep – cost per m³

Assume 10 m³

33 hours labourer @ £13.20	£435.60
Add Profit and overheads 15%	£65.34
Cost per 10 m³	£500.94
Cost per m³	**£50.09**

Example – Mechanical excavation
Excavate trenches, width not exceeding 0.30 m not exceeding 2.00 m deep and starting at ground level – cost per m^3.

Data
Assume 10 m^3

The use of 0.25 m^3 bucket excavator @ £17.00 per hour including labour and consumables. The output for a 0.25 m^3 bucket excavator is 5 m^3 per hour.
Note: when using mechanical plant for excavation a banksman is required who is paid the labourer rate plus a small addition for extra responsibility.

Plant

2 hours excavator @ £17.00 per hour	34.00

Banksman

2 hours banksman @ £13.80	27.60
	61.60
Add	
Profit and overheads 15%	9.24
	70.84
Divide by 10 cost per m^3	**£7.08**

Example
Remove excavated materials from site – cost per m^3.

Assume 6 m^3

Tipping charge: £10.00 per load
Site to tip: 4 km round trip

6 m^3 lorry @ £25 per hour including driver and fuel

Bulking of excavated material 33%

$$\text{Load as dug } 6\,m^3 \div \frac{133}{100} = 4.5\,m^3.$$

Time per load (minutes)

Assume average speed of lorry 30 kph

1 km in 2 minutes	
4 km travel = 4 × 2 = 8 minutes	8.00
Time to load lorry	
Excavator bucket size: 0.33 m^3	
Cycle time per bucket: 0.5 minute	
$\frac{4.5}{0.33} \times 0.5 =$	6.82
Tipping time	4.00
Total operation time	**18.62**
18.62 minutes $\times \frac{£25}{60}$	7.75
Tipping charge	10.00
Cost per 4.5 m^3	17.75
Cost per m^3	3.94
Add Profit and overheads 15%	0.59
Cost per m^3	**£4.53**

Hardcore filling

Materials used as hardcore, such as brick, stone, etc., are bought either by volume or weight. If bought by volume an average of 20% should be added to the material to cover consolidation and packing. If bought by weight the following is the approximate amount required per cubic metre of compacted material:

- Brick ballast 1800 kg
- Stone ballast 2400 kg

On contracts where large volumes of hardcore are used it is usual to have the material tipped and then spread, levelled and compacted by mechanical means. However, below are typical labour constants for spreading and levelling hardcore by hand.

Item	**Labourer hours**
Hardcore in filling, average thickness not exceeding 0.25 m	1.5/m^3

Hardcore in filling, average thickness exceeding 0.25 m	1/m3
Surface treatments, compacting filling	0.2/m²
Surface treatments, trimming slopping surfaces	0.40/m²
Blinding surfaces with ash	0.15/m²

Example
Hardcore filling to make up levels average exceeding 0.25 m obtained off site – cost per m³.

A medium-sized mechanical shovel will spread and level approximately 15 m³ of hardcore per hour; it is then consolidated in 150 mm layers by a roller.

Data
Hardcore: £ 17.00 per m³ delivered to site
Mechanical shovel including driver and fuel: £20 per hour
Roller including fuel and driver: £18 per hour

1 m³ hardcore @ £17 per m³ delivered to site and tipped		17.00
Add 20% consolidation		3.40
Hardcore per m³		20.40
Laying and consolidating per hour/15m³		
Mechanical shovel	20.00	
Roller	18.00	
Labour	13.20	
	£51.20	
Per m³ £51.20 / 15 m³		3.41
		£23.81
Add Profit and overheads 15%		3.45
Cost per m³		**£27.26**

Underpinning

Underpinning is a technique used for existing structures that have suffered differential settlement, caused by proximity to trees, landfill or mine workings. It is carried out in small sections and rates for underpinning will vary considerably depending on the ground conditions, the condition of the existing building and the perceived risk. Underpinning existing structures is specialised work carried out in small quantities and the pricing of it is outside the realm of this pocket book.

Section E – Concrete work

Factors to be taken into account when pricing concrete work items are:

- Whether ready mixed concrete is to be used or if concrete is to be mixed on site. It is usually found that on site, where access is not a problem and where reasonably large quantities of concrete are required over a regular period, it is better and more economical to set up a batching plant to mix concrete. On a restricted site or where small quantities of concrete are required, it is probably better to use ready mixed concrete, as it will be the cheaper alternative
- Assuming that concrete is to be mixed on site, whether bagged or bulk cement is used. Bagged cement is delivered in 50 kg bags and has to be unloaded and stored in a dry location, whereas bulk cement is stored in a silo next to the mixer and is cheaper. Bagged cement also tends to be more wasteful
- If concrete is to be mixed on site, the best position for the mixing plant from the point of view of transporting the mixed concrete around the site
- The type and size of mixer to be used based on the output required
- The method of hoisting, placing and compacting the mixed concrete and whether a tower crane is to be used. Concrete may be transported by dumper or barrow, or be pumped
- The cost of any measures necessary to protect the poured concrete either due to excessive drying out in hot weather or damage from frost and low temperatures
- Concrete mixes are described by the volume or strength of the ingredients. For example (1:2:4), this refers to a mix that is, by volume:

  - 1 part Portland cement
  - 2 parts sand
  - 4 parts aggregate
- When water is added during the mixing process the materials combine together and reduce in volume by approximately 40%, although the percentage will depend on the mix of the concrete.

Quotations for sand and gravel can be either in tonnes or per cubic metre and they can be adjusted as follows:

Material	**Tonnes/m³**
Cement in bags	1.28
Cement in bulk	1.28–1.44
Sharp sand (fine aggregate)	1.60
Gravel (course aggregate)	1.40

On rare occasions concrete may have to be mixed by hand (a back-breaking and labour-intensive process); 4 hours/m³ labour should be allowed for hand mixing concrete on a wooden board.

Labour constants

The following constants are average labour constants for mechanical mixing, transporting up to 25 metres, placing and compacting:

	Hours/m³ labour
Plain in situ concrete	
Foundations not exceeding 300 mm thick poured on or against earth or hardcore	2.0
Ditto exceeding 300 mm thick ditto	1.5
Beds over 150 mm not exceeding 450 mm thick ditto	3.0

Reinforced in situ concrete

The following constants are average labour constants for mechanical mixing, transporting up to 25 metres, placing and compacting, packing around reinforcement and into formwork if necessary:

	Hours/m³ labour
Foundations not exceeding 300 mm thick poured on or against earth or hardcore	4.0

Beds over 150 mm not exceeding 450 mm thick ditto	4.5
Walls thickness 150–450 mm thick	6.0
Slabs thickness 150–450 mm thick	6.0
Columns	8.0

Example
Reinforced in situ concrete (1:2:4) in ground beams, thickness over 150, not exceeding 300 mm thick poured on earth – cost per m^3.

Data
Portland cement: £85.00 per tonne delivered to site
Sand: £10.00 per tonne delivered to site
Course aggregate: £9.00 per tonne delivered to site

Materials	£	£
1 m^3 cement = 1400 kg cement @ £85.00 per tonne	119.00	
Unloading 1 hour/tonne @ £13.20 per hour	18.48	
2 m^3 sand = 3200 kg @ £10.00 per tonne	32.00	
4 m^3 aggregate = 5600 kg @ £9.00 per tonne	50.40	
	219.88	
Add shrinkage 40%	87.95	
	307.83	
Add waste 2.5%	7.70	
Cost per 7 m^3	£315.53	
Cost per $m^3 \div 7$	£45.08	45.08

Mixing
Assume 200 litre mechanical fed mixer @ £20.00 per hour
Output 4 m^3 per hour – cost per m^3 5.00

Placing
4 hours labour @ £13.50 54.00
104.08
Add Profit and overheads 15% 15.61

Cost/m^3 **£119.69**

Mixer outputs in m^3 of concrete per hour
Hand loaded

100 litre	150 litre	175 litre	200 litre
1.2	1.8	2.1	2.4

Mechanical feed			
200 litre	300 litre	400 litre	500 litre
4.0	7.2	9.6	12.0

Reinforcement

It is usual for bar reinforcement to be delivered to site, cut to length and bent in accordance with the bending schedules. Steel fixers are entitled to additional payments in accordance with the Working Rule Agreement. Reinforcement is usually fixed by black tying wire. Five per cent should be added for binding wire and rolling margin. Allow four hours per tonne labour for unloading.

Labour constants

Labour cutting, bending and fixing reinforcement, per 50 kg:

- 10 mm diameter bars: 4.00 hours
- 10 mm–16 mm bars: 3.00 hours
- over 16 mm bars: 2.75 hours.

Fabric reinforcement

As an average 30 m^2 per hour should be allowed for cutting and fixing fabric reinforcement. An allowance of 12.5–15% for waste and laps should be made and the areas in the bills of quantities will be net areas and exclude laps between sheets.

Example
Fabric reinforcement (ref. A252) weighing 3.95 kg/m^2 with 150 mm minimum side and end laps – cost per m^2.
Data
Fabric reinforcement: A252 mesh reinforcement, weighing 45.5 kg size 4800 × 2400 mm – £55.00 (11.52 m^2)

Assume 23 m^2 (approximately two sheets)

Material	£
23 m² of fabric A252 reinforcement delivered to site	110.00
Add 15% laps and waste	16.50
	126.50
Labour 23/30 hours steelfixer @ £17.76	13.62
Cost per 23 m²	140.12
Add Profit and overheads 15%	20.02
	162.14
÷23 cost per m²	£7.05

Formwork

Formwork supports and forms the poured concrete until such time as the material has reached its design strength and then the formwork can be struck, or taken down. Traditionally, formwork, which has to bear considerable weight, was made from timber and erected by a carpenter, but latterly metal forms and props have become more commonplace as they can be used more often than the timber equivalent. Metal formwork is more expensive than using timber, but the time taken to erect is considerably less and uses less labour both skilled and unskilled. If timber formwork is used the amount to which the formwork can be reused has a considerable effect on the cost. Timber formwork to large areas such as floor slabs can be reused more often than formwork to smaller items such as columns or beams. Formwork can also be used to produce fair face or textured finishes to the face of the concrete, or if the finished structure is to be hidden from view it can be left 'as struck'.

A typical build-up for metal formwork would be as follows:

- Hire cost of metal formwork and props delivered to site for the required period
- Labour: fixing and stripping
- Any treatment to the face of the formwork
- A small allowance to cover end pieces, etc. which may have to be made from timber.

The following are average labour constants for fixing and stripping metal formwork and are in skilled hours per m^2:

	Fix	**Strip**
Horizontal soffit of slab over 200 mm not exceeding 300 mm thick	1.80	1.00
Sloping soffit not exceeding 15° of slab over 200 mm not exceeding 300 mm thick	2.50	1.20
Vertical walls	2.00	1.00

The following are average labour constants for fixing and stripping metal formwork and are in skilled hours per metre:

	Fix	**Strip**
Edges of suspended slabs height not exceeding 250 mm	0.20	0.10

Precast concrete units

Items such as lintels, sills, copings and plank floors come to site as precast units ready to be placed into position. To the prime cost of the precast units the additional costs of the following items should be considered:

- Unloading and stacking
- Hoisting and bedding in place
- Material for bedding
- Waste (damaged or broken units) – 2.5%
- Profit and overheads.

Allow 0.30 hour bricklayer and labourer per linear metre for hoisting and fixing a 225 × 150 mm lintel up to 3 metres above ground.

Section F – Masonry

Mortar

In addition to the bricks or blocks the cost of the mortar also has to be calculated. Mortar comes in a variety of mixes depending on location and type of bricks or blocks being used; mortar is usually made from cement and sand. Generally, the mortar should be weaker than the bricks or blocks, so if pressure is placed on a brick, it is the mortar that should fail without causing the brickwork to

crack. SMM7 requires that the type of pointing should be stated and this is particularly relevant to facing brickwork; pointed brickwork requires additional labour and therefore cost. Common pointing types are weather struck (or struck), flush and bucket handle joints.

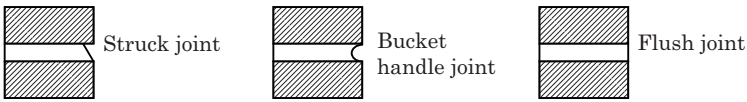


Figure 5.1

Example

Cement mortar (1:3).

Materials	£	£
1 m³ cement = 1400 kg cement @ £85.00 per tonne	119.00	
Unloading 1 hour/tonne @ £13.20 per hour	18.48	
3 m³ sand = 4800 kg @ £10.00 per tonne	48.00	
	185.48	
Add shrinkage 25%	46.37	
	231.85	
Add waste 5%	11.59	
Cost per 4 m³	£243.44	
Cost per m³ ÷ 4	£60.86	60.86

Mixing

Assume 100 litre mixer @ £16.00 per hour	
Output 4 m³ per hour – cost per m³	4.00
Cost per m³	**£64.86**

For small quantities of mortar mixed by hand on a board, allow 4 hours/m³ labour.

The amount mortar required per m² of half brick wall is 0.03 m³.

Bricks

The usual size for a clay brick is 215×102.5×65 mm with a 10 mm mortar joint making the nominal size 225×112.5×75 mm. A 112.5 mm

thick wall is referred to as a half brick wall and there are 60 bricks per m^2 in a half brick wall. At one time bricks were delivered to the site loose in a lorry and tipped, causing a great deal of waste, now bricks are packed on pallets in polythene and unloaded by mechanical hoist thereby cutting down the amount of wastage and reducing the need for stacking. The amount of wastage, however, will vary considerably and depend on the nature and complexity of the work; allow between 7.5 and 12.5% for cutting and waste.

For facework, the number of bricks per m^2 will vary according to the specified brick bond as follows:

Stretcher bond	60
Header bond	120
English bond	90
Flemish bond	80

Labour constants

The productivity of labour will depend again upon the nature of the work plus the organisation of the gang. A bricklaying gang is made up from bricklayers and labourers. It is the responsibility of the labourers to keep the bricklayers supplied with bricks and mortar so that they are able to maximise their output without having to keep breaking off to replenish their materials. It is usual to have two bricklayers to one labourer.

Example
Walls one brick thick in common bricks in cement mortar (1:3) – cost per m^2.

Data
Common bricks £220.00 per thousand delivered to site

Assume 10 m^2

Materials	£	£
1200 common bricks @ £220.00 per thousand	264.00	
Add Waste 7.5%	19.80	
Mortar		
$10\,m^2 \times 0.06 = 0.6\,m^3$ @ £64.86	38.92	

Add Waste 5%	1.95	
	£324.67	324.67

Labour
Based on gang rate:

2 bricklayers and 1 labourer

2 × £17.76 =	£35.52
	£13.20
Hourly rate per gang	£48.72

1 bricklayer can lay 60 bricks per hour, therefore
output = 120 bricks per gang hour = 2 m^2 = £24.36/m^2

10 m^2 @ £24.36/m^2	243.60
Cost per 10 m^2	568.27
Add Profit and overheads 15%	85.24
	653.51
÷10 cost per m^2	**£65.35**

Example
Walls half brick thick in Oast Russett facings vertical in stretcher bond in cement mortar (1:3) with weather struck joint one side – cost per m^2.

Data
Oast Russett facings: £820.00 per 1000 delivered to site

Assume 10 m^2

Materials	£	£
Facings		
600 facings @ £820.00 per 1000	492.00	
Add Waste 7.5%	36.90	
Mortar		
10 m^2 × 0.03 = 0.3 m^3 @ £64.86/m^3	19.46	
Add Waste 5%	0.97	
	£549.33	£549.33

Labour
2 bricklayers and 1 labourer

2 × £17.76 =	£35.52
	£13.20
Hourly rate per gang	£48.72

1 bricklayer can lay 60 bricks per hour, therefore
output = 120 bricks per gang hour = 2 m² = £24.36/m²

10 m² @ £24.36/m²	243.60
Cost per 10 m²	792.93
Cost per m²	79.29
Add Profit and overheads 15%	11.89
Cost per m²	**£91.18**

Sundry labour constants hours per m²

Item	**Bricklayer**	**Labourer**
Forming cavity 50 mm wide in hollow walls including building in wall ties	0.10	0.05
Damp-proof course not exceeding 225 mm wide	0.20	0.10

Sundry labour constants hours per m²

Item		
Closing cavity 50 mm wide vertical with brickwork	0.35	0.18
Bonding half brick wall to existing	1.10	0.55
Bedding and pointing frames	0.05	0.025

Sundry labour constants hours per m²

Item		
Holes for pipes not exceeding 55 mm diameter in half brick wall	0.25	0.15
Ditto over 55 not exceeding 110 mm diameter in half brick wall.	0.30	0.25
Ditto over 110 mm diameter in half brick wall	0.55	0.35

Extra over

Some brick facework items are required to be described by SMM7 as extra over the common brickwork to which it applies and the estimator must calculate the extra cost of the labour and material involved. A detailed explanation of extra over is included in Section 3.

Example
One layer pitch polymer damp-proof course not exceeding 225 mm wide horizontal with 150 mm laps bedded in gauged mortar (1:1:6) – cost per m^2.

Data
Pitch polymer dpc 112.5 mm wide, £11 per 20 m delivered to site = £4.90 m^2

Assume 10 m^2

Material		£
10 m^2 pitch polymer dpc @ £4.90/m^2		49.00
Add 5% Waste and laps		2.45
Labour		
0.20 hours bricklayer @ £17.76	£3.55	
0.10 hours labourer @ £13.20	£1.32	
	£4.87 per m^2	
10 m^2 @ £4.87 per m^2		48.70
		100.15
Add Profit and overheads 15%		15.02
Cost per 10 m^2		£115.17
÷10 cost per m^2		**£11.52**

Blockwork

Blocks are heavier and larger than bricks; the usual size is 440 mm × 215 mm × 100 mm thick, excluding the mortar joint. There are three main types of block: aerated, dense and hollow clay. Like bricks, blocks are delivered to site stacked on pallets for easy unloading and use. Larger than bricks, blocks need more time for transporting around the site and hoisting in place. Allow 5% waste.

Example
Walls in lightweight concrete blocks (3.5 kN) vertical in gauge mortar (1:1:6) – Cost per m^2.

Assume 10 m^2

Data
440 × 215 × 100 mm aerated concrete blocks: £9.50 per m^2 delivered to site

Gauge mortar: hydrated lime 0.6 tonnes/m^3, £25.00 per tonne

Gauge mortar (1:1:6)

Materials	**£**	**£**
1 m^3 cement = 1400 kg cement @ £85.00 per tonne	119.00	
Unloading 1 hour/tonne @ £13.20 per hour	18.48	
1 m^3 hydrated lime = 600 kg @ £25.00 per tonne	15.00	
Unloading 1 hour/tonne @ £13.20 per hour	7.92	
6 m^3 sand = 9600 kg @ £10.00 per tonne	96.00	
	256.40	
Add Shrinkage 25%	64.10	
	320.50	
Add Waste 5%	16.03	
Cost per 8m^3	£336.53	
Cost per m^3 ÷ 8	£42.07	42.07
Mixing		
Assume 100 litre mixer @ £16.00 per hour		
Output 4 m^3 per hour – cost per m^3		4.00
Cost per m^3		**£46.07**
Blocks		
10 m^2 blockwork @ £9.50/m^2	95.00	
Waste 10%	9.50	
Mortar 0.01 m^3 per m^2 = 0.1 m^3 @ £46.07	4.61	
Add Waste 5%	0.23	
	109.34	
Labour		
0.50/m^2 per gang per m^2 = 5 gang hours @ £48.72	243.60	
	352.94	
Add Profit and overheads 15%	52.94	
Cost per 10 m^2	405.88	
Cost per m^2	**£40.58**	

Roofing

Asphalt work

Asphalt is manufactured in 25 kg blocks and then heated to melting point and applied on site. The following is the approximate covering capacity of 1000 kg of asphalt:

first 12 mm thickness	35 square metres
additional 3 mm thickness	150 square metres

For example, the following is the weight of asphalt required per m^2 19 mm thick:

$$\text{first 12 mm} = \frac{1000\,\text{kg}}{35 \text{ square metres}} = 28.57\,\text{kg}$$

$$\text{next 6 mm} = \frac{1000}{150 \text{ square metres}} \times \frac{7\,\text{mm}}{3\,\text{mm}} = 15.56\,\text{kg}$$

$$\underline{44.13\,\text{kg}}$$

Allow 2.5% waste

Asphalt is always applied on sheathing felt and this has to be included in the calculation. The finished surface must be protected against deterioration due to exposure to solar radiation; this is usually in the form of solar reflecting paint in the case of asphalt.

Labour constants – craftsman and labourer

19 mm two coat asphalt roofing	0.15 per m^2
Skirtings, fascias and aprons 150–225 mm girth	0.40 per m
Internal angle fillet	0.15 per m
Turning into groove	0.05 per m

Felt roofing

This is the most common form of material for covering flat roofs. Traditionally made from bitumen, there are now more high tech high performance membranes available, based on polyester or similar material, that do not suffer from the main disadvantage of traditional materials, namely deterioration in 15–20 years. In the case of traditional bituminous felts, the material is supplied in rolls in a variety of weights and is laid usually in two or three layers. Felt is measured net but laid with side and end laps of 150 mm and these must be taken into account in the calculation. The finished roofing must be protected against solar radiation, the most common approach being with the application of chippings. Allow 15% for laps and waste.

Pitched roof coverings

The most common form of sloping roof coverings are slates and tiles; they are both fixed on softwood battens with nails which are in turn laid on underfelt. In Scotland, in addition, sarking, treated sawn softwood boarding, is fixed directly to the rafters prior to the application of underfelt and battens. This practice is probably due to the harsher climate experienced north of the border. Roof coverings are now generally delivered to site on pallets pre-packed (see Figure 5.2) and usually ordered by the thousand.

Because the size of the slate or tile and the method of fixing affect the number of units required it is necessary to calculate the number of slates or tiles per m^2, although this type of information is readily available in manufacturers' literature, which can be accessed online.

Slate roofing

Slates come in a variety of sizes with two nail holes and can be either head nailed or centre nailed. Occasionally, roofers have to form the

Figure 5.2 Unloading roofing tiles

fixing holes in slates on site using a special tool known as a zax. Head nailing tends to give better protection from the weather for the nails. A special shorter tile is used for the undereaves course; an undercloak course is required at verges in order to divert water back onto the roof.

Therefore, to calculate the number of centre nail slate sizes, 450 mm × 300 mm, laid with 100 mm lap, apply the following:

$$\frac{\text{length of slate} - \text{lap}}{2} \times \text{width of slate}$$

$$\frac{0.450 - 0.100}{2} \times 0.300 = 0.0525$$

$$\frac{1\,\text{m}^2}{0.0525} = 19.05 \text{ say } 19 \text{ slates per m}^2$$

The number of head nailed slates per square metre is calculated using the following:

$$\frac{\text{length of slate} - \text{lap} - 25\,\text{mm}}{2} \times \text{width of slate}$$

Note: non-ferrous nails such as aluminium or copper should be used for fixing as this reduces nail fatigue.

Slates for roofing come in a variety of sizes, varying from 650 × 400 mm to 250 × 150 mm, and very often are laid with diminishing courses towards the eaves. For this reason the number of slates required have to be carefully calculated once the details are known.

Synthetic slate

Synthetic slates closely resemble their natural counterparts, but are much less expensive and are lighter. The most common size is 600 mm × 300 mm. They are fixed as for centre nailed natural slates, with a clip being used on the bottom edge to prevent lifting, with copper nails. Also available is a synthetic slate made from a mixture of resin and crushed natural slate. These are single lap interlocking slates and fixed accordingly – see single lap tiling below.

Tile roofing

Plain tiles

Like slates, plain tiles are known as double lap coverings to prevent water from penetrating the coverings from run-off or capillary action.

They are referred to as double lap because for part of their area the slate or tile laps two others in the course below. The most common size for a plain tile is 265 mm × 165 mm.

Interlocking tiles
All interlocking tiles are single lap, which means that there is only one layer of tiles on the roof, apart from the overlaps. Interlocking tiles are not, with the exception of the perimeter tiles, nailed.

Battens
To calculate the linear quantity of batten per square metre, divide the gauge of the tiles into 1 m (see Figure 5.3):

Therefore for 100 mm gauge:

$$\frac{1000}{100} \times 1\,\text{m} = 10\,\text{m per m}^2\,\text{of roof}$$

and for 345 mm gauge:

$$\frac{1000}{345} \times 1\,\text{m} = 2.9\,\text{m per m}^2\,\text{of roof}$$

There are a number of free calculators available on manufacturers' websites that calculate the quantity of tiles needed.

Nails for tiling
Approximate number of 44 mm nails per kilogram:

Copper: 290
Composition: 280

Note: tiles are usually nailed every fourth course.

Nails for battens
Approximate number of nails per kilogram:

50 mm × 10 gauge: 260
63 mm × 10 gauge: 220

Allow 5% waste on nails.

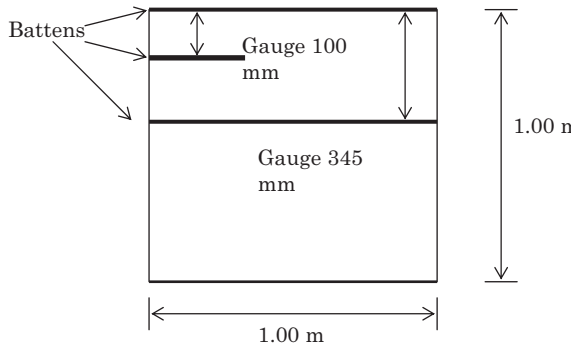


Figure 5.3

Labour constants and materials for plain tiling per m²

Lap of tile	Number of tiles	Tile nails (kg)	Battens (Lin m)	Batten nails (kg)	Labour tiler and labourer
60	63	0.09	10.08	0.11	0.67
75	68	0.10	10.88	0.12	0.73
90	74	0.11	11.84	0.13	0.79
100	78	0.12	12.48	0.14	0.83

Fixing tile battens per 100 m 2.50 hours roofer/1.25 hours labourer, including unloading.

Example
Roof coverings 265 × 165 mm Marley Eternit Hawkins Staffordshire Blue plain clay roofing tiles with 75 mm head lap 40° pitch each tile nailed with 2no 44 mm composition nails to 38 × 25 mm treated sawn softwood battens to one layer of felt to BS Type 1F with 100 mm minimum laps fixed with galvanized clout nails – cost per m².

Materials delivered to site

Hawkins Staffs Blue tiles	£640.00 per 1000 delivered to site and unloaded
Underfelt	£12.00 per 15 m × 1 m roll
Nails for tiles	£2.00 per kg
Battens for tiles	£3.00 per 10 m
Nails for battens	£1.00 per kg

Assume 10 m²

Materials	£	£
Tiles (from Marley website) 60 per m^2		
680 Hawkins Staffs Blue tiles @ £640 per 1000	435.20	
Add Waste 10%	43.52	
Battens		
100 m batten (see calculation above) @ £3.00 per 10 m	30.00	
Add Waste 10%	3.00	
Nails for battens		
1.2 kg @ £1.00 per kg	1.20	
Add Waste 5%	0.06	
Nails for tiles		
680 tiles × 2 = 1360 nails @ 280/kg = kg		
4.86 kg nails @ £2.00	9.72	
Add Waste 5%	0.49	
Underfelt		
15 × 1 m roll = 15 m^2		
Cost per 10 m^2 = $\frac{10.00}{15.00} \times$ £12.00 =	8.00	
Add Laps 10%	0.80	
Add Waste 5%	0.44	
		532.43
Labour		
Tiles		
7.30 hours roofer and labourer £17.76 £13.20 @ £30.96		226.01
Tile battens		
2.5 hours tiler	17.76	44.40
1.25 hours labourer	13.20	16.50
		£819.34
Add Profit and overheads 15%		£122.90
		£942.24
÷10 – cost/m^2		£94.22

Example
Roof coverings 420 × 330 mm Marley Eternit Malvern concrete interlocking tiles with 75 mm head lap 40° pitch with 38 × 25 mm treated sawn softwood battens fixed with clips including one layer of felt to BS Type 1F with 100 mm minimum laps fixed with galvanized clout nails – cost per m^2.

Single lap tiles laid to 345 mm gauge as manufacturer's recommendations, therefore batten required is 2.90 m per m^2

Interlocking tiles are single lap tiles fixed with nails or clips. They are generally made from concrete, with an applied finish, and are heavier than slate or clay tiles, therefore should be used with caution when used as a replacement to lighter more traditional coverings on an existing roof. Their extra weight is a disadvantage from the site handling point of view; however, they have greater coverage than slate or tiles and can be fixed more quickly, there being 9.8 interlocking tiles per m^2 compared with 60 for double lap clay tiles; these factors combine to provide a cheaper alternative and are popular with speculative house builders.

Materials delivered to site

Malvern concrete interlocking tiles	£450.00 per 1000
Underfelt	£12.00 per 15 m × 1 m roll
Nails for tiles	£2.00 per kg
Battens	£3.00 per 10 m
Nails for battens	£1.00 per kg

Assume 10 m^2	£	£
Tiles (from Marley website) 9.8 per m^2		
98 Malvern tiles @ £450 per 1000	44.10	
Add Waste 10%	4.41	
Battens		
29 m batten @ £3.00/10 m	8.70	
Add Waste 10%	0.87	
Nails for battens		
0.40 kg @ £1.00 per kg	0.40	
Add Waste 5%	0.02	

Nails for tiles – nailed every 4th course

$\frac{98}{4}$ = 25 nails say 30 to include waste	0.20	58.70	
Underfelt			
15 × 1 m roll = 15 m²			
Cost per 10 m² = $\frac{10.00}{15.00}$ × £12.00 =		8.00	
Add Laps 10%		0.80	
Add Waste 5%		0.44	67.94

Labour
Tiler and labourer can lay 3.5 m² of interlocking tiles per hour

Tiles			
2.86 hours tiler and labourer	£17.76		
	£13.20	30.96	80.50
Tile battens			
0.30 hours tiler	17.76		5.33
0.15 hours labourer	13.20		1.98
			£155.75
Add Profit and overheads 15%			£23.36
			£179.11
÷10 – cost/m²			£17.91

Woodwork

There are two general groups of wood: hardwood and softwood, which are defined by a number of characteristics. Hardwood is timber produced from broad leaved trees and softwood from coniferous trees. Structural timbers, such as floor and roof joists, are stress graded according to the proportion of defects. For softwood, the gradings are divided into GS (general structural) and SS (special structural). Timber is further defined by species, e.g. Scots pine. Hardwoods have only one grading. Sizes for timber sections are stated in two ways: ex and finished. Unplanned or sawn timber is referred to as 'ex'; once planed it becomes wrot timber and is referred to as finished.

50 × 25 mm ex softwood batten
46 × 21 mm finished softwood batten

the finishing process planes 2 mm from each face. Softwood is sold by the linear, square and cubic metre.

For measurement purposes SMM7 divides timber into the following:

- Carcassing/carpentry: structural/timber framing such as roof and floor joists, roof trusses, etc. – SMM7 Section G. Timber in this category is generally sawn softwood, treated to protect it against attack by decay and rot. Most modern roofs are constructed from roof trusses or trussed rafters, which are prefabricated and delivered to site ready for lifting into position by crane. The timbers are typically 80 × 40 mm and are held together with special metal plates. Roof trusses have several advantages over traditional in situ roof construction, namely:
  - Speed
  - Skilled labour is not required
  - Spans of up to 12 m can be accommodated
  - Cost savings compared to traditional construction.

  Once hoisted into position it is necessary to secure the roof trusses with softwood binders and galvanized metal straps to prevent distortion.
- First fixings: gutter boards and fascia, generally softwood with wrot faces – SMM7 Section G
- Unframed isolated trims/sundries (second fixings): skirtings, architraves, either softwood or hardwood with a wrot finish – SMM7, Section P
- Composite items: doors, windows and staircases that are manufactured and assembled off site can be hardwood or softwood – SMM7, Section L
- Ironmongery – SMM7, Section P.

Carcassing

Sundry labour constants

Item	**Hours/m – carpenter**
Plates, sleepers	0.1
Partitions	0.15
Floor joists	0.18
Upper floor joists	0.20
Strutting between 200 mm joists	0.35

Example
100 × 75 mm sawn softwood treated plate – cost per m.

Data
Assume 10 linear metres

100 × 75 mm sawn softwood treated plate – £5.00/m delivered to site and unloaded

Materials

10 m 100 × 75 mm sawn softwood @ £5.00/m	£50.00
Add Waste 7%	£3.50
	£53.50

Labour
0.1 hours carpenter per 1 m

1 hour carpenter @ £17.76	£17.76
	£71.26
Add Profit and overheads 15%	£10.69
Cost per 10 m	£81.95
÷10 cost per m	£8.20

First fixings

Sundry labour constants

Item	Hours/m – carpenter
Gutter boarding	1.00
19 mm fascia	1.00
Barge board	0.40

Example
18 mm flooring grade chipboard exceeding 300 mm wide – cost per m^2.

Data
£13.30 per 2400 × 600 mm sheet delivered to site and unloaded

Assume 10 m^2

Materials
10 m^2 18 mm chipboard flooring @ £13.30 per 1.44 m^2 sheet

$$\frac{10.00}{1.44} \times £13.30 = £92.36$$

Nails 0.1 kg/m^2 1 kg @ £2.00/kg	£2.00
	£94.36
Add Waste 10%	£9.44
	£103.80

Labour
0.50 hours/m^2 – carpenter
5 hours @ £17.76 £88.80
£192.60
Add Profit and overheads 15% £28.89

Cost per 10 m^2 £221.49
÷10 cost per m £22.15

Unframed second fixings
Sundry labour constants

Item	**Hours/m – carpenter/joiner**
Architraves (19 × 50 mm)	0.10
Skirtings (19 × 75 mm)	0.15
Window boards	0.30
Allow 0.05 kg nails per m	

Example
25 × 50 mm chamfered wrot softwood architrave – cost per m.

Data
25 × 50 mm chamfered architrave delivered to site – £3.00/m

63 mm oval nails delivered to site – £2.00/kg

Assume 10 m

Materials
10 m 25 × 50 mm architrave @ £3.00/m £30.00
Nails 0.5 kg nails @ £2.00/kg £1.00
£31.00
Add Waste 7% £2.17
£33.17

Labour
1 hour carpenter/joiner @ £17.76 £17.76
£50.93
Add Profit and overheads 15% £7.64
Cost per 10 m £58.57
Divide by 10 cost per m £5.86

Composite items

Sundry labour constants

Doors – allowances include fixing and hanging on standard hinges

Item	**Hours – joiner each**
Standard door	1.40
Solid core doors	2.00
Door lining set 1050 × 1200 mm	3.00
Standard casement	1.10
Staircases – straight flight	5.00

Example
40 × 762 × 1981 John Carr flush external door (ref. 362001) – £50.90 delivered to site.

Materials	
40 × 762 × 1981 external door	£50.90
Labour	
1.40 hours @ £17.76	£24.86
	£75.76
Add Profit and overheads 15%	£11.36
Cost per door – supplied and fixed	£87.12

Finishes

In Situ Finishes
Most modern in situ plasterwork is carried out in lightweight gypsum plaster, known by its trade names Carlite or Thistle although Carlite has now been merged into the Thistle brand. It is delivered to site in 25 kg bags on pallets for ease of unloading. These retarded hemihydrate plasters are premixed and contain lightweight aggregate and gypsum plaster and require only the addition of water to make them ready for use. Thistle plasters come in a variety of types depending on where they are to be used and the background to which the plaster is applied. The finish grades are used neat, while the undercoat grades are usually mixed with sand. According to SMM7, work over 300 mm wide is measured in square metres while work under 300 mm wide is measured in linear metres.

It is very important that the correct type of plaster is used; the five types (four undercoats and one topcoat) available are as follows.

Undercoats

Browning plaster is an undercoat plaster for moderate suction solid backgrounds that have a good mechanical key, such as brickwork or blockwork. A slow setting variety is available that gives greater time for application.
Bonding plaster is an undercoat plaster for low suction backgrounds, for example concrete or plasterboard or surfaces sealed with pva (a universal water-based adhesive).
Toughcoat is an undercoat plaster for solid backgrounds of high suction with an adequate mechanical key.
Hardwall is an undercoat plaster that provides a much harder and more durable finish and is also quick drying.

Finishing coats

Finishing plaster is an ideal choice over sand and cement bases and can be used on still damp backgrounds.
Board finishing plaster is a one coat plaster for skim coats to plasterboard.
Multi-finish is used where both undercoat and skim coat are needed on one job. Suitable for all suction backgrounds and ideal for amateur plasterers.

In addition, the following is available:
Universal one coat is a one coat plaster for a variety of backgrounds, suitable for application by hand or machine.

The White Book published by British Gypsum is a good source of reference for all types of plaster finishes. It can be viewed at the following web page:
http://www.british-gypsum.bpb.co.uk/literature/white_book.aspx

What is used in practice?

- For plasterboard ceilings: board finish plaster
- For blockwork walls: an 11 mm thick undercoat of browning plaster followed by 2 mm skim coat of finishing plaster. The undercoat is lightly scratched to form a key
- Metal lathing: two undercoats are often required followed by a finishing coat
- Galvanised or stainless steel angle beads are used to form external angles in in situ plaster

- In situations where damp walls are plastered following the installation of an injection dpc, most gypsum plasters are not suitable as they absorb water and fail.

Constants

Approximate coverage per tonne m^2	
11 mm browning plaster	135–155
11 mm tough coat plaster	135–150
11 mm hardwall plaster	115–130
2 mm board finishing plaster	410–430
2 mm finishing plaster	410–430
13 mm universal one coat	85–95

Labour constants

Item	**Plaster and labourer/10 m^2**
Base coat	2 hours
Finishing coat	2.5 hours
For ceilings increase by 25%	

Sand/cement screeds

The function of a floor screed is to provide a smooth and even surface for finishes such as tiling and is usually a mixture of cement and course sand, typically in the ratio of 1:3. It is usually a dry mix with the minimum of water added, and has a thickness of between 38 and 50 mm and is laid on top of the structural floor slab.

Board finishes

Plasterboard is available in a variety of thicknesses the most common being 9.5 mm and 12 mm and is fixed to either metal or timber studs with screws. Standard sheets are 900×1800 mm and 1200×2400 mm. It is also possible to fix plasterboard to blockwork with plaster dabs. Boards can either be pre-finished and require no further work or finished with a skim coat of plaster. Boards with tapered edges and foil backing are also available.

Floor and wall tiling

Most wall tiles are 100×100 mm with spacers to ensure ease of fixing. Tiles require adhesive for fixing and grout for the joints. Thickness can vary and floor tiles can be found in a wider variety of sizes.

Example
13 mm thick two coat plaster comprising 11 mm thick Thistle bonding coat and 2 mm thick Thistle multi-finish plaster on block walls internally with steel trowel finish – cost per m^2.
Assume 10 m^2

Data
Bonding plaster – £347.00 per tonne delivered to site on pallet and unloaded
Multi-finish plaster – £210.00 per tonne delivered to site on pallet and unloaded

Materials
Approximate coverage of bonding plaster 11 mm thick – 100 m^2/tonne
Approximate coverage of multi-finish plaster 2 mm thick – 420 m^2/tonne

Bonding plaster

$$\frac{10.00}{100.00} \times £347.00 = £34.70$$

Finishing plaster

$$\frac{10.00}{420.00} \times £210.00 = £5.00$$

£39.70
Add Waste 10% £3.97
£43.67

Labour
Plasterer and labourer

Base coat	2.00 hours		
Finishing coat	2.50 hours		
	4.50 hours@	£17.76	
		£13.20	
		£30.96	£139.32
			£182.99
Add Profit and overheads 15%			£27.45
Cost per 10 m^2			£210.44
÷10 cost per m^2			£21.04

Example
50 mm thick cement and sand (1:4) level screeded bed to concrete base – cost per m^2.

Data
Portland cement: £85.00 per tonne delivered to site
Sand: £10.00 per tonne delivered to site

Materials	£
1 m³ cement = 1400 kg cement @ £85.00 per tonne	119.00
Unloading 1 hour/tonne @ £13.20	18.48
4 m³ sand = 6400 kg @ £10.00 per tonne	64.00
	201.48
Add shrinkage 25%	50.37
Cost per 5 m³	251.85
Cost per m³ ÷ 5	50.37

Mixing

Assume 200 litre mechanical fed mixer @ £20.00		
per hour; output 4 m³ per hour – cost per m³		5.00
Cost per m³		55.37
Cost per m² – 50 mm thick		2.52

Placing

0.30 craftsman and labourer per m²		
0.30 hours @	£17.76	
	£13.20	
	£30.96	9.29
		11.81
Add Profit and overheads 15%		1.77
Cost per m²		£13.58

Example
100 × 100 mm × 7 mm thick white rustic wall tiles exceeding 300 mm wide fixed to plaster with tile adhesive including grouting joints as work proceeds – cost per m².

Data
White rustic wall tiles – £14.97 per pack (68 tiles)
Unibond wall tile adhesive and grout – £15.00 per 10 litres

5 m² per 10 litres 1 mm thick adhesive including grout
Assume 1 m²

Materials	£
Tiles	
Coverage 95 tiles per m²	

95 tiles @ £14.97 per 68 tiles

95	
68 @ £14.97	20.91
Add waste 10%	2.09
Adhesive and grout	
2 litres @ £15.00 per 10 litres	3.00
Add Waste 5%	0.15
	26.15
Labour	
0.6 hour per m^2 @ £17.76	10.66
	36.81
Add Profit and overheads 15%	1.60
Cost per m^2	£38.41

Glazing

There are a number of different types of glass in a range of tints and patterns as follows.

Ordinary sheet glass

Relatively cheap, the manufacturing process produces a glass with a certain amount of distortion and because of this tends to be used for garden sheds and greenhouses.

Float glass (plate)

A superior type of glazing available in a variety of thicknesses from 3 mm. More expensive than sheet glass.

Patterned (obscure glass)

Made from flat glass with a design rolled onto one side, used in bathrooms and similar locations.

Other commonly used types of glazing are:

- Energy efficient glass
- Self-cleaning glass
- Toughened (safety glass)
- Laminated glass
- Wired glass.

Waste can be substantial and should be allowed for at the rate of 10% for cutting glass to size and an additional 10% for fixing. Glass is fixed into place with a combination of glazing compound and glazing beads for which wastage should be allowed at 5%. Allow 0.20 kg of glazing compound per metre of bedding.

Example
3 mm clear float glass and glazing to wood with glazing compound in panes over 0.15 not exceeding 4.00 m^2 – cost per m^2.

Data

Glass cut to size and delivered to site	£15.00/m^2
Glazing compound	£0.50/kg

Assume 10 m^2

Materials	£	£
10 m^2 3 mm clear float glass @ £15.00	150.00	
Add Waste 10%	15.00	
40 m of compound = 8 kg compound @ £0.50	4.00	
Waste on compound 5%	0.20	
	£169.20	169.20
Labour		
10 m^2 glass @ 15 m^2 per hour		
0.67 hours glazier @ £17.76		11.90
		171.10
Add Profit and overheads 15%		25.67
Cost per 10 m^2		196.77
÷10 cost per m^2		£19.68

Plumbing

A large section covering a wide range of items of a specialist nature; only a limited number of items have been included here.

Description	**Hours – craftsman**
Rainwater installations	
110 mm plastic rainwater pipes	0.50 per 3 m length
65 mm plastic rainwater pipes	0.50 per 3 m length
Extra over for fittings	0.10 each

Waste installations	
32 mm plastic waste	0.30 per 3 m length
110 mm plastic soil pipe	0.35 per 3 m length
Extra over for fittings	0.15 each
Hot and cold water installations	
15 mm light gauge copper tube with capillary joints fixed with pipe clips @ 1 m centres	0.20 per metre
28 mm ditto	0.25 per metre
Extra over for fittings	0.40 each
22 mm stop-valve	0.80 each
Sanitary fittings	
Lavatory basin including waste and pair taps	2.50 per unit
Bath including waste and pair taps	2.80 per unit
Close coupled WC	2.25 per unit
Shower tray with waste, trap, mixer and shower fitting	6.00 per unit

Decoration

Decoration or, more particularly, painting is one of the building trades that has changed radically over the last 30–40 years, with the introduction of painting systems rather than oil-based paints. In its widest sense, decoration includes painting on a variety of surfaces and paper hanging.

The traditional approach to painting wood is KPS 3 oils or knot, prime, stop and apply two undercoats and one gloss coat to external surfaces and one undercoat and one gloss coat to internal surfaces. Knotting is a shellac/methylated spirit-based sealer that is applied to knots in the wood, thereby preventing the sap in the knot from seeping out and bubbling through the paint finish blistering the surface; prime is a coat of primer applied to the bare wood; and stopping was traditionally linseed oil putty applied to all small holes and cracks in the wood. It is a popular belief that paint fills small holes and cracks, but this is not the case.

All these products are still available today but paints have moved away from being oil based to solvent based or water based and wood filler is used in preference to putty as it does not dry out and crack so easily.

In practice, it is now usual to apply a coat of primer or combined primer/undercoat followed by only one gloss coat whether internal or external, except in very exposed or extreme conditions.

Increasingly in some locations, e.g. public staircases, etc., paint is applied by spraying. Portaflek and Multiflek finishes were very popular in the 1970s, but now they have been superseded by compliant water-based versions: Aquaflek and Aquatone. The advantage of spray application is that it is considerably quicker than using a brush or roller; the disadvantages are that a considerable amount of time is required for masking, protection and cleaning.

When pricing painting and decorating it is important to study the specification or preambles to the section as this will contain information relating to the preparation work that is expected. More than most trades this can be extensive and includes washing down, burning off existing paint and stripping existing paper, etc.

Two peculiarities of estimating painting and decorating are brush money, an allowance given to cover the cost of new brushes, rollers, etc., and an allowance to cover cleaning overalls, etc. Both of these allowances are covered in the National Working Rule Agreement mentioned previously in this chapter.

Wallpaper

Wallpaper is specified in 'pieces', which is more commonly called a roll, and the standard UK roll or piece is 520 mm wide × 10.5 m long. Some European papers are a little narrower and many American rolls are roughly twice as wide. The amount of paper required will depend on the pattern, the size of the room and the number of openings, etc. Once again surfaces may need to be prepared, for example new plasterboard will require at least two coats of dry wall primer to adjust the suction, whereas old plastered walls can become very dry and powdery, often referred to as 'blown', and will need a coat of plaster sealer. Paper hanging to ceiling takes approximately 50% longer than walls! Newly plastered walls will require a coat of size, usually diluted paper adhesive, to adjust the suction.

It is common to have wallpaper specified in the bills of quantities as a prime cost or provisional sum and the labour for hanging measured as a hanging/fix only item.

Sundry labour constants

	Skilled hours per 100 m²
Knotting and stopping	4.5
Priming	11.00
Undercoat	14.00
Gloss coat	18.00
Emulsion paint	8.00
Preparation of surfaces (rubbing down between coats, etc.)	4.00

Wallpaper	**Skilled hours per 10 m²**
Stripping off old paper to walls	1.00
Applying size	0.50
Lightweight paper	2.00
Heavyweight paper	2.50

Example
Prepare and two coats of emulsion on general surfaces of plaster – cost per m^2.

Data
Emulsion paint – £12.00 per 2.5 litres

Assume 100 m^2

Materials		£
Coverage		
1st coat 15 m^2 per litre 100 ÷ 15 = 6.67		
2nd coat 8 m^2 per litre 100 ÷ 8 = 12.50		
	19.17 say 19 litres	
19 litres of emulsion @ £12 per 2.5 litres		91.20
Labour		
Preparation	5 hours	
Emulsion (2 coats)	16 hours = 21 hours @ £17.76	372.96
Add Brush allowance 2%		7.46
		471.62
Add Profit and overheads 15%		70.74
Cost per 100 m^2		542.36
÷100 cost per m^2		£5.42

Drainage

Excavation

Excavation to drain trenches can be based on the labour constants given for surface trenches except that allowance has to be made in grading the bottoms of the trench to the correct gradient. Drain trenches are measured in linear metres and are deemed to include all necessary earthwork support, consolidation of bottom of trench, trimming excavation, filling and compaction of general filling materials and removal of surplus excavated materials. The following is a guide to the width of a drain trench based on pipes up to 200 mm diameter.

Depth of trench	**Width**
Average depth up to 1 m	500 mm
Average depth 1 to 3 m	750 mm
Average depth over 3 m	1000 mm

although the actual width is at the discretion of the contractor.

For pipes over 200 mm diameter the width of the trench should be increased by the additional diameter of the pipe over 200 mm.

Example
Excavating trenches pipes not exceeding 200 mm diameter average depth 1.00–1.25 m deep – cost per m.

The quantities of excavation, earthwork support, etc. are calculated for each category of pipe and depth. Once calculated they can be applied to any project.

SMM7 Clause R12.C1

> Excavating trenches (for drains) is deemed to include: earthwork support, consolidation of trench bottoms, trimming excavations, filling with and compaction of general filling materials, disposal of surplus excavated materials.

The reference to 'general filling' in clause R12.C1 is to backfilling with material arising from the excavations, beds and surrounds or haunchings to drain pipes in selected material is measured separately under clause R12. 4–6. The exact nature of the backfilling required will depend on the pipes being used.

Assume 10 linear metres

Excavation	10.00		
	0.75		
	1.25	9.38 m³ @ £5.00	46.90
Earthwork support	2/10.00		
	1.25	25.00 m² @ £2.00	50.00
Compaction to bottom of trench	10.00		
	0.75	7.50 m² @ £1.20	9.00
General backfill	10.00		
	0.75		
	0.80	6.00 m³ @ £2.00	12.00
Remove surplus	10.00		
	0.75		
	0.45	3.38 m³ @ £4.53	15.31
Cost per 10 m			£133.21
÷10 cost per metre			£13.31

Pipe beds, haunchings and surrounds

Once laid in the trench, protection to the drain pipes is provided by beds under the pipe, haunchings to the sides of the pipe or complete surrounds to the pipes depending on the location of the pipes and the specification. If concrete is used, any formwork is deemed to be included in the item.

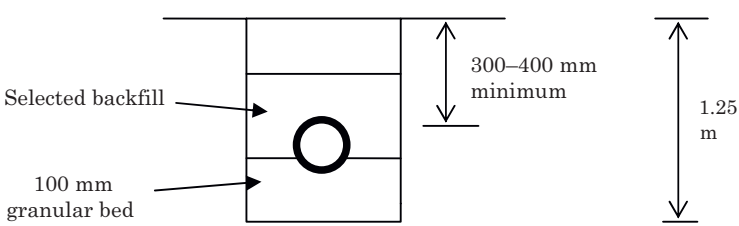


Figure 5.4 Typical section through pipe trench

Drain pipes

The traditional material for below ground drainage pipes and fittings is clay; however, this material has now been largely replaced with UPVC (plastic) pipes. Clay pipes, almost exclusively now referred to as vitrified pipes, are still used in certain situations and are manufactured in 600 mm lengths. The big advantage of UPVC pipes is that they weigh considerably less than vitrified clay pipes and come in 3 metre lengths, making handling, laying and jointing easier and quicker. Pipes of both materials are jointed with flexible push fit joints that help to prevent failure.

Example
110 mm Floplast pipe laid in trenches with coupling sockets – cost per m.

Data
100 mm Floplast pipes: £10.41 per 3 m
Coupling sockets: £2.19 each

Assume 30 m

Materials	£	£
10 Floplast pipes @ £10.41 each	104.10	
10 coupling sockets @ £2.19	21.90	126.00
Labour		
Laying and jointing pipes – 0.1 hours per m		
3 hours @ £17.76		53.28
		179.28
Add Profit and overheads 15%		26.89
Cost per 30 m		206.17
÷30 cost per m		£6.87

Manholes and inspection chambers

Traditionally, the construction of manholes was a labour-intensive operation involving many trades. Although still constructed from engineering bricks it is more common to use preformed manholes made from precast concrete, plastic and clay. The labour constants for work to manholes can be taken from the respective trades with the addition of about 25% to take account of working in confined spaces. Inspection chambers are essentially the same as manholes but are usually shallower.

External works

External works include paving, planting, fencing, etc. and trades associated with this element are measured and should be priced in accordance with the constants used in the appropriate trade elsewhere in the section.

PRO RATA PRICING

One of the advantages of having a bill of quantities is that the degree of detail contained in the document can be used as a basis for the valuing of variations during the post-contract stage of a project. As discussed in the previous pages bill rates are composed of the following:

- Labour
- Material
- Plant
- Profit and overheads.

The technique of pro rata pricing involves disassembling a bill rate and substituting new data in order to calculate a new rate that can be used for pricing variations – see Section 7.

MANAGING THE PRICING PROCESS

A successful contractor must have a clear policy regarding tendering policy as many contractors have perished due of the lack of one. The policy must spell out to the senior management the type and value of the contracts that the contractor will tender for. But surely all potential projects are good news and should be considered? The answer is no, it is far better to 'stick to the knitting' rather than attempt to win every contract that is offered. A contractor should have a system to assess the risk that a new contract may pose to the organisation. The factors that should be considered before accepting a place on a tender list are:

- The definition of the brief
- The type of project: house building, commercial, etc.
- The type of client: private, public sector, Public Private Partnerships, etc.

- The contract: is the contract a mainstream contract such as JCT forms or NEC; has the contract been modified?
- The maximum and minimum value of potential contracts: large value contracts will require financial backing in order to maintain cash flow
- Geographical location: the supply chains could struggle if stretched
- The number and significance of PC and provisional sums: work covered by PCs and provisional sums is generally outside the control of the main contractor and could be difficult to control
- The time of year: will the contract be starting at the beginning of the winter months?

Once risk has been identified, the response of a contractor should have systems for:

- Rejection
- Amelioration
- Transfer, and
- Acceptance.

In addition, a contractor will also have to consider its current and future commitments and any problems in obtaining the required labour and materials. It may be that the contractor will seek to build into the bid figure a provision or contingency for potential risks.

TENDER ADJUDICATION

Tender adjudication takes place after the bills of quantities are priced and usually involves the senior management of the contracting organisation who will, among other matters, decide the level of profit required, sometimes referred to as the margin. This figure, together with a percentage to cover overheads, will be added to the rates calculated by the estimator. The level of profit is kept a closely guarded secret but historically is seldom above 4–5% in the UK.

Having taken the decision to submit a tender the contractor will take delivery of the tender documents and proceed to prepare the bid; this will involve:

- Carefully examining the drawings and bills of quantities for accuracy and then preparing a timetable for the preparation of the bid

- Visiting the site, particularly appropriate for alteration work, or where the site has restricted access or working
- Preparing any method statements; method statements are an analysis and description of how the contractor proposes to carry out particularly complicated parts of the works.

E-TENDERING

Electronic tendering enables the traditional process not only to be made more efficient but also to add significant value. It can provide a transparent and paperless process allowing offers to be more easily compared according to specific criteria. More importantly, by using the Internet tendering opportunities become available to a global market.

e-Procurement is the use of electronic tools and systems to increase efficiency and reduce costs during each stage of the procurement process. Since autumn 2002 there have been significant developments in e-procurement; legislative changes have encouraged greater use throughout the EU; new techniques such as electronic reverse auctions have been introduced, not, it has to be said, without controversy. In addition, the UK government has launched a drive for greater public sector efficiency following HM Treasury's publication of the Gershon Efficiency Review: Releasing Resources to the Frontline, in July 2004, and e-procurement is seen to be at the heart of this initiative.

The stated prime objective of electronic tendering systems is to provide central government, as well as the private sector, with a system and service that replaces the traditional paper tendering exercise with a web-enabled system that delivers additional functionality and increased benefits to all parties involved with the tendering exercise. The perceived benefits of electronic procurement are:

- Efficient and effective electronic interfaces between suppliers and civil central governments, departments and agencies, leading to cost reductions and timesaving on both sides
- Quick and accurate pre-qualification and evaluation, which enables automatic rejection of tenders that fail to meet stipulated 'must have criteria'
- A reduced paper trail on tendering exercises, saving costs on both sides and improving audit

- Increased compliance with EU Procurement Directives, and best practice procurement with the introduction of a less fragmented procurement process
- A clear audit trail, demonstrating integrity
- The provision of quality assurance information – e.g. the number of tenders issued, response rates and times
- The opportunity to gain advantage from any future changes to the EU Procurement Directives
- Quick and accurate evaluation of tenders
- The opportunity to respond to any questions or points of clarification during the tendering period
- Reduction in the receipt, recording and distribution of tender submissions
- Twenty-four-hour access.

Figure 5.5 illustrates the possible applications of e-procurement to projects that are covered by the EU public procurement directives.

Benefits of electronic tendering and procurement of goods and services are said to be wider choice of suppliers leading to:

- Lower cost
- Better quality
- Improved delivery, reduced cost of procurement (e.g. tendering specifications are downloaded by suppliers rather than by post), and
- Electronic negotiation and contracting and possibly collaborative work in specification can further enhance time- and cost-saving and convenience.

For suppliers the benefits are:

- More tendering opportunities, possibly on a global scale
- Lower cost of submitting a tender, and
- Possibly tendering in parts, which may be better suited for smaller enterprises or collaborative tendering.

Lower costs can be achieved through increased greater efficiency; however, a survey carried out by e-Business Watch in 2002 of 6000 organisations found that nearly 60% of those surveyed perceived that face-to-face interaction was a barrier to e-procurement while online security still was a major concern.

In autumn 2005 the RICS produced a guidance note on e-tendering in response to the growth in the preparation of tender documents in

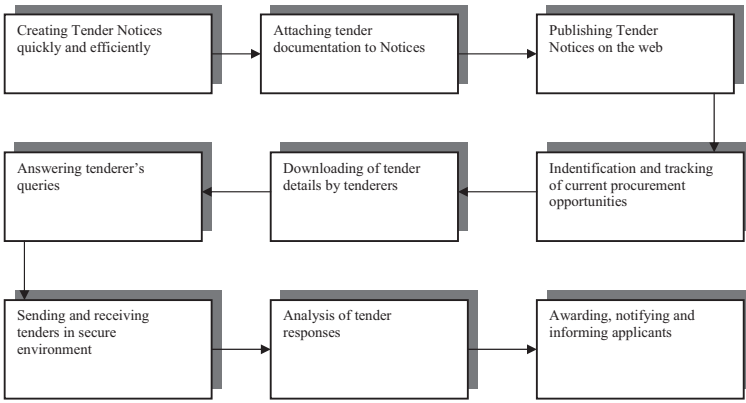


Figure 5.5

electronic format. Figure 5.6 sets out their recommended approach to the e-procurement process while Figure 5.7 maps the way by which contract documentation can be organised for the e-tendering process.

e-AUCTIONS

An online auction is an Internet-based activity, which is used to negotiate prices for buying or selling direct materials, capital or services.

Online auctions can be used to sell: these are called forward (or seller) auctions and closely resemble the activity on websites such as eBay; the highest bidder wins. Now some companies are starting to use reverse auctions where purchasers seek market pricing inviting suppliers to compete for business on an online event. Auctions can either be private/closed, where there are typically few bidders who have no visibility of each other's bids, or open, where a greater number of participants are invited. In this case participants have visibility of either their rank or the bidding itself. When used, the technique can replace the conventional methods of calling for sealed paper tenders or face-to-face negotiations.

Online auctions are said to offer an electronic implementation of the bidding mechanism used by traditional auctions and systems may incorporate integration of the bidding process together with

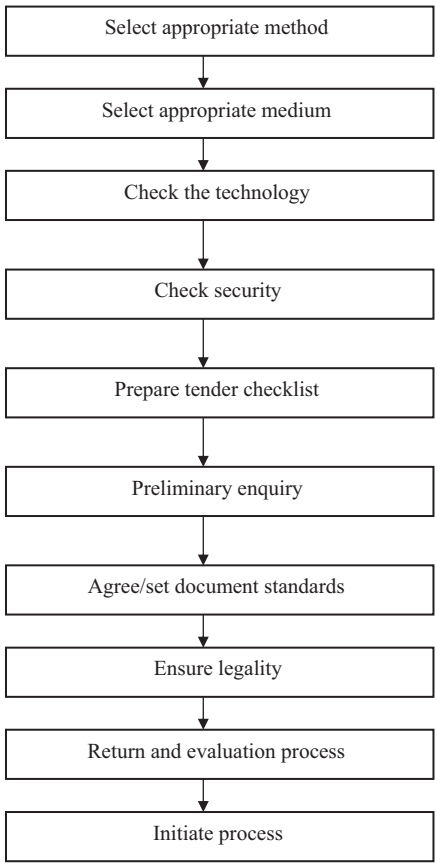


Figure 5.6 e-Procurement process

Source: Adapted from RICS

contracting and payment. The sources of income for the auction provider are from selling the technology platform, transaction fees and advertising. Benefits for suppliers and buyers are increased efficiency and time savings, no need for physical transport until the deal has been established, as well as global sourcing.

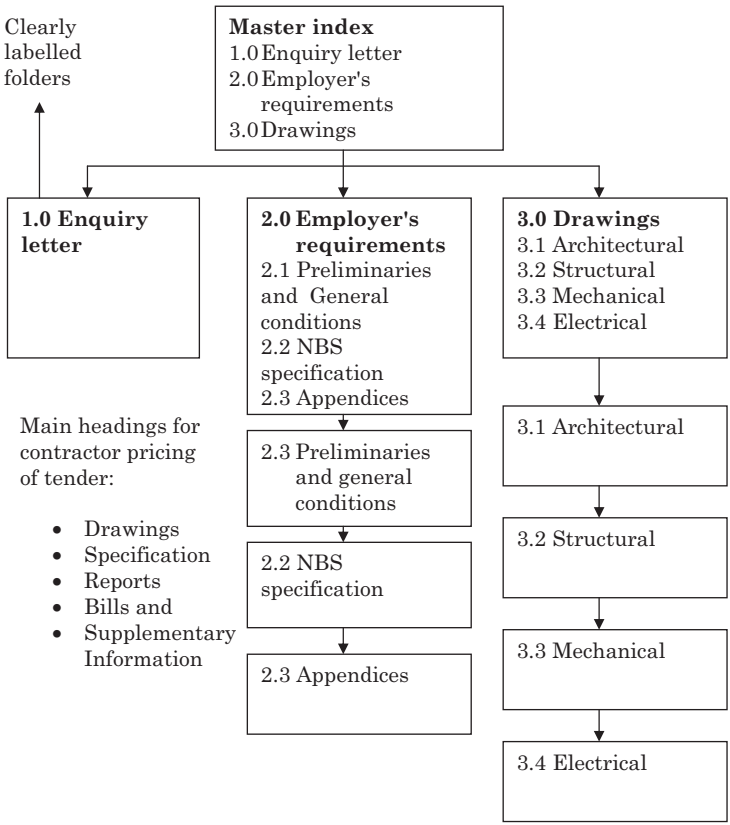


Figure 5.7 Organisation of contract information for e-procurement

Source: RICS

There have been some strong objections to e-auctions, and in particular reverse e-auctions, from many sections of the construction industry. Among quantity surveyors the perception of reverse e-auctions is very negative with 90% feeling that they reduce quality and adversely effect partnering relationships.

REVERSE AUCTIONS

The reverse e-auction event is conducted online with pre-qualified suppliers being invited to compete on predetermined and published award criteria. A reverse auction can be on any combination of criteria, normally converted to a 'price equivalent'. Bidders are able to introduce new or improved values to their bids in a visible and competitive environment. The procedure duration of the event will be defined before the start of the reverse auction commences. There will be a starting value that suppliers will bid against until the competition closes.

Three characteristics that need to be present to have a successful reverse auction are as follows:

- The purchase must be clearly defined
- The market must be well contested, and
- The existing supply base must be well known.

These three factors are interdependent and together form the basis for an auction that delivers final prices as close as possible to the true current market price. For the buyer and the supplier, a clearly defined scope of work is essential, without this it becomes very difficult to bid accurately for the work.

6

Contract procedure, administration and organisation

This chapter of the book has been subdivided for easy reference into the following sections:

- **Part 1** Contract procedure: a review of the popular forms of contract in current use, insurances, bonds, guarantees, collateral warranties
- **Part 2** Contract administration: a review of the application of contract conditions during the site operations stage and the final account
- **Part 3** Contract organisation: planning, site layout and organisation.

PART 1 – CONTRACT PROCEDURE

In 2004, the RICS published the latest in a series of reports analysing the contracts that are being used. The report, the tenth in the series, was compiled on behalf of the RICS by Davis Langdon and produced the following findings:

- 92% of all projects were let using a standard form of contract
- 78% of all contracts employed were one of the JCT standard forms, down from 91% from the previous (2001) survey. This represents a very significant drop and reflects the competition that the JCT is experiencing from rival standard forms such as the NEC suite of contracts.

In more detail the distribution of methods of procurement, by number of contracts, is as follows:

- Lump sum – firm BQ – 31%
- Lump sum – specification and drawings – 43%

- Lump sum – design and build – 13%
- Partnering agreements – 3%.

When considered by the value of contracts, the distribution of methods of procurement is as follows:

- Lump sum – firm BQ – 23.6%
- Lump sum – specification and drawings – 10.7%
- Lump sum – design and build – 43.2%
- Partnering agreements – 6.6%.

Types of contract

The following are the main types of traditional contract.

Lump sum contracts – where the contract sum is known before work starts on site and the contractor agrees to undertake a defined amount of work for a specific amount. This type of contract is often based on a firm bill(s) of quantities and drawings.

Measurement contracts – where the contract is assessed and re-measured as on a previously agreed basis. This type of contract can be based on approximate bill(s) of quantities and drawings.

Cost reimbursement contracts – where a contractor is reimbursed on the basis of the prime cost of labour materials and plant plus an agreed percentage addition to cover overheads and profit.

In addition, the following types of contract have become popular in recent times.

Design and build – in a number of variant forms, where the contractor both designs and builds a project.

Management contracts – can take a variety of forms but involves a management contractor managing the works although the contractor does not actually carry out any of the work.

The type of project will to a large extent influence the choice of contract.

Standard forms of contract

The contracts used in the UK construction industry are not bespoke documents; instead they are standard documents or forms drafted by organisations whose membership is drawn from industry and the professions.

The forms should not be altered or amended, as this practice can lead to major problems if the amended portion becomes the subject of legal action; there is, however, provision within the standard forms to adapt them to suit particular projects by completion of articles of agreement and appendices. The contracts can be lengthy documents although in practice most quantity surveyors will only become fully familiar with key clauses. Several bodies publish standard forms of contract as follows.

The Joint Contracts Tribunal (JCT)

- The JCT was established in 1931 and has for 75 years produced standard forms of contracts, guidance notes and other standard documentation for the use of the construction industry. Members of the JCT include the RICS, the RIBA, the British Property Federation, Construction Confederation, Local Government Association, National Specialist Contractors Council and the Scottish Contract Committee Ltd.

This body produces several standard forms including the flagship JCT Standard Building Contract 2005 edition, referred to as JCT 05. Contracts published by the JCT include:

- JCT Standard Building Contract (SBC) 2005 edition: With Quantities, Without Quantities and With Approximate Quantities together with Standard Subcontract Agreements
- Note: the Local Authorities Edition is no longer available in the 2005 edition
- Intermediate Building Contract (IC 2005)/With Contractor's Design together with Standard Subcontract Agreements
- Minor Works Contract 2005 (MN 2005)/With Contractor's Design
- Design and Build Contract together with Subcontract Agreement
- Major Project Construction Contract
- Management Building Contract
- Prime Cost Contract
- Measured Term Contract
- Construction Management Trade Contract (currently under revision)
- Collateral warranties.

JCT Standard Building Contract 2005 edition

To coincide with the publication of the 2005 edition the JCT ended its long association with the RIBAs' publishing house and the forms of

contract are now published by Sweet & Maxwell; also a new digital service is available alongside the hard copy format. In addition, the format and appearance of the JCT forms were given a facelift in order to simplify the interpretation of clauses. Since the last edition of the JCT Standard Form in 1998 competition from other forms of contract has become more acute, in particular the New Engineering Contract and the Project Partnering Contract 2000 and this pressure has forced the JCT to update the structure and the clarity of the JCT form. One of the major changes is the elevation of mediation as a form of dispute resolution. The 2005 edition states that mediation ought to be considered as the very first condition in the dispute resolution clause. In addition, a number of familiar JCT phrases have been amended in the 2005 edition, for example 'Defects Liability Period' becomes 'Defects Rectification Period' and 'Certificate of Completion of Making Good Defects' has become 'Certificate of Making Good'. In addition, nominated sub-contractors have been replaced by named sub-contractors.

With quantities – this edition of the JCT 2005 is for use where the design team is able to fully detail the project and the time is available for detailed bills of quantities to be prepared. Unlike JCT 1998 the 2005 edition is supplied with the facility for an element of design work to be carried out by the contractor – the Contractor's Designed Portion (CDP). The 2005 form makes it obligatory for the contractor to obtain and maintain design liability insurance when design work is to be carried out by the contractor. Limits of responsibility need clear definition.

Without quantities – this edition is for use when a bill of quantities is not to be part of the contract documentation, primarily due to lack of time or detailed information. Nevertheless, a set of drawings and specifications are provided. The contractor is required to submit a schedule of rates as a basis for valuing variations, etc.

With approximate quantities – is similar to the Standard Form Building Contract with Quantities but is for use on projects where it is necessary to make an early start and for which adequate contract documents cannot be prepared before the tender stage. No lump sum price can be given for the work, but a tender sum indicating the anticipated final price can be calculated based on approximate measurement of the likely work involved. As the contract progresses, the work is completely remeasured and the remeasurement priced on the basis of the rates set out in the bills of approximate quantities.

The only difference between bills of approximate quantities and firm bills of quantities is that they are prepared from less complete design information and so can be produced at an earlier date. Their preparation must still be in accordance with the Standard Method of Measurement.

Some of the principal clauses in the JCT 05 will be discussed later in this section.

Intermediate Building Contract (IC 2005)

As a contract the intermediate form of contract has tried to bridge the gap between the full JCT (2005) and the Minor Works contract. It is available in one version for local authorities and private clients, with or without quantities.

Appropriate:

- Where the proposed works are to be carried out for an agreed lump sum
- Where an Architect or Contract Administrator has been appointed to advise on and to administer its terms
- Where the proposed building works are of simple content involving the normal, recognised basic trades and skills of the industry, without building service installations of a complex nature or other complex specialist work, and
- Where the works are adequately specified, or specified and bills of quantities prepared prior to the invitation to tender.

This form provides more detailed provisions and more extensive control procedures than the Agreement for Minor Building Works. A sectional completion supplement allows its use where the project is divided into sections.

Minor Works Contract 2005 (MN 2005)/With Contractor's Design

The most widely used form within the JCT suite of contracts reflecting the large number of relatively small value contracts carried out.

Appropriate:

- Where the work involved is simple in character
- Where the work is designed by or on behalf of the Employer

- Where the Employer is to provide drawings and/or a specification and/or work schedules to define adequately the quantity and quality of the work, and
- Where a Contract Administrator is to administer the conditions.

Can be used:

- By both private and local authority employers.

Not suitable:

- Where bills of quantities are required
- Where provisions are required to govern work carried out by named specialists
- Where detailed control procedures are needed
- Where the Contractor is to design discrete part(s) of the works, even though all the other criteria are met – consider Minor Works Building Contract with contractor's design (MWD).

Design and Build Contract together with Subcontract Agreement

Appropriate:

- Where detailed contract provisions are necessary and Employer's Requirements have been prepared and provided to the Contractor
- Where the Contractor is not only to carry out and complete the works, but also to complete the design, and
- Where the Employer employs an agent (who may be an external consultant or employee) to administer the conditions.

Can be used:

- Where the works are to be carried out in sections
- By both private and local authority employers.

Where the Contractor is restricted to design small discrete parts of the works and not made responsible for completing the design for the whole works, consideration should be given to using one of the JCT contracts that provide for such limited design input by the Contractor and the employment of an Architect/Contract Administrator.

Design and Build Subcontract (DBSub/A and DBSub/C)

Appropriate:

- For use with the Design and Build Contract, and
- For subcontract works whether or not they include design by the Sub-contractor.

Can be used:

- Where the subcontract works and/or main contract works are to be carried out in sections
- For subcontract works that are to be carried out on the basis of an adjusted subcontract sum (adjustment for variations, etc.) or by complete remeasurement of the subcontract works.

The JCT Major Contracts Construction Contract (MP) – 2003 edition

In June 2003, the Joint Contracts Tribunal launched another standard form of contract, the Major Project Form, rebadged the Major Contracts Construction Contract in 2005, in response to an apparent demand by clients who sought a simpler contract which would avoid the perceived necessity for either creating bespoke contracts or radically redrafting one of the current available standard forms. The Major Contracts Construction Contract is considerably shorter than any of its contemporary JCT contracts, for example it is 80% smaller than the With Contractor's Design contract as users have a thorough understanding of both the building and general contractual procedures.

As is frequently the case, the consequence of producing a shorter and simpler contract is that there is a greater need for the interpretation of its terms. Perhaps in recognition of this the JCT has also published a 24 page set of Guidance Notes for use with the Major Contracts Construction Contract.

The stated aim of the Major Contracts Construction Contract is that, having defined the 'Employer's Requirements', the Employer should then allow the Contractor to undertake the Project without the Contractor being reliant upon the Employer for anything else other than access to site, review of Design Documents, and payment. In particular, there is no requirement for the Employer to issue any further information to the Contractor, as design information beyond that contained in the Requirements will be produced by the Contractor.

Key features

Attestation provision
The contract is to be executed as a deed and therefore provides a limitation period of 12 years.

Clause 1
The Contractor is responsible for completing the project in accordance with the Contract, which is defined in clause 29 as: 'The Contract Conditions, the Appendix, the Third Party Rights Schedule, the Requirements, the Proposals and the Pricing Document'.

Design
The key document is the Employer's Requirements, which needs to be sufficiently detailed to set out what it expects the Contractor to design. Clause 5.1 expressly excludes the Contractor's responsibility for the contents of the Requirements or the adequacy of the design contained therein. Clearly, failure to adequately define the design parameters could result in dispute.

Design standards and procedure
The Contractor is liable for a standard duty of using reasonable skill and care with clause 5.3 expressly excluding any 'fitness for purpose' provision.

The JCT in recognition of those Employers requiring a 'fit for purpose' obligation, set out in the Guidance Notes page 7 a slightly watered down alternative, which requires the Contractor to warrant that the Project will be 'suitable for the purpose stated in the Requirements'.

Clause 6 expects any Design Documents, which are widely defined, to be prepared and submitted to the Employer. The Employer has 14 days for approval and comment.

Discrepancies
Only discrepancies within the Requirements and changes in the Statutory Requirements after the Base Date will give rise to a Change. Other discrepancies between or contained within the documents will not give rise to a Change.

Possession and completion
The Contractor does not have exclusive possession of the Site, which suggests that the Employer may undertake works at the same time

with the proviso that the Contractor has sufficient access to areas of the Site to complete his works. Limitations in this regard must be set out in the Requirements.

The Employer, with consent, may also take over any part or parts of the Project prior to Practical Completion. Unlike other JCT Contracts, clause 39 provides a definition for Practical Completion, although whether the definition provided will reduce disputes regarding this issue remains to be seen.

Time

To preserve the liquidated damages provision the Major Contracts Construction Contract provides an extensive list of relevant delay events, but this list does not include exceptional weather conditions, industrial disputes, and the inability to obtain labour and/or materials, or delays in statutory approvals. These excluded items are therefore at the risk of the Contractor.

The Major Contracts Construction Contract adopts the following principles for making an extension of time:

- The Employer should implement any agreement reached regarding changes, acceleration or costs savings
- Regard must be given to any failure by the Contractor of clause 9.3, i.e. using reasonable endeavours to prevent or reduce delay to the works, and
- A fair and reasonable adjustment should be given regardless of any concurrent culpable delay.

Acceleration and bonus

The Contract expressly provides for acceleration by agreement.

The Employer is also liable to paying the Contractor an optional agreed bonus payment if the project is Practically Complete before the Completion Date.

Pre-appointed consultants and specialists

If adopted by the Employer he can name consultants in the Appendix which will be novated to the Contractor on a Model Form which must be contained in the Requirements.

Contract clause 18.4 provides that the Contractor will accept responsibility to the Employer for services previously performed by the consultant and clause 18.6 prevents the Contractor (without permission) altering the terms of the Consultant's engagement.

Cost savings
The Contractor is 'encouraged' to suggest amendments to the Requirements and/or Proposals and the Contractor will directly benefit on an agreed proportion basis as identified in the Appendix to the Contract.

Variations – changes
The valuation of any Change shall preferably be agreed before any instruction is issued or they will be determined on the basis of a fair valuation that takes into account all consequences of the Change including any loss and/or expense, which may be incurred.

Valuation
Valuations will be made monthly; however, the Pricing Document provides for a range of payment options based upon interim payments, stage payments, scheduled payments or indeed any other method of payment the parties wish to make.

Third party rights
This is a major innovation albeit it remains optional. It provides for the Contractor to effectively warrant their obligations under the Contract to other defined third parties, which relies on the relatively untried 'Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999'.

Disputes
Clause 35 deals with the resolution of disputes and offers mediation by agreement, statutory adjudication under the Scheme and finally any difference or dispute being decided through litigation. The Contract does not provide an option for arbitration.

What is missing?
Some of the common conditions which are missing from this form include:

1. Nominated sub-contractors
2. Payment for materials either on or off site
3. No provision for any fluctuations
4. No retention
5. No oral mechanism for variations
6. No priority of documents provision
7. No specific insurance requirements
8. No lengthy provisions for VAT, Inland Revenue, etc.
9. No insurance provisions.

The contract documentation

The MPF consists of six distinct documents including a set of Guidance Notes, with the latter confirming they are not a definitive guide to the terms of Contract or its interpretation.

1. The Conditions
The Contract is executed as a deed and consists of eight main sections and 39 individual clauses. Clause 39 provides a useful definitions clause for terms used throughout all the contract documents.

2. The Appendix
The Appendix is similar to other JCT formats and contains all the relevant and necessary details required by the Contract terms.

3. The Third Party Rights Schedule
This is a considerable (optional) step in adopting the provisions under the Contracts (Rights for Third Parties) Act 1999, but remains limited to the Main Contractor providing a warranty to funders, purchasers and/or tenants.

4. The Pricing Document
Provides information for determining the manner in which the Contractor is to receive payments in respect of the Contract Sum and includes the Contract Sum analysis and pricing information.

This information will need to be prepared in the knowledge that it will also govern the valuation of any changes.

5. The Requirements
These are the Employer's Requirements and this is what the Contractor will have to meet to discharge its obligations under the Contract.

6. The Proposals
These are the Contractor's Proposals which confirm how the Contractor proposes to meet the requirements.

The JCT Management Building Contract

Appropriate:

- For large-scale projects requiring an early start on site, where the works are designed by or on behalf of the Employer but where it

is not possible to prepare full design information before the works commence and where much of the detail design may be of a sophisticated or innovative nature requiring proprietary systems or components designed by specialists
- Where the Employer is to provide the Management Contractor with drawings and a specification, and
- Where a Management Contractor is to administer the conditions.

The Management Contractor does not carry out any construction work but manages the Project for a fee. The Management Contractor employs Works Contractors to carry out the construction works.

Can be used:

- Where the works are to be carried out in sections
- By both private and local authority employers.

JCT Prime Cost Contract (98)

Available in one version for local authorities and private clients.

Appropriate for use where the Employer wants the earliest possible start. There may be insufficient time to prepare detailed tender documents, or circumstances such as an inability accurately to define the work may make their use inappropriate, necessitating the appointment of a contractor simply on the basis of an estimate of the total cost.

Measured Term Contracts (98)

Available in one version for local authorities and private clients.

Appropriate for use by Employers who have a regular flow of maintenance and minor works, including improvements, to be carried out by a single contractor over a specified period of time and all under a single contract.

Construction Management Trade Contract

Appropriate:

- Where the client is to enter into direct separate trade contracts
- Where a Construction Manager is appointed under the Client, and
- Where a Construction Management Agreement is to administer the conditions on behalf of the client.

Can be used:

- Where the works are to be carried out in sections.

Collateral warranties

The principles of collateral warranties are discussed at the end of this section. The JCT 05 now has a series of collateral warranties for use with funders, purchasers, tenants and employers for both main contractors and sub-contractors.

Other forms of contract

Association of Consultant Architects (ACA)

ACA is the national professional body representing architects in private practice – consultant architects – throughout the UK. Founded in 1973, it now represents some of the country's leading practices, ranging in size from one-person firms to very large international organisations. The ACA's most widely used contracts are:

- ACA Form of Building Agreement 1982 Third Edition 1998 (2003 Revision), and
- PPC2000 The ACA Standard Form of Contract for Project Partnering (Amended 2003).

The ACA Form of Building Agreement is a lump sum contract that has both fixed and fluctuating price versions. Unlike the JCT 2005 the ACA contract is a one fit suits all form and is suitable for projects of all sizes based on a bill of quantities or specification. The ACA's PPC2000 is the first multi-party partnering contract to be produced following the government's 'Rethinking Construction' report and initiative and it is claimed that it:

- Is a non-adversarial construction contract that provides the foundation for the partnering process
- Can be applied to any type of partnered project in any jurisdiction.

PPC2000

Team-based Multi-party Approach – PPC2000 allows the client, the constructor and all consultants and key specialists (i.e. subconsultants, sub-contractors and suppliers) to sign a single Partnering Contract. This avoids the need for several two-party professional

appointments and a separate building contract and/or partnering agreement, and substantially reduces Project paperwork. This single, integrated contract encourages a team-based commitment to the project, and should reduce the temptation to hide behind unconnected two-party agreements. Additional members can join the partnering team by signature of joining agreements.

Integrated Design/Supply/Construction Process – PPC2000 provides for the early selection of a Project Partnering Team and the collaborative finalisation of designs, prices and members of the supply chain (clauses 8, 10 and 12). It covers the full duration of the partnering relationships, and thereby encourages the contributions of the constructor and specialists during the key period prior to start on site, as well as during supply and construction.

Egan Objectives – PPC2000 expressly recognises the recommendations of 'Rethinking Construction' and links these to the objectives of the Partnering Team on each Project. Achievement of these objectives is measured against agreed Key Performance Indicators (clauses 4 and 23).

Supply Chain Partnering – PPC2000 provides for finalisation of the supply chain on an open-book basis, encouraging partnering relationships with all specialists, and includes provision for key specialists to become full members of the partnering team (clauses 10 and 12). It is compatible with the wide variety of subcontracts used by Constructors, but those subcontracts must not conflict with the PPC2000 terms.

Core Group – PPC2000 provides for a core group of key individuals representing partnering team members, who operate an early warning system for problems and who undertake regular reviews of progress and performance (clause 3).

Controls – PPC2000 provides for a partnering timetable to govern the contributions of all partnering team members to partnered activities, including development of designs, prices and the supply chain, and for a project timetable to govern their activities after commencement on site (clause 6).

Incentives – PPC2000 provides for agreement of profit, central office overheads and site overheads (clause 12), with encouragement for partnering team members to agree shared savings and shared

added value incentives (clause 13). Payments can also be linked to performance against KPIs (clause 13.5); value engineering and value management exercises are expressly recognised (clause 5.1).

Risk Management – PPC2000 provides for a clear system for reducing, managing and sharing risks and for agreeing Changes openly and equitably in advance (clauses 17 and 18). Risk management is a duty of partnering team members, and there is a facility to agree the balance and sharing of risk appropriate to each project (clause 18.1).

Non-Adversarial Problem Resolution – PPC2000 provides for a problem-solving hierarchy of increasingly senior individuals within each partnering team member's organisation, working to strict time limits (clause 27.2), with further reference of a problem to the core group (clause 27.3). It also includes a facility for conciliation or other forms of alternative dispute resolution (clause 27.4). These options are without prejudice to partnering team members' legal right to refer a dispute to adjudication (clause 27.5).

Partnering Adviser – PPC2000 recognises the role of partnering adviser recommended in the Construction Industry Council guide, an individual with relevant experience who can guide the partnering process, who can document the relationships, commitments and expectations of partnering team members and who can provide an additional facility for problem resolution (clauses 5.6 and 27.4).

NEC form of contract

The NEC describes itself as 'a modern day family of contracts that facilitates the implementation of sound project management principles and practices as well as defining legal relationships. Key to the successful use of NEC is users adopting the desired cultural transition. The main aspect of this transition is moving away from a reactive and hindsight-based decision-making and management approach to one that is foresight based, encouraging a creative environment with pro-active and collaborative relationships.'

The NEC was launched by the ICE in 1993 with the 2nd edition in 1995 and the 3rd edition in 2005. The boxed set contains a total of 23 documents that together make up the new and extended family. It is now the most widely used contract in UK civil engineering and is often used by government departments such as the Highways

Agency and by local authorities. It has been used on major projects and procurement initiatives such as the Channel Tunnel Rail Link, Heathrow T5, NHS Procure 21 and the Eden Project. The overall structure is quite unlike that of the JCT and other standard forms, as follows.

Flexibility

- It is intended to be suitable for all the needs of the construction industry
- It provides for a variety of approaches to risk allocation
- It is adaptable for some design, full design or no design responsibility, and for all current contract options including target, management and cost reimbursable contracts
- The simple wording of the documents is deliberately chosen, and lends itself to ready translation into other languages.

Clarity and simplicity

- It is written in ordinary language, using short sentences with bullet points
- Imprecise terms such as 'fair' and 'reasonable' have been avoided
- Legal jargon is minimizsed
- The actions required from the parties are said to be 'defined precisely', with the aim of avoiding disputes
- Flow charts are provided to assist usage.

Stimulus to good management

This is stated to be the most important characteristic of the NEC.

- It is a manual of management procedures, not just a contractual document
- The aim is to present the Purchaser's Project Manager with options for overcoming problems as they become apparent
- An 'Early warning procedure' places obligations on all parties to flag up problems which could affect time, money or performance of the works
- 'Compensation events' are the method of dealing with problems of both time and money.
- A schedule of 'Actual cost' is used
- Changes are based on quotations prior to commitment wherever possible

- Programme must be kept up to date at all times, to reflect changes
- The aim is to highlight and resolve problems in a proactive way as the job proceeds
- 'End of job' disputes should be reduced in consequence.

The documents making up the contract are:

- Form of tender
- Schedule of Contract Data
- Core Clauses – see below
- Optional Clauses – see below
- Schedule of Actual Cost.

The six procurement routes now available are:

- Priced contract – with either activity schedule or bill of quantities
- Target contract – with either activity schedule or bill of quantities
- Cost reimbursable contract
- Short contract – suitable for minor works and simple projects
- Term service contract
- Framework contract.

In addition to the NEC3 Engineering and Construction Contract (the black book) there are six main core clause options A–F:

Option A Priced contract with activity schedule
Option B Priced contract with Bill of Quantities (note – the bill is used only for interim payments, not for valuation of compensation events)
Option C Target contract with activity schedule (lump sum quoted by tenderer as target)
Option D Target contract with Bill of Quantities (subject to remeasurement)
Option E Cost reimbursable contract
Option F Management contract.

Other documents include:

- Contract guidance notes
- Contract flow charts
- Professional service contract
- Short contract
- Subcontracts and flow charts

- Adjudicator's contract
- Term service contract, guidance notes and flow charts
- Framework contract, guidance notes and flow charts
- Procurement and contract strategies.

One of these six major options must be chosen with any number of the following secondary options:

X1 – Price adjustment for inflation
X2 – Changes in the law
X3 – Multiple warranties
X4 – Parent company guarantees
X5 – Sectional completion
X6 – Bonus for early completion
X7 – Delay damages
X12 – Partnering
X13 – Performance bond
X14 – Advanced payment to the contractor
X15 – Limitation of the contractor's liability for his design to reasonable skill and care
X16 – Retention
X17 – Low performance damages
X18 – Limitation of liability
X20 – Key performance indicators
Y(UK)2 – The Housing Grants, Construction and Regeneration Act 1996
Y(UK)3 – The Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999
Z – Additional conditions of contract.

The 'ordinary language' sometimes appears curiously naive in its assumption of compliance by the parties. It must not be forgotten that the structure and language of traditional contracts has evolved organically, over a number of years, and has been refined and clarified by ongoing case law. The wording of the contract can arouse feelings of suspicion among design teams using the contract for the first time.

The language used and the new terms introduced have proved to be a double-edged sword; while intending to promote clarity and simplicity, in the opinion of some commentators, these have led to increased uncertainty and have been cited as being among the main reasons for a general reluctance to use the contract. It is often said that one of the greatest difficulties is with the use of the present tense in the form and the resultant difficulty in deciding whether a

provision is descriptive or prescriptive. Clause 10.1 addresses this problem to an extent in that it requires the parties to 'act as stated in this Contract' thereby providing that descriptive provisions are in fact obligations. A greater issue is perhaps the brevity of the form, when compared to other standard contracts. While in principle any attempt to reduce the length of contracts should be applauded, where this is achieved at the expense of clarity then the drafting cannot be considered to have been successful.

Subcontract works

The standard form of subcontract broadly mirrors the rules set down in the main contract. Most key features summarised above will therefore apply. The time for giving notice has been reduced even further, in order that the contractor can comply with his own time limits. The use of the standard conditions is not mandatory. However, if the contractor does not intend to use the standard form, he is obliged to submit the proposed conditions to the project manager for approval. Presumably, the intention is to dissuade the contractor from imposing his own onerous, in-house terms.

The NEC therefore differs significantly from forms such as the JCT, ICE and FIDIC as it provides the parties with flexibility to tailor the contract to reflect the desired risk allocation and other parameters of that particular project. More than this though, it also contains a number of concepts which differ significantly from those found in other standard form contracts. These include:

- The roles of the Project Manager and Supervisor
- The fact that the programme is a contractual document prepared to specific parameters with an obligation to update regularly and on the occurrence of specific events
- The provision of a number of pricing method options allowing contemporaneous costing of changes
- The provision for Compensation Events
- The introduction of the new concept of Work Information and Site Information
- The allocation of design responsibility which is fully flexible in terms of extent, and also the Contractor's coordination role
- The provision for a joint obligation to notify defects and control of the correction period, and
- The introduction of the Scope of Contract Works and Weather Measurement (in the context of changes).

GC/Works range of contracts

The GC/Works family of contracts are standard government forms of contract intended for use in connection with government construction works. These contracts are published by the Stationery Office for the Property Advisers for the Civil Estate (PACE), the latter having responsibility for the management of the GC/Works contracts since April 1996. It is claimed that all of the contracts in the GC/Works suite are fully in line with the principles of the Latham Report and meet the requirements of the Housing Grants, Construction and Regeneration Act 1996. The contracts are written in plain English and are accompanied by a comprehensive commentary in an attempt to make interpretation easy. The GC/Works suite comprises the following contracts:

- **GC/Works/1(1998 and 1999)** – for use on major building and civil engineering projects. Six versions are available together with Model Forms and Commentary volume
- **GC/Works/1 With Quantities (1998)** used with bills of quantities where all or most of the quantities are firm and are not subject to remeasurement, giving a lump sum contract subject to adjustment for variation orders
- **GC/Works/1 Without Quantities (1998)** is for use when lump sum tenders are to be invited on the basic of specification and drawings only, without bills of quantities, but supported by a schedule of rates prepared by the contractor in order to value variations
- **GC/Works/1 Single Stage Design and Build (1998).** This form of contract is sufficiently flexible to allow varying amounts of design input from the contractor
- **GC/Works/1 Two Stage Design and Build Version (1999)** is intended to support a two-stage procedure with a separate design stage. It is a lump sum contract but at the time the contract is entered into the contract sum is not known owing to the lack of design information on which to base the contract sum. A design fee is included in the contract sum and the contractor submits a pricing document to help arrive at the contract sum. The employer has the right not to proceed with the contract should the outcome be unfavourable
- **GC/Works/1 With Quantities Construction Management Trade Contract (1999). GC/Works/1 Without Quantities**

Construction Management Trade Contract (1999). There is no single main contractor therefore the employer enters into a number of direct contracts with several contractors. The employer instructs a construction manager to run the contract

- **GC/Works/1 Model Forms and Commentary (1998)** provides model forms (on disk) for use with the above contracts together with a commentary on each of the conditions
- **GC/Works/2 Contract for Building and Civil Engineering Minor Works (1998)** is for use when lump sum tenders are to be invited on the basis of Specifications and Drawings only, without a bill of quantities. The typical values appropriate for this contract would be between £25,000 and £200,000. The contract is also suitable for demolition works of any value
- **GC/Works/3 Contract for Mechanical and Electrical Engineering Works (1998)** is for use when lump sum tenders are invited on the basis of specification and drawings for mechanical and electrical engineering works
- **GC/Works/4 for Building, Civil Engineering, Mechanical and Electrical Small Works (1998)** is for use when lump sum tenders are invited on the basis of specification and drawings. It should be used on work up to the value of £75,000
- **GC/Works/5 General Conditions for the Appointment of Consultants (1998)** is to be used to procure consultancy services in connection with construction works on a single project basis
- **GC/Works/5 General Conditions for the Appointment of Consultants: Framework Agreement (1999)** is to be used to procure consultancy services for a period of between 3 and 5 years on a 'call-off' basis
- **GC/Works/6 General Conditions of Contract for a Daywork Term Contract (1999)** is intended for work of a jobbing nature based on a schedule of rates for a period of between 3 and 5 years
- **GC/Works/7 General Conditions of Contract for Measured Term Contracts (1999)** is for term contracts based on a schedule of rates
- **GC/Works/8 General Conditions of Contract for a Specialist Term Contract for Maintenance and Equipment (1999)** is for use where specified maintenance of equipment is required and can be costed per task
- **GC/Works/9 General Conditions of Contract for Operation, Repair and Maintenance and Electrical Plant, Equipment and Installations (1999)** is a lump sum maintenance term

contract fixed mechanical and electrical plant. The term of the contract is between 1 and 5 years
- **GC/Works/10 Facilities Management Contract (2000);** a term contract for a period of between 3 and 5 years
- **GC/Works Subcontract** is for use with the major CG/Works forms.

ICE Conditions of Contract

This is a family of standard conditions of contract for civil engineering works and is produced by the Conditions of Contract Standing Joint Committee (CCSJC). The ICE Conditions of Contract are jointly sponsored by ICE, the Civil Engineering Contractors Association (CECA) and the Association of Consulting Engineers (ACE). The ICE Conditions of Contract, which have been in use for over 50 years, were designed to standardise the duties of contractors, employers and engineers and to distribute the risks inherent in civil engineering to those best able to manage them.

The information below relates to the latest versions of each Contract. Earlier editions are available and are used but it is recommended that the Conditions of Contract set out below, with their respective guidance notes, should be used:

- Measurement Version, 7th Edition
- Design and Construct, 2nd Edition
- Term Version, 1st Edition
- Minor Works, 3rd Edition
- Partnering Addendum
- Tendering for Civil Engineering Contracts
- Agreement for Consultancy Work in Respect of Domestic or Small Works
- Archaeological Investigation, 1st Edition
- Target Cost, 1st Edition
- Ground Investigation, 2nd Edition.

It is recommended that all clauses are incorporated unaltered because they are closely interrelated and any changes made in some may have unforeseen effects on others. Guidance Notes have been prepared specifically to assist the users of the ICE Conditions of Contract in the preparation of contract documents and the carrying out of the contract Works. They do not purport to provide a legal interpretation but they do represent the unanimous view of the CCSJC

on what constitutes good practice in the conduct of civil engineering products. Guidance Notes are published as separate documents for:

- Measurement Version
- Design and Construct
- Minor Works
- Term Version
- Ground Investigation
- Archaeological Investigation
- Target Cost.

International Federation of Consulting Engineers (FIDIC)

Prior to 1998, the Fédération Internationale des Ingénieurs-Conseils (FIDIC) published three forms of building and engineering contracts: for civil engineering works (known as the Red Book), for electrical and mechanical works (known as the Yellow Book) and for design-build (known as the Orange Book). In September 1999, FIDIC published four new first editions:

- **Short Form of Contract,** which may be suitable for a small contract (say, under US$500,000) if the construction time is short (say, less than 6 months), or for relatively simple or repetitive work (say, dredging), irrespective of whether the design is provided by the Employer or the Contractor, or whether the project involves civil, electrical, mechanical and/or construction works
- **Conditions of Contract for Construction** ('the Construction Book' or 'CONS'), which are recommended for building or engineering works where most of the design is provided by the Employer. However, the works may include some Contractor-designed civil, mechanical, electrical and/or construction works
- **Conditions of Contract for Plant and Design-Build** ('the Plant & E-B Book' or 'P&DB'), which are recommended for the provision of electrical and/or mechanical plant, and for the design and execution of building or engineering works. The scope of this book thus embraces both old Yellow and Orange Books, for all types of Contractor-designed works
- **Conditions of Contract for EPC/Turnkey Projects** ('the EPC Book' or 'EPCT'), which may be suitable for the provision on a turnkey basis of a process or power plant, of a factory or similar facility, or of an infrastructure project or other type of development, where:

- A higher degree of certainty of final price and time is required, and
- The Contractor takes total responsibility for the design and execution of the project.

Institution of Chemical Engineers (IChemE)

For over 40 years IChemE has published Forms of Contract written specifically for the process industries. Process plants are judged by their performance in operation. Process industry contracts must, therefore, also be performance based. This is the underlying philosophy of IChemE's Forms of Contract suite. It is a fundamental difference from much of the wider construction industry. The IChemE contracts are used extensively not only in the process industries, which themselves range from oil and gas to pharmaceuticals, food and fibres and many more, but also increasingly in a wide range of other industries both in the UK and abroad where their philosophy of fairness between the parties and teamwork in project execution are recognised as beneficial. All the contracts are internally consistent and have extensive Guide Notes to help in their completion and operation. They are supported by both User Guides and training courses, as well as an active User Group. Originally, the IChemE contracts were drafted to operate under English law. Their growing international use has led to the preparation of a further suite of Forms of Contract written for international use under a wide range of legal systems.

IChemE UK contracts – current editions

Lump Sum: The Red Book, Fourth Edition, 2001
Reimbursable: The Green Book, Third Edition, 2002
Target Cost: The Burgundy Book, First Edition, 2003
Minor Works: The Orange Book, Second Edition, 2003
Subcontracts: The Yellow Book, Third Edition, 2003
Subcontract for Civil Engineering Works: The Brown Book, Second Edition, 2004.

International contracts

The International Red, International Green, International Burgundy and International Yellow Books, published November 2007, have, as in all IChemE contracts, extensive Guide Notes with draft forms and notice included.

The international contracts, while immediately recognisable to users of the UK forms in their arrangement, general drafting and philosophy of cooperation and teamwork, have been fully revised to reflect the particular needs of international contracting in many and various jurisdictions. IChemE has also been rigorous in using common language across all forms wherever possible and appropriate.

Lump Sum: The International Red Book, 2007
Reimbursable: The International Green Book, 2007
Target Cost: The International Burgundy Book, 2007
Subcontracts: The International Yellow Book, 2000.

The Scottish Building Contract Committee (SBCC)

In Scotland, the Scottish Building Contract Committee (SBCC) was established in April 1964 as a result of the decisions of the McEwan Younger Committee, which in turn followed the recommendations of the Emmerson report, that closer contacts be established with central bodies in London and that a working party be appointed in Scotland. The McEwan Younger Report 'The Organisation and Practices for Building and Civil Engineering' was issued in December 1964 and SBCC adopted those recommendations and produced its first contract incorporating the 1963 edition of the RIBA Form of Contract. The purpose of the SBCC was defined as providing adjustment to English Conditions of Contract, reflecting Scottish practice and providing for differences in Scots and English law. The Scottish Building Contract Committee (SBCC), a member of JCT, has in the past prepared and published Scottish Supplements to many JCT forms of contract, for use where Scots law is to apply. SBCC now publishes integrated documents, that is a JCT contract which has been amended formally for use where Scots law is to apply. Its aims are:

- Amending, drafting and publishing forms of building contracts for use in Scotland
- Promotion of best practice in building contracts in Scotland
- Drafting and publication of guidance and practice notes, lecture notes and commentaries on relevant contractual matters
- Nomination of arbiters, mediators or third party tribunals to facilitate dispute resolution, and
- Attendance at national and other committees to promote best practice in building contracts, including the Joint Contracts Tribunal.

The SBCC does not sell its documents but acts as wholesaler to its three selling bodies, the Royal Incorporation of Architects in Scotland, the Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors and Scottish Building. Contracts drafted by the SBCC include:

- Standard Building Contract with Quantities for use in Scotland
- Standard Building Contract without Quantities for use in Scotland
- Minor Works Building Contract for use in Scotland
- Design and Build Contract for use in Scotland.

Note: the Intermediate form of contract is not available in Scotland.

Insurances, bonds, guarantees, collateral warranties

Inherent defects insurance

An inherent defect is a defect that exists, but remains undiscovered, prior to the date of practical completion but later manifests itself by virtue of actual physical damage which may not have been reasonably discovered previously. One of the recommendations of the Latham Report was that a system of compulsory inherent or latent defect insurance should be introduced into the UK. In the system currently used in the UK the client, if they consider that they have a claim for a defect, has to resort to the courts in order to try to recover damages. However, the system is not easy for clients to engage with for a number of reasons, namely:

- Is the quantum of the claim worth it? Assuming that the client wins, will the expense involved be more than the eventual award?
- There are many legal traps along the way, for example:
  - Is the claim in time? The Statute of Limitations applies to construction contracts
  - What is the exact cause? Many experts may have to be employed by the client in order to determine the cause of a defect
  - What participants were involved? The construction industry comprises a number of itinerant sub-contractors and supplies and it may be impossible to locate the party who is to blame. The system currently in the UK is one of joint and several liability, which means that lawyers usually pursue the parties with the ability to pay, namely local authorities and professionals with professional indemnity insurance.

Clearly, the burden of proof is very much on the client and it can be a very long, costly road trying to assemble the facts of the case and the parties involved. The current system can also create 'black holes' of liability in the case of leases with full repair clauses, making letting and disposal of buildings difficult as clients are unwilling to sign a lease knowing that the property could contain latent defects that have to be rectified.

Under the present insurance system of separate Professional Indemnity and Contractors All Risks, the consultants and contractors, respectively, the issue of defective workmanship is not covered. However, the contractor is the party essentially responsible for workmanship and so liability rests with the builder. The tension rises out of the fact that the contractor cannot contribute to the design and could feel that buildability and quality could be a problem within the project but there are no means whereby they can effectively be involved in such issues. The current system can therefore be seen to not deliver value or security to the client. The origin of the defect could be poor workmanship, unsuitability of materials or poor design, structural failure, etc. A number of insurance companies in the UK are now writing policies to cover the cost of remedial work to correct latent defects in finished construction projects for a period of 10–12 years after practical completion.

The difficulties facing insurers and preventing the wider use of latent defects insurance are as follows:

- Lack of statistics
- Lack of experienced underwriters
- The potential cost of failing to underwrite properly
- Difficulties in defining the cover
- Lack of demand
- The poor image of the UK construction industry with the lowest productivity and skills levels of all European states. Low labour costs tend to equate with low productivity.

The proponents of latent defects insurance argue that the presence of latent defect insurance helps to promote an environment where the design team operates in a non-adversarial relationship and in addition helps to promote buildability and predictability. In addition, the present system of professional liability reserves the function of the design to the employers' professional advisers (architects, engineers, etc.) and reduces the function of the contract to that of the simple execution of drawings, specifications and instructions.

Latent defects insurance has been available in the UK for about 20 years but only became popular from 1989 onwards when a number of UK owned insurers brought out their own policies. Until recently, the cover was limited to the repair of damage to a building caused by an inherent defect in the main structure of the building. More recently, the extent of cover offered has been widened although many believe that cover remains quite limited. It is common practice in the UK for policies to have excess, which is a proportion of any claim to be paid by the insured, of £25,000 for structural elements. The system is monitored by a series of technical audits. The technical auditors:

- Monitor the design and construction method
- Check that there is a clear demarcation of responsibilities within the design team
- Visit the site at regular intervals
- Issue a certificate of approval to the insurance company at practical completion
- Carry out triennial audit health checks on mechanical and electrical installations.

In practice, the situations encountered by the technical auditors range from the discovery of errors in the calculations for components to works on site by the contractor that contravene good practice.

The basic inherent defects policy covers actual physical damage to the whole of the building, but importantly, only that caused by inherent defects that originated in the structural elements, such as foundations, external walls, roof, etc. In addition, optional cover can be added for non-structural parts such as weather proofing and mechanical and electrical services.

Typically, a policy covers the following items:

- The cost of repairing damage in the main structure
- The cost of remedial action to prevent imminent damage
- Professional fees
- Cost of debris removal and site clearance
- Extra cost of reinstatement to comply with public authority requirements.

The policy is a first party material damage policy which essentially means that there is no need to prove negligence by a third party and cover may be freely assigned to new owners, lessees or financiers.

The benefits for construction projects and clients if latent defects cover is in place are:

- There is no need to rely on the project team's professional indemnity insurance
- The potential for confrontation is reduced
- There is more peace of mind for all the project team
- Less time and money is spent arguing about contract conditions and warranties
- Innovation is encouraged
- Everyone can concentrate on getting the actual design and construction right
- Can be a major advantage when negotiating a sale or letting.

The basic structural cover plus weatherproofing for 12 years can be obtained at rates ranging from 0.65% to 1% of the total contract value, rising to 2% for completed buildings. Total cover including all the options can cost from between 1% and 2%. The premiums are usually paid by instalments and include the fees of the technical auditors. For example, for a project with a contract price of £2m cover could cost up to £20,000.

Subrogation

A definition of subrogation is 'the right of an insurer (the insurance company) to stand in the place of an insured (the client) in order to exercise the rights and remedies which the insured has against third parties for the partial or full recovery of the amount of a claim'. In other words, the insurance companies may pursue what they perceive as negligent members of the project team in order to mitigate their losses. The client will avoid this route, but not so the project team and therefore may be subject to a second wave of litigation. What is the incentive therefore for the team to integrate and more specifically for the contractor to innovate and contribute to the design?

A way of averting the above situation is through the use of subrogation waivers. In this event, the insurance company, for the payment of additional premium, will not enforce its claim against, say, an architect, surveyor or engineer and/or contractor in the event that the latent defect is caused by their negligence. To some it is thought that if waivers are not used then there is little or no likelihood of eradicating the back-watching, trail-covering, adversarial culture within which the design consultants and the contractor will often find themselves operating.

Insurances – injury, damages and insurance

As previous stated, the construction process in general and construction sites in particular are the scene of many deaths and serious injuries. Section 6 of the JCT 05 deals with indemnities and insurances to persons, property, the works and in addition professional indemnity insurance in cases where contractor design is involved.

Injury to persons and property

The clauses referring to injury to persons and property have been significantly reworded in the JCT 05; contractors should confirm that apprenticed staff are covered and consider whether self-employed individuals are covered. Clauses 6.1 and 6.2 require the contractor to indemnify the employer for any injury to persons or property that occurs during the carrying out of the works. This clause has the effect of protecting the employer from any claim that may be made for any injury to persons or property. It should be noted that some items are specifically excluded from the indemnity provisions and these are set out in clause 6.3, for example sections of the works for which a practical completion certificate has been issued, which becomes the property of the employer.

Section 6 of JCT 05 continues with a requirement for the contractor to take out insurance to cover the items covered in clauses 6.1 and 6.2. The contractor must allow the employer to inspect the insurance policy and if it is considered to be inadequate, then the employer can take out his/her own policy and deduct the cost from any money due to the client.

Insurance of the works

Insurance of the works is dealt with by clause 6.7 of JCT 05 and gives the parties to the contract three options. Only one option should be used: Options A and B are for new buildings, whereas Option C is for alterations and works to existing buildings.

- Options A and B are similar, except that in Option A it is the contractor who takes out the policy for all risks insurance, whereas in Option B it is the employer who takes out the policy, again in joint names. Therefore the main difference between the two options is that in the case of a claim it is either the contractor or the employer who receives the insurance monies and arranges to make good any damage, etc.

It is a sign of the times that a major change in JCT 05 is a definition of terrorism which greatly widens the range of events that ought to be covered by insurance.

CDP Professional indemnity insurance

Clause 6.11 of JCT 05 is a wholly new clause to the JCT contract and requires the contractor to maintain professional indemnity insurance in respect of any contractor's designed portion and provide proof of a policy on request.

Joint Code of Practice: Fire Prevention on Construction Sites (Sixth Edition)

Clauses 6.13–6.16 of JCT 05 refer to the Joint Fire Code. The code applies to activities carried out prior to and during the procurement, construction and design process, not the completed structure, and should be read in conjunction with all current legislation.

The object of this code is the prevention of fires on construction sites. It is claimed that the majority of fires can be prevented by designing out risks, taking simple precautions and by adopting safe working practices. All parties involved must work together to ensure that adequate detection and prevention measures are incorporated during design and contract planning stages; and that the work on site is undertaken to the highest standard of fire safety thereby affording the maximum level of protection to the building and its occupants. The code is voluntary, but if applied the contractor and employer are bound to comply with it.

Bonds

A bond may be thought of as a guarantee of performance. The JCT 05 includes the provision to execute three forms of bond:

- **Advanced payment bond** – advanced payments are not as common in the UK as, for example, they are in France, where they are commonplace. In the event that the contractor requires an advanced payment from the employer, prior to work commencing on site, an advanced payment bond must guarantee to repay the advance in the case of default by the contractor. JCT 05 clause 4.8 and Schedule 6.1
- **For off-site materials and/or goods** – there may be occasions where, for example, it may be necessary to purchase in advance

materials and goods and to store them off site. The goods and materials in question may be expensive or delicate or both and therefore it is inappropriate to store them on site. Nevertheless the contractor applies for payment and in these circumstances a bond to cover the cost of the materials or goods should they be damaged or lost. JCT 05 Schedule 6.2 applies

- **Retention bond** – retention, normally at 3%, is deducted from all interim payments made to the contractor and held by the employer until practical completion and final account stages. If the contractor provides a retention bond then the retention deduction may be waived. JCT 05 clause 4.19 refers and Schedule 6.3.

In addition, other common forms of bond are:

- **Performance bond –** a performance bond is required to guarantee the performance of the contract during the works. In value terms it is usually equal for up to 10% of the value of the contract. The purpose of the performance bond is to reimburse the client in the event that the contractor does not proceed diligently
- **Tender bond –** a bond may be required by a client to ensure that contractors who express an interest in submitting a bid for a project are bona fide. The bond fund may be used in the event that a contractor fails either to submit a bid or to enter into a contract after being selected.

Guarantees – collateral warranties

Generally

A warranty is a term of a contract, the breach of which may give rise to a claim for damages but not the right to treat the contract as repudiated. It is therefore a less important term of the contract, or one which is collateral to the main purpose of the contact, the breach of which by one party does not entitle the other to treat his obligations as discharged.

Undertakings may be given that are collateral to another contract that is running side by side. They may be independent of the other contract because they cannot be fairly incorporated, or the rules of evidence hinder their incorporation, or because the main contract is defective in some way. A warranty is a term of a contract, the breach of which may give rise to a claim of damages. A transaction between two parties may be of particular concern or affect to the performance of a third party. A collateral contract may be entered into between

the third party and one of the original parties. This may be a useful device for avoiding privity of contract.

Increasingly, there are a number of parties with financial stakes in the success of a construction project, e.g. funders, tenants and purchasers who are not party to the building and other associated contracts. In the event of a third party suffering loss arising from the construction project, in the absence of a direct contract, the only remedy is a claim in the tort of negligence. However, since the 1980s the courts have severely restricted the scope of negligence claims. In order to plug this contractual gap the parties to the contract may decide to make use of collateral warranties. These are contracts in which the person or firm doing the work (the warrantor) warrants that they will properly carry out their obligations under the main contract. Therefore, in the case of defective workmanship or the like the warrantor may be sued. As with standard forms of contract there are many standard forms of collateral warranty, included those published by the JCT. It is also possible to use bespoke forms of collateral warranty for those who fear that their right to pursue a warrantor is limited by clauses in the standard forms. A classic model for the use of collateral warranties is when management contracting procurement strategy is used and the package contractors have responsibility for elements of the design. Under these circumstances, the client would procure a series of collateral warranties with the relevant package contractors. The principal disadvantage of using collateral warranties, as in the case of management contracting, is the amount of time and bureaucracy involved in procuring warranties from 20 to 30 separate organisations. It should be borne in mind that a collateral warranty should not expose the warrantor to any greater exposure than they had under the original contract and the extent of liability; usually restricted to the cost of remedial works only.

Collateral contracts

In theory the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999, which came into force in May 2000, provides an alternative to collateral warranties. One of the intensions of the act was to reduce the need for collateral warranties but initial take-up of the Act was disappointing. However, when the JCT considered the provisions of the 05 suite of contracts it was decided that provisions should be incorporated for a contractual link between the main contractor, funders,

etc. The majority of new 05 forms now include an obligation to provide warranties and a mechanism for invoking the Act. The new forms also allow for the calling of subcontract warranties in favour of such third parties and the employer. Both the JCT 05 and the JCT Design and Build 05 contain provision for collateral warranties to third parties, sub-contractor collateral warranties and third part rights.

Where there is no collateral contract found a plaintiff may still sue in negligence. However, a claim may be purely economic and this may well prove fatal in establishing a duty of care. Further, claims in contract by implied terms (for example, implied by the Sale of Goods Act 1979) are normally strict, that is have no defence, but a claim in negligence will require proof of fault.

Collateral warranties between employer and sub-contractor

When a sub-contractor enters into a domestic contract with a main contractor there is no contractual relationship between the employer and the sub-contractor. The employer could only sue the sub-contractor in tort and would have to prove that a duty of care was owed. A collateral warranty between Employers and sub-contractors allows the Employer to sue the sub-contractor for any breach of the warranty's conditions, which commonly include promises on the part of the sub-contractor to achieve a standard of design and workmanship as specified by the Employer. The terms of the warranty may impose whatever liabilities and responsibilities the Employer considers appropriate, so long as the sub-contractor, being aware of such terms, is willing to tender and enter into a sub-contract for the relevant work.

It is important, but nevertheless is sometimes overlooked, to ensure that both the obligation to enter into the warranty and its full wording form part of the legal obligations set down by the terms of the contract between the main contractor and the sub-contractor or professional party. Warranties will also address the matter of deleterious materials, to ensure that such materials are not specified or employed in the works.

Most collateral warranties include provisions for the benefit of the warranty to be assigned by the Employer to a third party, such as a purchaser or tenant. Indeed, such third parties taking a legal interest in a building require such a warranty, so as to provide themselves with redress against a contractor or designer as a result of defects

appearing within a period of time, commonly after 12 years from the completion of the original works.

PART 2 – CONTRACT ADMINISTRATION

Dayworks

As previously mentioned, the bills of quantities can be used by the quantity surveyor in the post-contract stage of a project as the basis for valuing variations in the contract. There are, however, some occasions when the nature of the variation is such that it is unfair or inappropriate to use the bills of quantities/pro rata pricing and in these circumstances dayworks are used. Clause 5.7 of the JCT 05 provides for pricing dayworks as a percentage addition on the prime cost. The use of daywork rates relieves the surveyor of having to calculate rates from basics every time daywork charges are used.

Dayworks are defined in the *Definition of Prime Cost of Daywork Carried out under a Building Contract*; a publication produced by the Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors and the Construction Confederation. In September 2007 a major revision of the definition was published, replacing the 1975 version. There are some significant differences in the new definition.

Labour

There are now two options for dealing with the prime cost of labour:

Option A – Percentage addition. This option is based on the traditional method of pricing labour in daywork and allows for:

- Guaranteed minimum weekly earnings, e.g. standard basic rate of wages, Joint Board Supplement and Guaranteed Minimum Bonus Payment
- All other guaranteed minimum payment, unless included with incidental costs, overheads and profit
- Differential or extra payments in respect of skill, responsibility, discomfort, inconvenience or risk, excluding those in respect of supervisory responsibility
- Payment in respect of holidays

- Any amounts that may become payable by the contractor to or in respect of operatives arising from the operation of the rules referred to
- Employer's contributions to annual holidays
- Employer's contributions to benefit schemes
- Employer's national insurance contributions, and
- Contribution, levy or tax imposed by statute, payable by the contractor in his capacity as an employer.

Differential or extra payments in respect of supervisory responsibility are excluded from the annual prime cost. The time of supervisory staff, principals, foremen, gangers, leading hands and similar categories, when working manually, is admissible under this section at the appropriate rate.

Option B – All-inclusive rates. This option includes not only the prime cost of labour but also includes an allowance for incidental costs, overheads and profit. The all-inclusive rates are deemed to be fixed for the period of the contract. However, where a fluctuating price contract is used, or where the rates in the contract are to be index linked, the all-inclusive rates shall be adjusted by a suitable index in accordance with the contract conditions.

Option B gives the client price certainty in terms of the labour rate used in any daywork in the contract, but there is potential that the rate will be higher, as the contractor is likely to build in a contingency to cover any unknown increases in labour rates that may occur during the contract period.

For both options, materials and plant are dealt with as follows.

Materials

- The prime cost of materials obtained for daywork is the invoice cost after discounts over 5%
- The prime cost of materials supplied from stock for daywork is the current market price after discounts over 5%.

Plant

- Where hired for the daywork it is the invoice cost after discount over 5%
- Where not hired for the daywork it is calculated in accordance with the RICS Schedule of Basic Plant Charges
- Includes for transport, erection, dismantling and qualified operators.

It is up to the quantity surveyor preparing the contract documents to decide which of the above methods is most appropriate in the circumstances. Consideration should be given to the length of the contract, whether the contract has a firm or fluctuating price. It should be noted that specialist trades may have their own different definitions.

Recording dayworks

Assuming that a variation order is issued for additional works, which cannot be valued using bill rates or pro rata pricing, then daywork rates are used. As this method of pricing has distinct advantages for the contractor, the recording and monitoring of dayworks must be strictly controlled. It will often be the case that a contractor will use a daywork sheet, see Sheet No. 28 (Figure 6.1), to record hours worked and material used carrying out additional works, in the hope that it will eventually be valued on a daywork rate basis and the final account stage and surveyors should be alert to this. If there is a clerk of works on site, then it will normally be his/her responsibility to check daywork sheets submitted by the contractor. The signature of the clerk of works will simply verify that hours, materials, etc. are correct; it does not imply that the item should be valued at daywork rates.

Fluctuations

Fluctuations or, as it is often referred to, increased costs is the mechanism by which the contractor is reimbursed for increases in the cost of labour, materials, plant, etc. that occur during the contract period. Particularly for large contracts with a long duration the impact of increased costs can be significant. The mechanism for the recovery of fluctuations in cost is based on the parties' perception of inflation risk during the duration of the contract. If the perception is that the risk of inflation is low, contractors are more likely to accept the risk and incorporate an allowance in the tender to cover fluctuations in price, effectively making the contract fixed price. However, in the lifetime of the author inflation has been running at more than 25% per annum and clearly in this situation the contractor could not accept the risk and instead opt for the option to reimburse the cost of fluctuations during the contract period. It is common practice for clients to ask contractors to submit two alternative tenders; one fixed price and a second based on a fluctuations basis. This strategy allows the employer to clearly see the amount

Yorkshire Construction plc. **Sheet No. 28**

Contract: New office block, Leeds AI No. *34*
Date *23/06/09* SI No. *67*

Description
Alter position of window W23 and build in new window.

LABOUR Hours

Name	Trade	M	T	W	Th	F	Sat	Total	Rate	Add%	£
F Blogs	*Bklayer*	*6*	*7*	*5*	*5*	*4*		*27*	*£9.72*	*70*	*446.15*

Total labour *£446.15*

MATERIALS/PLANT

	No	Unit	Rate	Add%	£
Materials					
Cement and sand	*1*	*m^3*	*12.00*	*10*	*13.20*
Window	*1*	*No*	*250.0*	*10*	*275.00*
Plant					

Total materials/plant *£288.20*
Total *£734.35*

Signed Yorkshire Construction
G. Blogs
Date *30/06/09*

Client's Representative
H. Blogs
Date *30/06/09*

Figure 6.1 Daywork sheet

that has been included by the tenderers to allow for the risk of increased costs and to decide whether this allowance is reasonable.

If applicable, fluctuations in price are calculated on a monthly basis and added to the monthly valuation. Note that retention is not held on fluctuations as the contractor may not add profit onto the fluctuation claim. Most standard forms of contract contain a fluctuation clause. The JCT 05 has three fluctuations options, which are detailed in Schedule 7 of the contract:

- **Option A**: Contribution, levy and tax fluctuations
- **Option B**: Labour and materials cost and tax fluctuations
- **Option C**: Formula adjustment

Option A – One of the common features of fluctuation provision is the establishment of a base date from which any fluctuations may be calculated. The base date is agreed between the parties to the contract and entered into the contract particulars. Option A allows the contractor to be reimbursed for increases in the following items:

- Contributions, levies and taxes payable in respect of workpeople on site
- Contributions, levies and taxes payable in respect of workpeople off site, producing materials or goods for the site
- Duties and taxes on material, electricity, fuels, etc.

When this option is used, only increases in taxes and levies, such as VAT, are reimbursed. Increases in the hourly rate of labour, etc. and increases in materials due to market conditions are not reimbursable. This approach is sometimes referred to as partial fluctuations and transfers more risk to the contractor.

Option B – Sometimes referred to as full fluctuation this option transfers more risk to the client, as he/she will be responsible for paying increases that occur in the following circumstances:

As Option A, plus:

- Increases in rates of wages for workpeople on and off site as well as site staff in accordance with appropriate wage-fixing bodies
- Transport charges
- Materials, electricity and fuels.

To assist the calculation and agreement of fluctuations a list of basis materials is prepared by the contractor, which details the prices current at the date the tender was prepared.

From the contractor's point of view the main drawback of using Options A and B and in particular B is that the amount of time and hours required to compile the fluctuations claim is considerable. In addition, the quantity surveyor has to check the claim at each valuation. In order to streamline the process a third option is available.

Option C – Formula adjustment.

The formula

For the purposes of the formula, construction work is divided into 42 work categories. The formula for adjustment of the value of work allocated to work categories under Part I of these Rules for Valuation Periods up to and including the Valuation Period in which occurs the date of practical completion is as follows:

$$C = \frac{V\,(Iv - Io)}{Io}$$

where:

C = the amount of the adjustment for the work category to be paid to, or recovered from, the contractor,

V = the value of work in the work category for the valuation period.

I_v = the index number for the work category for the month during which the mid-point of the valuation period occurred.

I_o = the index number for the work category for the base month.

There are separate formulae for specialist engineering works such as:

(i) Electrical installations
(ii) Heating, ventilating and air conditioning installations and sprinkler installations
(iii) Lift installations
(iv) Structural steelwork installations
(v) Catering equipment installations for which specialist formulae index numbers are published in the monthly bulletin.

The following items are excluded from the formula adjustment:

- Amounts for work valued as daywork under the conditions
- Amounts for articles manufactured outside the United Kingdom which the contractor is required by the employer in the contract

documents to purchase and import or have imported for direct incorporation into the works and which require no processing prior to such incorporation and which are specifically identified in the contract documents
- Amounts for work which is valued under the Conditions at a fair valuation on rates and prices current when the work is carried out or on some basis which is not referable to the level of rates, prices or amounts in the documents referred to in rules 24*a*, *b* and *c* unless made subject to Formula adjustment by the operation of rule 25
- Amounts for unfixed materials and goods for which the Contractor is entitled to payment
- Amounts for direct loss and/or expense ascertained under the Conditions
- Any other amounts payable by the Employer which are based on the actual costs incurred by the Contractor
- Amounts excluded from Formula adjustment by the operation of rules 14 and 15
- Amounts for design work where separately identified in any CDP.

Conclusion

Of all the standard forms of contract in use it would appear that the JCT 05 suite of contracts makes the most provision for the recovery of fluctuations, whereas at the other end of the spectrum the GC/Works/1 has no fluctuation provision, the assumption being that the contract will be fixed price. Of the other popular forms of contract, the NEC3, FIDIC and ICE 7th Edition, the quantity surveyor needs to specifically amend the contract conditions to include a fluctuations supplement.

Time and the contract

The construction process is fraught with risk and uncertainty that can impact on the time taken to complete the contract; inclement weather, design changes, delay on the part of the consultants, etc. can conspire to extend the agreed contract period. For the contractor this can present a problem as the JCT 05 form of contract, for example, has provision for the employer to claim damages from the contractor if the works are not completed on time as stated in the contract

particulars. The JCT 05 form of contract is specific in relation to time with the following dates being entered into Part 1 of the contract:

- Date for possession of the site (Part 1 and 2.4)
- Date for completion of the works (Part 1 and 2.30)
- Amount of liquidated damages (Part 1 and 2.32.2).

In the case of possession and completion there is provision to enter several dates to allow for contracts where sections of the site and completed works are to be handed over separately in stages. Given the above, without the provision to amend or extend, for example, the completion date, contractors would need to accept a high degree of risk and include a sum in their tender to cover the possibility of incurring damages and financial penalties. The English legal system is based on the doctrine of jurisprudence, that is to say that individual cases are decided by the courts based on the facts of each case and on decisions that have been delivered in the past. The system has the reputation in construction circles of being something of a lottery. By contrast, some European countries have a codified legal system where remedies are predetermined and consequently the forms of contract reflect this. It is thought that the JCT 05 has evolved in its present format because of the UK legal system, based on the principle that the contract should contain every possible event that could occur during a construction project together with the remedy, instead of leaving the courts to decide. Some feel that this creates a poor stating point, as it almost presumes there will be delays during the contract period and perhaps contributes to the 'them and us' ethos that has for so long been a characteristic of UK construction.

The principal issues of time are dealt with under the following headings in the JCT 05 form of contract as illustrated in Figure 6.2:

- Possession of the site and commencement of the works
- Postponement of the works
- Extension of the contract time
- Interim valuations
- Completion of the contract/practical completion
- Rectification period
- Final adjustment.

Possession of the site and commencement of the works

It is obviously important for the contractor to have prompt access to the site; this is because all other time-related events such as interim

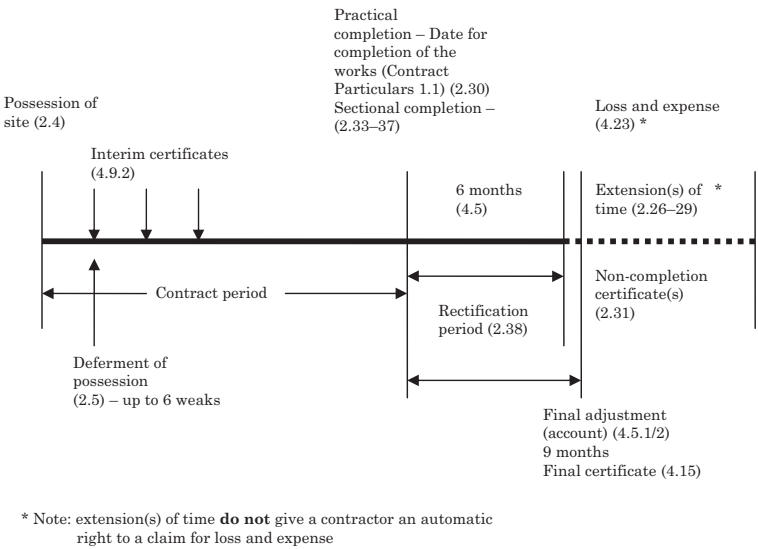


Figure 6.2 Project timeline; based on JCT 05

payments, completion and damages for non-completion are related to this point. The date when the contractor may gain access to the site is usually stated in the invitation to tender letter and once access to the site has been granted the contractor is required to begin and work 'regularly and diligently'. The date for the possession of the site is entered into the contract particulars. Once the contractor has taken possession of the site and commenced work the contract is deemed to have come into existence, even if the contract itself has not been signed.

Postponement of the works

There is provision in the JCT 05 (2.5) Contract Particulars for the employer to defer possession of the site to the contractor by up to six weeks. Any such delay will usually result in the contractor applying for an extension of time with additional costs (see below). Any delay beyond six weeks will result in the contract becoming void.

Extension of time

Extension of time provisions are required when works are delayed for the following reasons:

- To relieve the contractor from having to pay damages for completing the works later than the agreed completion date
- Without an extension of time provision, time would be considered to be 'at large' by the courts, which would make it difficult for the employer to claim liquidated damages from the contractor in the case of delayed completion.

Delays can occur for the following reasons:

- Delay on behalf of the contractor – the contractor fails perhaps due to a combination of lack of expertise, labour, etc. and so fails to complete the work on time. Under these circumstances the contractor has no real excuse for failure to complete and can expect to pay the full amount of the damages stated in the contract
- Delay caused by the employer or his/her agents and directly employed contractors – work fails to be completed on time because the architect or some other member of the design team has failed to provide information requested by the contractor on time, or contractors employed directly by the employer disrupt the main contractor's work programme. Under these circumstances the contract would be extended and in some cases would be classified as a 'relevant event' giving grounds for a claim for addition costs from the contractor
- Delay caused by circumstances outside the control of either the contractor or the employer, for example exceptionally inclement weather, force majeure, and will normally result in an extension of time being granted.

It is a common misconception that extensions of time give an automatic right for a claim for loss and expense by the contractor; this is *not* the case.

If it becomes apparent that a delay has occurred in the works then the contractor must notify the architect in writing. The notification must include the following information:

- The cause of the delay and whether in accordance with clause 2.29 the cause is a 'relevant event'. Relevant events are defined as follows:

- Variations issued by the architect
- Instructions issued by the architect concerning:
  - Discrepancies or divergence between documents such as the contract drawings and the contract bills
  - Any instructions and the contract conditions
  - Any drawings or other documents
  - The CDP documents
- Postponement of the works
- Instructions for the expenditure of a provisional sum for a previously undefined works
- Discovery of antiquities
- Non-provision of a quotation by contractor when requested by the architect
- Opening up works for inspection, unless the works or materials subsequently turn out to be faulty
- Late possession of the site
- Execution of works that have been included in the contract documents as provisional, which subsequently proves to be inaccurate in the nature or extent of work required
- Suspension of works by the contractor for non-payment by the employer
- Impediment by the employer, architect, quantity surveyor or any other person employed by the employer
- Works carried out by a statutory undertaker
- Exceptionally inclement weather
- Civil commotion, threats of terrorism, strikes, lockouts
- UK government legislation that effects the works
- Force majeure, which is usually interpreted as an 'act of God' that no one could have reasonably foreseen.

Once the cause of delay has been identified as a relevant event the architect has to decide whether the events qualify for an extension of time. If they do, then the architect issues an extension of time within 12 weeks of the application by the contractor. The architect is required to note the extension of time that has been allocated to each relevant event when issuing an extension of time certificate. If the works are delayed and a relevant event is not identified as the cause, then the contractor may be liable to pay liquidated damages as set out in the contract particulars; for details see Completion of the contract/practical completion below.

Interim valuations

Most standard forms of contract have a provision to pay the contractor on a stage payment or quantum meruit basis, as the work proceeds. Without this provision the contractor would have to wait until the end of the contract before receiving payment and this would clearly be unworkable from a cash flow perspective. The stage payments or interim accounts are prepared usually on a monthly basis by the contractor's surveyor and the client's quantity surveyor. Until recently it had been common practice in the construction industry for the contractor not to release money to domestic subcontractors until the contractor received payment, a system referred to as 'pay when paid'. This practice caused many problems and disputes particularly between contractors and domestic subcontractors, as domestic subcontractors are not informed when the contractor receives payment and the contractor could withhold payment for weeks or longer. In 1996 the Housing Grants, Construction and Regeneration Act (referred to as the Construction Act) made pay when paid clauses unenforceable. The Construction Act contained the following provisions for all construction contracts:

- Pay when paid clauses are unenforceable
- Payment by instalments for all contracts over 45 days' duration
- The contractor is to be informed when payment is due as well as the amount
- The contractor is to be informed in the event of the client is to withholding payment
- The contractor has the right to withdraw from the site if not paid within a specified period.

When preparing an interim valuation the following items may be included, if appropriate:

- Preliminaries as included in the bills of quantities
- Measured works as included in the bills of quantities
- Value of variations and extra works
- Work carried out by nominated subcontractors and suppliers
- Materials on site
- Materials off site
- Fluctuations
- Approved loss and expense claims.

The clauses dealing with payments on account in JCT 05 are as follows.

Preliminaries

A proportion of the preliminaries is included with the interim payment, depending on the nature of the item. For valuation purposes, preliminaries are grouped into various types:

- Offices, canteens and storage sheds. Items under this category will be assumed to have been priced on the following basis:
  Set-up costs – paid as part of Valuation No. 1
  Hire cost per week – paid at a weekly rate during the contract period
  Heating and cleaning – paid at a weekly rate during the contract period
  Clearing away – paid at the end of the contract
  For valuation purposes the contractor will be expected to provide detail of the above costs. The amount included in an interim certificate for this and similar items is not related to value of the works
- Scaffolding. This item will not be required until way into the contract period but will have costs similar to offices and canteens with initial costs, adaptation costs and removal costs
- Water for the works. Items such as this are valued as a percentage of the contract sum and will be paid in relation to the interim amount
- Site supervision. Items such as site supervision will be assumed to have been priced on a time-related basis. The amount to be included in valuations is calculated by dividing the total by the number of months.

Measured work

The contractor's surveyor and the client's quantity surveyor will make a visual estimation of the amount of the works that have been completed on the day of the valuation. By using the bills of quantities as the reference, the value of the work can be calculated. Including and paying for work as part of the valuation does not indicate that the work has been properly executed; that responsibility remains with the architect. Usual practice is for the contractor's surveyor to prepare the valuation for the client's quantity surveyor to check. It is important that the figures are checked by the quantity surveyor as any overpayment could prove to be embarrassing if the contractor goes out of business. The checking process is particularly important as the project reaches the final stages; the final account should indicate an amount due to the contractor, not an amount due from the contractor!

Variations

It is common for the architect to issue variations to the contract works. As these variations are measured and agreed then the value of them should be added to the valuation. These measured and agreed variations will form the basis of the final account.

Nominated and named sub-contractors and suppliers

Nominated named sub-contractors and suppliers are appointed as a result of the adjustment of prime cost sums or privisional sums. Shortly before the valuation date the sub-contractors and suppliers will submit their own interim valuations to the main contractor and these are included in the interim payment. Sub-contractors and suppliers payments are paid to the main contractor, who then pays them in turn, less any agreed discounts. Sub-contractors and suppliers are informed of the amount due and the main contractor must pay them within a prescribed period; if the main contractor withholds payment, then there is provision for the employer to pay them directly. The employer also has the authority to request proof that payment has been made. Prime cost sums, if used as previously described, also have the provision for the main contractor to include provision for profit and attendance; these items should also be adjusted and included.

Materials on site

As the contract progresses the main contractor and sub-contractors will have materials stored on site prior to their inclusion in the works. Such materials should be included in the valuation provided that:

- They are in accordance with the specification
- They are intended for the works and not being stored for another contract
- They are not delivered before they are required
- They are properly stored
- They are the property of the contractor.

As part of the valuation process the contractor's surveyor prepares a list of materials and these are then priced at current rates or invoiced. Once paid for the materials become the property of the employer.

Materials off site

Sometimes it is inappropriate for large, delicate or expensive items of plant to be stored on site. These items may be included in the valuation provided that the client's quantity surveyor visits the place where they are stored and is satisfied that the materials are labelled for delivery for the site.

Fluctuations

Many standard forms of contract include the provision to calculate and include increases in the cost of labour and materials, for example the formula approach included in the JCT 05.

Approved loss and expense claims

As a project progresses there may be claims by the contractor for loss and expense. If the claim is approved by the architect and valued and agreed, any sums due should be included too.

Retention

Most standard forms of contract include the provision for a percentage of interim payments to be withheld by the client as an incentive to complete the works timeously. This percentage, usually between 3% and 5%, is deducted from the interim valuation up until practical completion, when half is released back to the contractor and the percentage is reduced by half. The final percentage or moiety is paid on the settlement of the final account. The client has no obligation to invest the retention money, but may be required to keep it in an identified bank account. Retention is also deducted from payments due to nominated sub-contractors. However, fluctuations are not subject to retention.

Completion of the contract/Practical completion

Completion of the works is said to be when the works are practically complete. This is the point at which the architect considers that the works are complete, sufficient for the client to take possession as use the building, although it may be that there are still some minor defects of works to complete. It is the point at which the works can be used safely by the employer for the purposes for which they were designed. It is possible to arrange for sectional completion of

the works, where, for example, a self-contained portion of the work is handed over to the employer, while work continues on the remaining sections. In cases such as these, there may be several periods of final measurement, release of retention, etc. and they require careful monitoring by the quantity surveyor, particularly where nominated sub-contractors are also involved.

The issue of a certificate of practical completion is significant as practical completion:

- Is the start of the period of final measurement for the final account. The process for the preparation of the final account is described in section 8. The JCT 05 allows a total of nine months for the quantity surveyor to receive the necessary information from the contractor and prepare the final account
- The first moiety of the retention fund is released to the contractor. Half of the retention held on interim certificates is handed back to the contractor. It is interest free, the employer having no obligation to invest it and any valuations that are in place between practical completion and the final adjustment (final account) will only attract a retention percentage of half that stated in the contract particulars
- The employer takes over the responsibility for insuring the works. Once the works are handed over to the client, he/she becomes solely responsible for insuring the works as the contractor's liability ceases
- Once the certificate of practical completion has been issued the contractor can no longer be charged liquidated damages
- Is the start of the defects liability or rectification period.

Defects liability period/rectification period

The defects liability period, or as it is referred to in JCT 05, the rectification period, runs from the issue of the Certificate of Practical Completion for a period of six months; this may be longer in the case of mechanical and electrical installations. The purpose of this period is for any defects or snags that come to light once the building is handed over to be rectified by the contractor to the satisfaction of the architect and the client. The architect has 14 days after the expiry of the rectification period to present the contractor with a list of defects or snags after which the contractor has a reasonable time to make good the defects. Assuming that the defects are rectified the architect then issues a Certificate of Making Good after which the second

moiety of the retention is released, even though the final account may not yet be agreed.

Final adjustment (final account)

Although the period for preparing the final adjustment (or as it is more traditionally referred to the final account) is stated in the contract, in practice it can often take longer for the final figure to be prepared. This can be due to a number of reasons, such as change of personnel, lack of information, etc. but perhaps the fact that there is no penalty for the late preparation of the final account is the greatest contributory factor. In addition, pre-contract work often takes precedence.

Damages for non-completion

If the contractor fails to complete the works on time without the issue of an extension of time certificate then a breach of contract will have taken place and the contractor will become liable to pay damages at the rate entered into the Contract Particulars. It is important that the sum entered is a reasonable pre-estimate of the financial costs incurred by the employer by the non-completion of the works and not an intimidating overestimate. Consider a new hotel complex being constructed in time for the opening of the 2012 London Olympics; if the project was not in fact completed until after the event had taken place then the employer would suffer considerable loss of income and should therefore be entitled for financial recompense. This is dealt with in clauses 2.30–2.32 in the JCT 05. Items in the sum claimed by the employer could include, for example, loss of income, costs in connection with transferring guests to other accommodation, additional professional fees, etc. A considerable amount for damages in such a circumstance has to be justifiable and must not be regarded as punitive or seen as a punishment for the contractor, as such a sum will not be enforced by the courts. Over time various tests have been suggested to determine whether the rate of damages constitute a penalty. It will be held to be a penalty if:

- The sum stipulated is for an extravagant and unconscionable amount in comparison with the greatest loss that could have conceivably be proved to have followed from a breach
- A single lump sum is payable by way of compensation on the occurrence of one or more or all of several events, some of which may be considered serious and others trifling.

Interestingly, if the amount of loss entered into the Contract Particulars for Liquidated Damages is exceeded in the event of a delayed completion then the liquidated damages amount will not normally be increased, although see also *Bath and North East Somerset District Council* v. *Mowlem plc* (2004) EWCA Civ. 115. Clearly, the amount of liquidated damages is one of the many factors that a contractor should take into account when deciding whether or not to submit a bid for the project. If a contractor wishes to pass to a sub-contractor the risk under the main contract of paying liquidated damages, he may choose to do so either by a subcontract liquidated damages clause or by giving notice of the provisions of the main contract.

Clause 2.32 of the JCT 05 allows the employer to withhold or deduct liquidated damages or require the contractor to pay liquidated damages at the rate stated in the Contract Particulars. From the quantity surveyor's viewpoint, if there is a chance of liquidated damages being applied, caution should be taken when preparing the interim valuations and final account as it is obviously easier to withhold damages from monies due to a contractor rather than go cap in hand to recover them from monies already paid!

Insolvency

Insolvency is a generic term, covering both individuals as well as companies. If you cannot pay your business debts when they become due, or if the assets of your business are less than your debts, your business is insolvent. The debt involved may not necessarily be a large sum; any outstanding debt in excess of £750.00 can be used as the basis of a winding-up petition. Unless you pay those debts quickly, then the insolvency will lead to bankruptcy or winding up. Bankruptcy applies to individuals such as sole traders and those that have given personal guarantees for loans. Winding up and liquidation apply to companies. Becoming bankrupt may involve restrictions, but the situation is now less onerous for individuals whose businesses have failed through no fault of their own. Most are discharged from this process within 12 months although there can be longer-term effects on their credit rating. Insolvency rules differ slightly in different parts of the United Kingdom and there are separate departments that deal with insolvency in Scotland and Northern Ireland. On average, during the period 1998–2008, in England and Wales there were approximately 13,000 company liquidations and 25,000 individual insolvencies per annum and this to some extent is a barometer of the country's economic health. In Scotland and

Northern Ireland the number of insolvencies and liquidations, year on year, vary more widely. There are a number of pieces of legislation governing insolvency including the Insolvency Acts 1986 and 2000.

Liquidation of the contractor

The unique structure of the UK construction industry has been discussed previously and it is unfortunate that this structure, with a proliferance of sole traders, means that construction often heads the insolvency league. The factors that make construction companies vulnerable to insolvency are:

- The large number of sole traders, often set up during times of plentiful workload with little regard to how the business will cope in leaner times. The majority of work is now carried out by sub-contractors, who will be squeezed by the main contractors when times get tough and this may force them into liquidation
- The practice of winning work via competitive tendering with unsustainable profit margins, in the hope that profit can be generated during the contract through extra works or claims for loss and expense
- The volatile nature of demand for construction works, making it hard to secure continuity of work
- Taking on too much work and being unable to carry it out because of insufficient cash flow to purchase materials or hire labour.

Section 8 of the JCT 05 is devoted to insolvency and termination of the contract and contains a major change to the JCT 98 version of the contract. For, if the contractor becomes insolvent, the employer can terminate the contract immediately by notice. The onus is therefore on the employer to act swiftly and decisively in the instance of the insolvency of the contractor. This is a major change to JCT 98 where determination occurred immediately without any action from the employer in the majority of cases; however, doubts were cast on the validity of the JCT 98 provision, as it seemed to infringe a fundamental principle of bankruptcy law. The contractor is also required to inform the employer if he is approaching insolvency. No further payments need be made to the contractor until the total financial implications are known. All domestic sub-contractors are automatically determined on the termination of the main contract.

Of course it is not just the contractor who may become insolvent, the employer or the professional advisers may also become insolvent and this will be discussed later.

Consider the following scenario

Having borrowed against a business plan that has not worked, a building contractor finds that it is suffering cash flow problems. In an effort to survive, the company reports its problems to its bank and the bank asks for more information on the problems the company faces. Struggling with the problem the directors find it difficult to produce the information required by the bank. Often the accountancy and reporting systems of small contractors are not robust and a lot of time is needed to work out where the company is going, what the depth of the problems is and why the necessary reporting to the bank is delayed.

The company's problems may be manifested in the following ways:

- The company's agreed overdraft is constantly at the limit
- Cheques that are written by the company are returned by the bank due to insufficient funds because of cash flow problems as money is not being received by the company.

After several weeks or months of problems the contractor's bank may become concerned and ask the contractor to reduce their exposure to risk:

- By asking that the directors increase their guarantees and securities. The majority of small building contractors and sub-contractors have their overdrafts secured against second charges on their director's homes or other assets. Additional guarantees may be required in order for continued bank support. It should be noted that the attitude of banks towards levels of exposure and debt vary considerably according the state of the construction market and the economy in general. It is not uncommon for funds to be agreed when times are good only to be withdrawn at short notice, as happened during the so-called 'credit crunch' of 2008 and the market downturn in 1990. This withdrawal of funding by banks can happen very quickly as they seek to protect its shareholders!
- By assuming that it is not possible for the contractor to furnish additional securities. In this case the bank will ask for investigating accountants to look at the business. Normally, this is a large firm of accountants who have their own insolvency practitioners. During the period the business continues to trade. The insolvency practitioners will ascertain whether:

  - The business is viable
  - The business is stable and has a long-term future
  - The bank's exposure is sufficiently covered in the event of failure
- If the insolvency practitioner considers that the company is in serious risk of failure and that the bank will lose money by recommending to the bank that they appoint an administrator or a receiver.

An **administrator** is appointed and the company goes into administration, when it is thought that business may be rescued and may survive as a going concern, the company will be run on a day-to-day basis by the administrator. Note: once a company has gone into liquidation an administration order cannot be made but, once an administration order has been issued, no liquidation or winding-up procedures can be commenced; in effect giving all concerned a breathing space.

A **receiver** is a civil servant in the Insolvency Service and as an officer of the court he/she will be notified by the court of the bankruptcy or winding-up order. The receiver will then be responsible through his/her staff for administering the initial stage, at least, of the insolvency case. This stage includes collecting and protecting any assets and investigating the causes of the bankruptcy or winding-up.

Liquidation is the process of selling the company's assets in order to raise money to clear the contractor's debts. Once sold, the proceeds will be distributed in strict order as follows:

- Secured creditors, with fixed charges such as banks and finance houses
- Liquidator's fees
- Preferential creditors, which rank equally for payment:
  - Inland Revenue
  - Customs and Excise (VAT)
  - Social security payments
  - Pension scheme payments
  - Employees' salaries for up to four months
- Secured creditors without a fixed charge
- Unsecured creditors
- Dividends, if applicable
- Repayment of shareholders' capital, if applicable
- Surplus assets proportioned among shareholders, if applicable.

As can be seen, this is a very long list and given that the contractor has probably gone into liquidation because of debt or lack of funds, the creditors towards the end of the list have little chance of recovering anything owed to them. This factor should be borne in mind by the quantity surveyor if he/she suspects that a contractor is about to go into liquidation and will be discussed in greater detail later.

How should the quantity surveyor deal with insolvency of the contractor?

As mentioned previously, although a contractor can stop trading, literally overnight, there are usually tell-tale signs that all is not well and if these are noticed then the quantity surveyor must be prepared to act quickly if the worse happens. The advanced warnings of financial problems are:

- Sub-contractors complain of delayed payment or non-payment
- The progress of the work may slow as the contractor finds it difficult to purchase material and builders merchants may agree to supply materials only on a cash only basis instead of a monthly credit account
- Attempts are made to maximise the interim valuations and include items and materials ahead of their incorporation of the works. It is vital that the quantity surveyor does not overcertify at interim valuations, as recovery of the money may prove to be problematic.

Assuming that the quantity surveyor arrives at the office one morning to discover that a contractor on one of his projects has ceased trading, he/she must take the following immediate steps:

- Secure the site, if necessary by employing a security firm. This action is necessary as sub-contractors and other creditors may try to remove material and plant from site; some of these materials may have been paid for and therefore will be the property of the employer
- Once the site is secure an accurate assessment must be made as to the state of the works and how much is required for completion. This is usually done by quantity surveyors appointed by the receiver
- Stop all payments to the contractor
- A check should be made to ensure that the works continue to be insured

- If the contract required the contractor to take out a performance bond, the underwriters should be informed.

The way forward will depend on the stage that the works have reached and the need for a quick completion. If the works are substantially complete then perhaps the best way forward is to offer the remaining work to another contractor on a cost plus or fixed fee basis. If, on the other hand, work had only recently started then the original bill of quantities, assuming that there was one, can be used as a basis to obtain new bids. The most awkward situation is where the project is significantly advanced, with several months' work to complete. In this situation the most accurate approach is to prepare an addendum bill of quantities, this can then be used to negotiate with another contractor or as the basis for obtaining bids.

The final account for a project where the original contractor has ceased trading is more complicated than normal. First, it is necessary to prepare a hypothetical account, as if liquidation had not occurred, then calculate the actual cost comprising the costs of the original contractor together with the costs associated with completion of the project. Any surplus or shortfall will result in a payment or recovery by the client.

Employer's liquidation

Of course, it is not just the contractor that could cease trading, the employer can also face financial problems and in these circumstances the contractor needs protection. The legal process will be as described earlier depending on whether the client is an individual or a company. The signs of potential difficulties are:

- The employer fails to pay interim certificates on time
- The employer refuses to pay for portions of the works on the grounds that there are defects that are unfounded.

Contractors would be advised to carry out credit checks on employers, particularly those they have not worked for previously, to try to avoid financial problems.

Clause 8.10 JCT 05 states that in the event of employer insolvency the contractor may give notice to the employer that the contract is terminated. The notice is best given to the liquidator and is sent by recorded delivery. Clause 8.12 sets out the entitlement of the contractor once termination has occurred as follows:

- The contractor is entitled to remove from site any temporary buildings, plant, tools and equipment belonging to the contractor
- The contractor is allowed to remove from site all goods and site materials.

Within a time limit prescribed in clause 8.12.3 an account must be prepared that details the following items:

- The total value of work properly executed
- Any sums in respect of direct loss and expense
- The reasonable costs associated with the removal of temporary buildings, materials, etc.
- The cost of materials that were ordered prior to liquidation and not yet delivered to site, but nevertheless have to be paid for.

What happens to retention?

The JCT 05 seeks to protect the retention fund by establishing that the employer's interest in the monies is fiduciary as trustee on behalf of the contractor. The contractor may request that retention monies are held in a separate account in the joint names of the contractor and the employer to protect the contractor's interests in the event of the insolvency of the contractor.

Termination

In addition to liquidation of one of the parties Section 8 also sets out the other circumstances when the contract can be terminated. For the employer grounds for termination include:

- Suspending work
- Failure to proceed regularly and diligently
- Refusal to comply with written instructions
- Subletting or assigning work without consent
- Non-compliance with CDM regulations.

For the contractor grounds for termination include:

- Failure to pay certificates when due
- Obstructing the issue of instructions or certificates
- Obstructing the subletting or assignment of work.

Termination of the works should only be taken as a last resort as the consequences have such an impact on the eventual completion and cost of the works could be far reaching. Better the devil you know!

Loss and expense claims

Often one of the most contentious parts of the final account is a claim submitted by the contractor for loss and expense incurred while carrying out the works. A claim is a method of recompensing the contractor for proven loss and expense that is not covered in any other way. There is evidence to suggest that some contractors win work on very slender profit margins, secure in the knowledge that there will be the opportunity to submit a claim for loss and expense due to matters materially affecting the regular progress of the work. To many, compiling a claim for loss and expense is something of a black art and it is true to say that traditionally many claims have been submitted by a contractor on the poorest of back-up information and records, only to be agreed by the client! Section 4 of the JCT 05 form of contract makes provision for the contractor to submit a loss and expense and stipulates that the contractor must inform the architect as soon as it is apparent that loss and expense have been incurred and that all necessary support data should be provided. The following items are considered to be 'relevant matter' and therefore form the basis of a claim:

- Variations
- Postponement of the works
- Adjustment of provisional sums for undefined work
- Opening up work for inspection that subsequently proves to be in accordance with the contract
- Discrepancy and divergence between the contract documentation (quantity surveyors beware), bills of quantities and drawings are specifically mentioned
- Suspension of works by the contractor for non-payment by the employer
- Execution of works that have been included in the contract documents as provisional, which subsequently proves to be inaccurate in the nature or extent of work required
- Any impediment by the employer, architect, quantity surveyor or any other person employed by the employer.

The claim is based on the period certified by the architect as being a justified extension of time in accordance with the terms of a contract. When preparing a claim a contractor will consider the following items during the extension period:

- The costs associated with keeping the site operational
- Head office overheads for the period of the claim
- Finance charges: any additional expenses associated with funding the project for the extended period
- Fluctuation in accordance with the contract for the extension period
- Costs associated with uneconomic working; the contractor may have to carry out the works in an out-of-sequence way due to a relevant event, as listed previously
- Loss of profit caused by the impact of the relevant event. It has been hotly debated as to whether a claim for loss of profit is admissible and must be carefully prepared and documented if it is to be successful.

Perhaps two of the most important watchwords when preparing a claim are transparency and records.

Dispute resolution

England and Wales are common law countries with an adversarial court system and construction law exists as a recognised legal specialism.

Unfortunately, all too often in the construction industry, the parties to the contract reach a point where a dispute cannot be resolved and in these circumstances the traditional approaches to finding a solution have been litigation and arbitration. The difficulty with both of these approaches is that they are very expensive and time consuming and cannot be commenced until after the contract has finished or work has stopped. It has long been the view that litigation in particular is a bit like playing Russian roulette with little certainty over the outcome or the quantum of the award. Very serious consideration should be given by all parties before going down this route. In England and Wales, the Technology and Construction Court (TCC), formerly known as the Official Referees' Court, is a specialist court that deals principally with technology and construction disputes. The full range of work undertaken by the TCC is set out in CPR Part 60 and the accompanying practice direction. TCC judgements which may be of interest to practitioners are accessible on the BAILII website. Mr Justice Jackson is the judge in charge of the TCC; he is available to manage and try TCC cases either in London or at any of the court centres mentioned above.

In an attempt to simplify matters an approach known as alternative dispute resolution (ADR) has been introduced and the past few

years have seen ADR pass from the realms of quirky to mainstream. Following the recommendations of the Latham Report and the UK Housing Grants and Regeneration Act 1996 fundamental changes have taken place in the processes and procedures of dispute resolution. JCT 05 still provides for litigation to be the default mechanism for dispute resolution; however, it allows the parties to give serious consideration to mediating any dispute, particularly if the project is in its early stages and there are sound reasons for avoiding adversarial processes. Two wholly new clauses have been added to Section 9 – Settlement of Disputes:

9.1 Mediation: this clause is a statement that the parties will give consideration to mediation to settle disputes. It is not an obligation that they must do so, or that they must even consider doing so. Mediation is a voluntary non-binding process in which a neutral Mediator assists the parties to attempt to achieve a negotiated settlement. Mediation thus retains the characteristic of negotiation that gives the parties full control over how their dispute is to be resolved, but the Mediator is there to help them through any impasses that may occur, and help them explore various options for settlement. The approach of the Mediator is generally to try to get the parties to look at the dispute differently; to look forward rather than backward; to consider where their future interests and needs lie, rather than their strict legal entitlements and wants. The Mediator also has the potential, from what he learns from the parties during the mediation, to expand the settlement options available to the parties. In addition to meeting the parties together, the Mediator also holds separate private meetings with each party, known as caucuses. All of the proceedings in mediation are private and confidential. It is usually stipulated in the mediation agreement that the Mediator may not be called as a witness in any subsequent proceedings, but a special confidentiality applies to matters disclosed in caucus. The Mediator undertakes not to divulge them to the other party unless expressly permitted by the party who has made the disclosure. In that way, so long as the Mediator has gained the trust and confidence of the parties, he can get a better understanding of each party's situation, motivation and aspirations, and with this knowledge, may discover novel ways in which each party may satisfy the interests of the other. The Mediator is however merely the catalyst. It is ultimately for the

parties to decide whether any of the avenues suggested by the Mediator will satisfy their interests sufficiently to resolve the dispute.

One of the strengths of mediation is that the solution to the dispute may be very far removed from the respective contractual rights and obligations of the parties. So long as the proposed resolution is seen to be of equivalent value by the recipient party, it will often be accepted in settlement of the dispute. Thus a monetary debt may be discharged by the provision of a useful service instead, which is an outcome not possible where the decision-making process is delegated to a neutral third party. Such novel solutions are also unlikely in negotiation due to the inherent unwillingness of opponents to share their personal and business information with each other, but they may be more candid with a Mediator in whom they have confidence.

A typical mediation will commence with the Mediator explaining the process to the parties and getting them to explain to him and each other their views of the issues that need to be resolved. Instead of seeking to enforce the parties' respective rights and obligations as he perceives them, the Mediator will attempt to build a picture of the parties' interests, needs and available resources, to see if the available resources of one might satisfy the needs of the other, and vice versa, to the extent necessary to resolve the dispute. The Mediator in caucus will also conduct reality checks with each party separately to test the viability of their initial positions, and gently try to persuade them away from their positional bargaining stances towards a more principled negotiation approach.

9.2 Adjudication: the JCT 05 adopts the Scheme for Construction Contracts (England and Wales) Regulations 1998.

An Adjudicator considers the submissions of the parties, and the evidence adduced, and issues a binding interim decision within a fixed period of time. The Adjudicator's Decision is binding, and must be implemented, until such time as the dispute is finally decided by litigation, by arbitration (if the contract so provides), or by agreement. Thus the loser in adjudication must pay what is ordered to the winner, even if it is the loser's intention to refer the dispute afresh to litigation or arbitration.

Under the statutory adjudication system introduced by the Housing Grants, Construction and Regeneration Act 1996, a

Construction Adjudicator in the UK has 28 days from the date the dispute is referred to give his Decision as to how that dispute should be resolved on an interim basis. This prompt decision-making process has become very popular in the UK, and is now the principal method of resolving disputes within the UK Construction Industry. Although interim in nature, the Adjudicator's Decision is frequently taken as finally resolving the dispute.

The Adjudicator is usually immune from suit by either of the parties, but is not immune from being sued by third parties who may be adversely affected by his Decision. Thus Adjudicators often seek an indemnity from the parties in respect of third party actions.

9.3 Arbitration is a private system of dispute resolution with statutory backing that is frequently used as an alternative to litigation in connection with construction disputes, where it is considered desirable that the skills of the decision-maker should be more heavily biased towards relevant technical issues, rather than purely legal issues. However, to discharge their duties satisfactorily, good arbitrators need a high degree of competence in both technical and legal matters. Arbitration is similar to litigation in the sense that the award of the arbitrator is usually final and binding on the parties. Depending on the jurisdiction within which the arbitration is held, the grounds for subsequent appeal to the courts are generally very limited. Enforcement of the arbitrator's award is usually through the courts of whatever jurisdiction the winner chooses to enforce it, which may not necessarily be the jurisdiction where the arbitration was held. Thus arbitration has considerable attraction in international disputes, where the loser in the arbitration may not hold sufficient assets in the national jurisdiction where the arbitration was held. The parties to arbitration may have their differences settled in private, and the existence and result of the arbitration will usually remain confidential so long as there is no need to enforce the award in open court.

Arbitration is consensual. It cannot be imposed on the other party, as litigation can, without the prior agreement of the other party and has the potential to be quicker and cheaper than litigation, but the realisation of this potential rather depends on the procedure adopted by the arbitrator, the parties and the parties'

legal representatives, if any. There is no obligation on the parties to employ legally qualified representatives, but they frequently do. In such circumstances, there may be pressure from the party representatives for a procedure that mimics litigation. Unless this is controlled, the flexibility and potential economy of arbitration over litigation will be lost. There is generally no set procedure in arbitration, unless it is a scheme arbitration tailored to a particular type of dispute. More usually it is up to the parties and the arbitrator between them to customise the procedure to suit the needs of the particular case.

In arbitration there is not, nor should there be, any such thing as judgment in default. Notwithstanding a party's refusal to participate in the arbitration when it arises, the claimant is, or should be, always required to satisfy the arbitrator on the balance of probability that its claim is valid. To the extent that it fails to do that, the claim should fail, whether or not the respondent participates. The arbitrator is expected to apply the rules of natural justice which involves firstly having no personal interest in the outcome of the case, and secondly allowing each party a reasonable opportunity to state its case and to know and answer the case against it. This second requirement places a duty on the arbitrator to give equal attention to each party's submissions, and not to rely on any special knowledge of his own, of which the parties may be unaware, without first putting it to the parties and allowing them to comment.

As previously indicated, the arbitrator's award is enforceable through the courts. When asked to enforce, the court is not permitted to interfere with the contents of the award, and will confine its enquiries to whether the award was made pursuant to a valid arbitration agreement by a validly appointed arbitrator. Thus the court will generally not attempt to check whether the award accords to its own view of the issues, and will simply enforce, or not enforce, according to its view of the validity of the arbitration agreement and the validity of the arbitrator's appointment.

Thus an award may be challenged on the basis that the arbitrator did not have the necessary jurisdiction to make the award he has made. In very exceptional circumstances, a party may also, but only with leave of the court, appeal against the award on grounds of an error of law within the award.

PART 3 – SITE ORGANISATION

Welfare facilities

Construction site workers need adequate toilet and washing facilities, a place to warm up and eat their food and somewhere to store clothing. The minimum welfare facilities are set out in the Construction (Health, Safety and Welfare) Regulations 1996.

Planning the site layout

When planning the layout of the site the following factors should be taken into account:

- Security
- Space available
- Site accommodation and welfare facilities
- Temporary services; water, drainage, power; 110, 240 and 415 volt, if required
- Access to the site, impact on traffic
- Storage and security of materials: millions of pounds a year are wasted due to inadequate storage of materials. Also materials storage should be planned to avoid the necessity of double or even triple handling. Sub-contractors' requirements must also be considered and provided for
- Plant: depending on the nature of the contract and the degree of mechanical plant being used provision should be considered to allow the free movement of dumper trucks, excavators, etc. as well as bases for tower cranes
- The sequence of site operations.

The layout of the site will depend on its location. On a cramped city centre site, surrounded by busy roads and other buildings, it is often necessary to stack the site accommodation to reduce its footprint. If possible the site accommodation should be placed on areas that will eventually be landscaped and as close to the site entrance as possible. In the case of refurbishment contracts it may be possible to use part of the existing building for accommodation.

Legislation governing the provision of site accommodation and welfare facilities is:

- Construction (Health, Safety and Welfare) Regulations 1996
- Offices Shops and Railway Premises Act 1963
- Health and Safety at Work Act 1974
- Fire Precautions (Factories, Offices, Shops and Railway Premises) Order 1989.

Planning and programming

There are a number of techniques open to a contractor to prepare a programme for the various activities involved in the construction of a new building. The principles behind programming are to plan and illustrate:

- When activities start and finish
- What activities must be completed before another can start
- What activities can be carried out simultaneously
- What activities cannot start until another is finished.

These techniques vary in their complexity and sophistication as shown in Table 6.1.

The bar chart is arranged with the contract period in weeks running vertically with the breakdown of activities arranged horizontally down the left-hand side. The weeks where the activities are planned to take place are then shaded in as shown. The advantages with this technique are:

- Easy to understand and widely used
- Illustrates the relationship between activities and where activities overlap
- Easy to compile.

Table 6.1 Bar chart or Gantt chart

Year	**2009**							
Month	**October**				**November**			
Activity week	6	13	21	28	3	10	17	24
Clear site								
Excavation								
Brickwork								

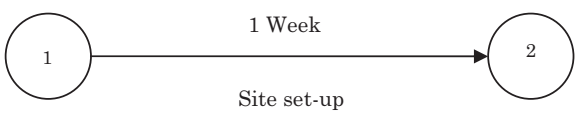
The disadvantages are:

- Simplistic presentation that does not allow the interrelationship of complex process to be shown.

Critical path analysis and PERT charts

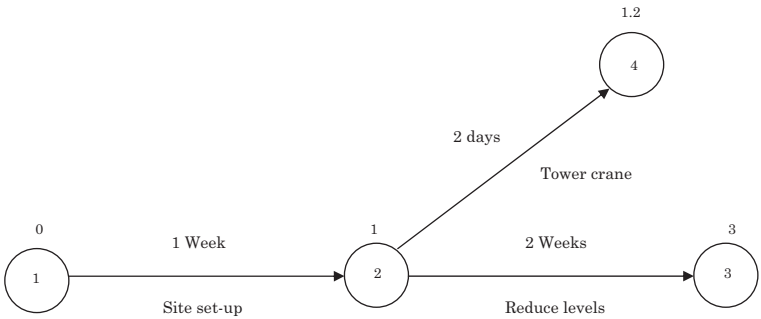
Critical path analysis (CPA) and PERT were developed in the 1950s to control large defence projects. They act as the basis both for preparation of a schedule and for resource planning. They enable the commercial manager to monitor achievement of project goals and help see where remedial action needs to be taken to get back on course. The benefit of using CPA over Gantt charts is that CPA formally identifies tasks which must be completed on time for the whole project to be completed on time (these are the tasks on the critical path) and also identifies tasks which can be delayed for a while, if resources need to be redeployed to catch up elsewhere. The disadvantage of CPA is that the relation of tasks to time is not as immediately obvious as in Gantt charts and this can make them more difficult to understand. A CPA is prepared as follows:

- List all activities in the plan
- For each activity show the:
  - Earliest start date
  - Estimated length of time
  - Whether parallel or sequential
  - If sequential, show which stage they depend on
- Plot the activities as a circle and arrow diagram:



The above shows the start event (circle 1) and the completion of the site set-up task (circle 2). The arrow between them shows that the activity of carrying out the site set-up should take one week.

- Where one activity cannot start until another activity has been completed start the arrow for the dependent activity at the completion event circle of the previous activity as follows:



Here the activities of 'Tower crane' and 'Reduce levels' cannot be started until 'Site set-up' has been completed.
Also note:

- Within CPA activities are referred to by numbers in circles at each end
- Activities are not drawn to scale
- The numbers above the circles are the earliest possible time that this stage in the project will be reached.

PERT is a variation of CPA that takes a slightly more sceptical view of time estimates made for each project. To use it, estimate the shortest possible time each activity will take, the most likely length of time and the longest time that might be taken, if the activity takes longer than expected. Then use the following formula to calculate the time to use for each project stage:

$$\frac{\text{shortest time} + 4 \times \text{likely time} + \text{longest time}}{6}$$

This helps to bias time estimates away from the unrealistically short timescales often assumed.

7

Final account

FINAL ACCOUNT

The final account stage of a contract is the process during which the quantity surveyor determines the final cost of a project, based on the following documents:

- The form of contract
- Original priced bill of quantities
- Variations
- Drawings
- Agreed contractor claims.

For public sector projects in particular the final account acts as the final part of the audit trail, allowing all financial transactions relating to the contract to be clearly traced with the contract bills of quantities being the starting point; it can be a lengthy and time consuming process. For a private sector client it may not always be necessary to produce a fully detailed final account as long as the client is convinced that the final project has delivered value for money. For some public sector clients the final accounts documents are subjected to audit. The processes described in the following pages are those required by most public sector clients, but may be adapted for use in the preparation of final accounts for private clients too.

The final account should be prepared during the contract period, as some of the detail required will have been used during the preparation of variations and interim certificates and not left until the contract is complete. One reason for doing this is that it is better to measure and price variations during the currency of the contract while the facts are still fresh in people's minds, before work becomes covered up and changes of personnel make the accurate preparation

of a final account more difficult and time consuming. Contracts will typically specify a fixed period following practical completion of the work within which the account must be prepared.

The final account is composed of the following:

- Statement of Final Account
- Final account summary
- Adjustment of Prime Cost Sums if used
- Adjustment of Provisional Sums
- Adjustment of Provisional Items
- Adjustment of variation account – see Section 7
- Adjustment for fluctuations – see Section 6
- Adjustment for contractor's claims (if applicable) – see Section 6

and is prepared in accordance with the conditions of contract. For example, in the JCT 05 Standard Form the clause dealing with the preparation of the final account or final adjustment is clause 4.5. After the architect has issued the Certificate of Practical Completion the contractor must supply the quantity surveyor with all the necessary documentation in order that the final account (adjustment) can be prepared. The quantity surveyor then has an additional three months to prepare the final account (adjustment); there is no stipulated penalty stated in the contract if these deadlines are not met.

THE VARIATION ACCOUNT

Section 5 of the JCT 05 deals with variations to the contract.

After a contract has been signed it cannot be changed or varied by the parties. However, given the nature of the construction process, with all of its inherent risk and uncertainty, most standard forms of construction contract include the provision for variations or alterations to the works.

The JCT 05 form of contract clause 5.1 defines the term variation as follows:

> the alteration or modification of the design, quality or quantity of the Works including:
> the addition, omission or substitution of any work;
> the alteration of the kind or standard of any of the materials or goods to be used in the works;
> the removal from the site of any work executed or materials or goods that are not in accordance with the contract.

In addition, the contract allows for variations or alterations to obligations and restrictions imposed on the contractor such as access to the site, working hours, etc.

The variation account will probably be the largest, in terms of documentation, in a final account. The number and nature of change orders or variations issued during the contract period will vary considerably according to the type of contract. For example, contracts with little or no pre-contract planning or documentation or refurbishment contracts can expect to generate a substantial number of variations whereas comparatively uncomplicated projects based on fully detailed documentation may generate very few.

The procedure for issuing a variation order using JCT 05 is as follows:

- All variations must be in writing and issued by the architect/contract administrator. If the contractor objects to carrying out the variation then he/she has seven days to object. Any objection must be in writing. If the contractor fails to comply with the instruction within seven days then the architect/contract administrator has the right to find another contractor to complete the variation and contra charge the contractor
- In addition to architect's instructions, variations may also be given to the contractor in the form of an oral instruction or a site instruction, given by the clerk of works. Both of these forms of variation have to be confirmed in writing by the architect/contract administrator in order to become an official variation.
- Some variations will be issued by way of a drawing together with a covering architect's instruction and there may be occasions where several revisions of the same drawings may be issued. In circumstances such as these it is important that all drawings are carefully logged in a drawing register and only the latest revision is used to measure and assess the variations/alterations. Note that to be valid drawings must be signed by the architect or accompanied with a covering letter – see *Myers v. Sarl* (1860)
- The architect may not omit work, which has been measured in the bills of quantities and priced by the contractor, in order to give it to others to carry out
- Any errors or omissions that come to light during the contract period are, in the case of JCT 05 clause 2.14/15, dealt with as a variation order.

The valuing of variations is generally divided into two operations.

Measurement and pricing of variations

The JCT 05 clause 5.4 gives the contractor the right to be present when variations are measured. In practice, measurement of variations can take place on site, by the employer's quantity surveyor who then passes it to the contractor for checking and agreement, or by the contractor as part of the interim valuation process, which has to be checked and agreed by the employer's quantity surveyor. Once agreed, variations are included in the final account and included in interim certificates.

JCT 05 clause 5.6 sets out the rules for valuing variations, which are a set of procedures in descending order of preference, namely:

- Where the additional works are of similar character to items in the original contract bills then the bill rates are used
- Where the additional works are different in so much that they are carried out under different conditions or there is a significant change in the quantities, then the bill rates are used in order to prepare a fair price, usually by the build-up of pro rata prices – see below
- If neither of the above two approaches is appropriate then work shall be valued at fair rates and prices
- Finally, under certain circumstances, defined in clause 5.7, dayworks may be used as the basis for valuation.

No allowances for any effect on the regular progress of the work caused by the issue of a variation order can be built into the pricing. Any such claims have to be the subject of a claim for loss and expense – see Section 6.

From the quantity surveyor's viewpoint, it is best to measure and value variations as quickly as practicable so that increases/decreases can be built into financial statements and final accounts. From a logistical point of view it is good practice to group similar items together, for example work to the substructure or drainage being measured in one omnibus item.

PRO RATA PRICING

With respect to the valuation of variations the JCT 05 refers to taking into account similarity, character, conditions and quantity of work involved and this can be problematic at times.

One of the provisions in the JCT 05 form is to price variations, where no direct price is available, at rates that are based on the bill rates; this is known as pro rata pricing and as with approximate quantities there are a number of approaches.

As explained in Section 2, bill rates are an amalgam of materials, labour, plant, profit and overheads, therefore when attempting a pro rata calculation a known built-up rate is broken down into its constituent parts so that it can be adjusted. If too many of the elements that constitute a rate have to be adjusted then it is better to build up a new rate from basic principles as described in Section 5.

One of the advantages of having a bill of quantities is that the degree of detail contained in the document can be used as a basis for the valuing of variations during the post-contract stage of a project. As discussed in the previous pages bill rates are composed from the following:

- Labour
- Material
- Plant, and
- Profit and overheads.

The technique of pro rate pricing involves disassembling a bill rate and substituting new data in order to calculate a new rate that can be used for pricing variations.

Example

The client's quantity surveyor is meeting with the contractor to price a variation that has been measured previously. It is not possible to directly use the existing bill rates to price an item, therefore a pro rata price is built up. As the contractor is present it may be possible to refer back to the original price build-up and this will make the process easier. There are occasions, however, when the quantity surveyor works alone and therefore appropriate assumptions have to be made. The approach is to analyse the original bill rate as follows:

- deduct profit and overheads,
- analyse materials, labour and plant costs,
- adapt costs to suit new item, and
- add back profit and overheads.

Bill of quantities item
50 mm thick cement and sand (1:3) level in one coat to concrete – £13.58/m²

Variation account item
38 mm thick cement and sand (1:3) level in one coat on concrete – cost/m²?

Analysis of bill rate

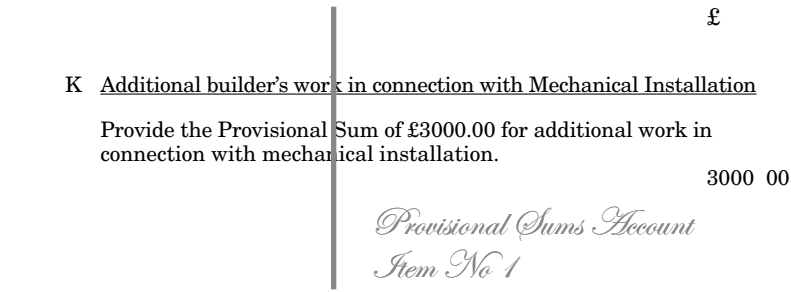
50 mm thick cement and sand screed	£13.58		
Less Profit and overheads 15%	£ 1.77		
Net cost	£11.81		11.81
Deduct materials			
1 m³ cement = 1400 kg cement @ £85.00 per tonne		119.00	
Unloading 1 hour/tonne @ £13.20		18.48	
4 m³ sand = 6400 kg @ £10.00 per tonne		64.00	
		201.48	
Add shrinkage 25%		50.37	
Cost per 5 m³		251.85	
Cost per m³ ÷ 5		50.37	
Mixing			
Assume 200 litre mechanical fed mixer @ £20.00 per hour; output 4 m³ per hour – cost per m³		5.00	
Cost per m³		55.37	
Cost per m² – 50 mm thick		2.52	2.52
Cost of labour for 50 mm thick screed			£9.29
Add materials			
Cost per m³ as before		55.37	
Cost per m² – 38 mm thick			£2.10
			£11.39
Labour costs			
Labour costs for a 38 mm thick screed will be approximately 25% cheaper as it will be possible to place a 38 mm screed more quickly than a 50 mm thick; £9.29 × 0.25			£2.33
			£9.06
Add Profit and overheads 15%			£1.36
Cost per m² for 38 mm thick cement and sand (1:3) screed			£10.42

FINAL ACCOUNT STANDARD FORMAT

There follows an example of standard approach that may be used for the preparation and presentation of a final account. Important points to note are:

- All omissions are entered in grey whereas all additions are in black
- The account is presented as a series of several self-contained accounts:
  - Variations
  - Prime cost sums
  - Provisional items
  - Provisional sums

  the totals of which are carried to the final account summary
- Each item in the various accounts is numbered and contains the Architect's Instruction(s) that authorised the item to be carried out/adjusted
- When, during the preparation of the final account, items are omitted from the original bill of quantities, the original bill item should be lined through in red (indicated here in grey) and referenced to the final account item(s):



The above entry indicates to the auditors that this item has been omitted from the bill(s) of quantities and adjusted/added back as Item 1 of the Provisional Sums Account

- All items such as provisional sums, provisional items and prime cost sums must be adjusted even in the event that there is no item to add back as the sums have not been expended. In this case the item will be omitted and nil added back resulting in an overall saving
- Provisional items are those items of measured works included in the bills of quantities and marked as PROVISIONAL.

STATEMENT OF FINAL ACCOUNT

for

REFURBISHMENT OF TENANT'S MEETING HALL – TONBRIDGE

Architect

Gardiner & Partners
6 Derby Walk
Tonbridge TN4 8HN

Borough Technical Services

P.S. Brookes FRICS
Technical Services Group
67 Uxbridge Road
Tonbridge TN5 6JK

Contractor

J. Harris & Co. Ltd
37 Newton Terrace
Tonbridge TN3 8GH

26 June 2009

I/we the undersigned hereby certify that the gross total value of the final account for this contract has been agreed in the sum of £2,645,363.78
Two million six hundred and forty five thousand three hundred and sixty three pounds and seventy eight pence

and that payment of this gross amount shall be in full and final settlement of this account, subject to any adjustments required following the Local Authority's audit and liquidated and ascertained damages which the employer may deduct and that I/we have no further claims on this contract.

Signed…..……

For and on behalf of……

…..……

Date……

FINAL ACCOUNT SUMMARY

for

REFURBISHMENT OF TENANT'S MEETING HALL – TONBRIDGE

	Omissions £	Additions £	£
Contract sum			2,670,000.00
Less Contingencies			15,000.00
			2,655,000.00
From Prime cost sums summary	18,325.00	16,899.00	
From Provisional sums summary	13,300.00	2689.00	
From Provisional items summary	3191.44	61.70	
From Variation account summary	75,839.04	73,672.78	
Fluctuations	– –	896.78	
Agreed claim	– –	6800.00	
	110,655.48	101,019.26	
	101,019.26		
	£9636.22		£9639.22
			£2,645,363.78
Less amount paid in interim certificates nos 1–12			£2,642,876.00
Balance due			**£2487.78**

Therefore in this example the sum of £2487.78 is due for payment to the contractor in full and final settlement and the statement of final account can be signed.

REFURBISHMENT OF TENANT'S MEETING HALL – TONBRIDGE

Prime cost sums account summary

No.	Description	Omission £	Addition £
1	Electricity main	8525.00	8557.00
2	Steel cladding	7000.00	4556.00
3	Fire alarm installation	2000.00	2986.00
4	Electricity installation	800.00	770.00
	Prime cost sums account carried to final account summary	£18,325	£16,899

REFURBISHMENT OF TENANT'S MEETING HALL – TONBRIDGE

Provisional sums account summary

No.	Description	Omission £	Addition £
1	Contingencies	10,000.00	–
2	Roofing repairs	500.00	650.00
3	Entrance porch	2000.00	1489.00
4	Exit signs	800.00	550.00
	Provisional sums account carried to final account summary	£13,300.00	£2689.00

REFURBISHMENT OF TENANT'S MEETING HALL – TONBRIDGE

Provisional items account summary

No.	Description	Omission £	Addition £
1	Softwood noggins	41.44	61.70
2	Excavation	2000.00	–
3	Drainage	500.00	–
4	External works	650.00	–
	Provisional items account carried to final account summary	£3191.44	£61.70

REFURBISHMENT OF TENANT'S MEETING HALL – TONBRIDGE

Variation account summary

No.	Description	Omission £	Addition £
1	Remeasurement of substructure	52,231.04	48,789.78
2	Remeasurement of external works	4700.00	6897.00
3	Remeasurement of drainage	6908.00	8986.00
4	Etc.	12,000.00	9000.00
	Variation account carried to final account summary	£75,839.04	£73,672.78

REFURBISHMENT OF TENANT'S MEETING HALL – TONBRIDGE

Daywork account

An allowance for carrying out work and valuing on a daywork basis is usually included in the bills of quantities as a provisional sum(s). Therefore in the final account any allowance for dayworks will be omitted in the provisional sums account and if authorised, any work will be added back in the appropriate account as follows in this example:

	Omissions
OMISSIONS	£ p
VARIATION ACCOUNT	
ITEM No. 24	
A.I. No. 23	
ADDITIONAL PLASTERWORK	
OMIT	
NIL	– –
ADDITIONAL PLASTERWORK	
Carried to variation account summary	£ – –

	Additions
ADDITIONS	£ p
VARIATION ACCOUNT	
ITEM No. 24	
A.I. No. 23	
ADDITIONAL PLASTERWORK	
ADD	
Additional plasterwork as DWS No. 34/9	259.98
ADDITIONAL PLASTERWORK	
Carried to variation account summary	**£259.98**

OMISSIONS	Omissions £	p

VARIATION ACCOUNT

ITEM No. 1

A.I. Nos 9, 10, 11, 34, 79

SUBSTRUCTURE

OMIT

BQ Page 3/1/A-N	33,000	89
" " 3/2//A-L	2456	38
" " 3/3/A-L	10,786	45
" " 3/4/A-K	5987	32

SUBSTRUCTURES
Carried to variation account summary **£52,231.04**

ADDITIONS	Additions £	p

VARIATION ACCOUNT

ITEM No. 1

A.I. Nos 9, 10, 11, 34, 79

SUBSTRUCTURE

ADD

Include here the remeasured and priced dimensions for the substructure as agreed with the main contractor.

Assumed as: 48,789.78

SUBSTRUCTURES
Carried to variation account summary **£48,789.78**

OMISSIONS	Omissions £	p
PRIME COST SUMS		
ITEM No. 1		
A.I. No. 3		
ELECTRICITY MAINS		
OMIT		
The PC sum of £8500.00 for work to electricity mains		
As 5/35/F	8500	00
Allow for profit		
As 5/35/G	-	-
Allow for attendance		
As 5/35/H		-
Allow for special attendance		
As 5/35/J	25	00
ELECTRICITY MAINS		
Carried to prime cost sums summary	£8525	00

ADDITIONS	Additions £	p
PRIME COST SUMS		
ITEM No. 1		
A.I. No. 3		
ELECTRICITY MAINS		
ADD		
Include the sum of £8532.00 as Southern Electricity's account No. C445 dated 24 April 2009	8532	00
Allow for profit	–	–
Allow for attendance	–	–
Allow for special attendance		
As 5/35/J	25	00
ELECTRICITY MAINS Carried to prime cost sums summary	£8557	00

* Note the account ref. C445 should be included with this item in the final account and referenced to this item.

Note that when pricing the bills of quantities the contractor chose not to price the items of Profit and General attendance here and therefore they remain unchanged in the final account. Special attendance was priced but will only be adjusted if the amount or the nature of the works changes considerably.

OMISSIONS	Omissions £	p
PROVISIONAL SUMS		
ITEM No. 1		
A.I. No. 19		
CONTINGENCIES		
OMIT		
The provisional sum of £10,000.00 for Contingencies		
As1/48/H	10,000	00
CONTINGENCIES Carried to provisional sum summary	**£10,000**	**00**

ADDITIONS	Additions £	p
PROVISIONAL SUMS		
ITEM No. 1		
A.I. No. 19		
CONTINGENCIES		
ADD		
Nil	–	–
CONTINGENCIES Carried to provisional sum summary	£ –	–

* Note there is no addition to the Contingencies item as this sum has been expended over a number of items in the final account where additions exceed omissions.

OMISSIONS	Omissions £	p
PROVISIONAL ITEMS		
ITEM No. 1		
Softwood noggins		
OMIT		
BQ ref. 3/34/A	41	44
Softwood noggins		
Carried to provisional items summary	**£41**	**44**

ADDITIONS	Additions £	p
PROVISIONAL ITEMS		
ITEM No. 1		
Softwood noggins		
ADD		
50×75 mm Sawn softwood noggins		
As 3/44/A	£61	78
Softwood noggins		
Carried to provisional items summary	**£61**	**78**

* Note that an Architect's Instruction is not necessarily needed to adjust a provisional item.

This page intentionally left blank

Useful links and contacts

The Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors
12, Great George Street
London SW1P 3AD
www.rics.org.uk/
Tel: +44(0)870 333 1600
Fax: +44(0)207 334 3811

The Royal Institute of British Architects
66 Portland Place
London W1B 1AD
www.architecture.com/
Tel: +44 207 580 5533
Fax: +44 207 255 1541

Institution of Civil Engineers
One Great George Street
London SW1P 3AA
www.ice.org.uk/
Tel: +44(0)20 7222 7722

The Institution of Structural Engineers
11 Upper Belgrave Street
London SW1X 8BH
www.istruct.org/
Tel: +44(0)20 7235 4535
Fax: +44(0)20 7235 4294

The Health and Safety Executive (HSE)
Rose Court
2 Southwark Bridge
London SE1 9HS
www.hse.gov.uk/
Tel: 0845 345 0055

Chartered Institute of Building
Englemere
Kings Ride
Ascot
Berks SL5 7TB
www.ciob.org.uk/
Tel: +44(0)1344 630700
Fax: +44(0)1344 630777

Dept. for Business Enterprise & Regulatory Reform (BERR)
Ministerial Correspondence Unit
1 Victoria Street
London SW1H 0ET
www.berr.gov.uk/
Tel: +44(0)20 7215 5000
Fax: +44(0)20 7215 0105

The Institute for Clerk of Works
Equinox
28 Commerce Road
Lynch Wood
Peterborough PE2 6LR
www.icwgb.org/
Tel: +44(0)1733 405160
Fax: +44(0) 1733 405161

The Building Research Establishment (BRE)
Bucknalls Lane
Watford WD25 9XX
www.bre.org.uk/
Tel: +44(0) 1923 664000

The Building Research Establishment (Scotland)
Scottish Enterprise Technology Park
East Kilbride
Glasgow G75 0RZ
Tel: +44(0) 1355 576200

The Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers
222 Balham High Road
London SW12 9BS
www.cibse.org/
Tel: +44(0) 8675 5211
Fax: +44(0) 8675 5449

Building Cost Information Service (BCIS)
12 Great George Street
London SW1P 3AD
www.bcis.co.uk/
Tel: +44(0) 20 7695 1500
Fax: +44(0)20 7695 1501

The Whole Cost Forum
www.wlcf.co.uk/

Society of American Value Engineers (SAVE)
136 South Leowee Street
Dayton
OHIO 45402 USA
www.value-eng.org/
Tel: (937) 224 7283
Fax: (937) 222 5794

National Building Specification (NBS)
The Old Post Office
St Nicholas Street
Newcastle upon Tyne
NE1 1RH
www.thenbs.com/
Tel: +44(0)191 244 5500
Fax: +44(0)191 232 5714

National Home Energy Rating (HNER)
National Energy Centre
Davy Avenue
Knowhill
Milton Keynes
MK5 8NA
www.nher.co.uk/
Tel: +44(0) 1908 672787

BSI British Standards Group
389 Chiswick High Road
London W4 4AL
www.bsi-global.com/
Tel: +44(0) 20 8996 9001
Fax: +44(0) 20 8996 7001

Europa – The European Union online
http://europa.eu/
Tel: 00800 6 7 8 9 10 11

United Nations Commission on International Trade
Law (UNCITRAL)
UNCITRAL Secretariat
Vienna International Centre
PO Box 500
A-1400 Vienna
Austria
www.uncitral.org/
Tel: +43-(1) 26060 4060/4061
Fax: +43-(1) 26060 5813

The Office of Government Commerce (OGC)
Rosebery Court
St Andrew's Business Park
Norwich
NR7 0HS
www.ogc.gov.uk/
Tel: +44(0) 845 000 4999

Joint Contracts Tribunal Ltd
4th Floor
28 Ely Place
London EC1N 6TD
www.jctltd.co.uk
Fax: +44(0) 20 7404 7387

ProCure21
Dept of Health
Room 3N11
Quarry House
Quarry Hill
Leeds LS2 7UE
www.nhs-procure21.gov.uk/
Tel: +44(0) 113 254 5851
Fax: +44(0) 113 254 6691

The European Committee for Standardisation (CEN)
36 rue de Stassart, B
1050 Brussels
www.cen.eu/
Tel: +32 2 550 08 11
Fax: +32 2 550 08 19

Federation of Master Builders (FMB)
Gordon Fisher House
14–15 Great James Street
London WC1N 3DP
www.fmb.org.uk/
Tel: +44(0) 20 7242 7583
Fax: +44(0) 20 7404 0296

Construction Confederation
55 Tufton Street
London SW1P 3QL
www.constructionconfederation.co.uk/
Tel: +44(0) 870 89 89 090
Fax: +44(0) 870 89 89 095

Construction Skills
Eastleigh House
1st Floor
Upper Market Street
Easteigh
SO50 9FD
www.cskills.org/
Tel: +44(0)844 844 0046
Fax: +44 (0)844 844 0045

The British Property Federation
7th Floor
1 Warwick Row,
London SW1E 5ER
www.bpf.org.uk/
Tel: +44(0) 20 7828 0111
Fax: +44(0) 20 7834 3442

The Association of Consultant Architects
98 Hayes Road
Bromley
Kent BR2 9AB
www.accarchitects.co.uk/
Tel: +44(0) 20 8325 1402
Fax: + 44(0) 20 8466 9079

International Federation of Consulting Engineers (FIDIC)
Avenue des Arts 3/4/5
Brussels 1210
www.fidic.org/
Tel: 32 (2) 209 07 70

HM Revenue & Customs
www.hmrc.gov.uk/

Institution of Chemical Engineers (IChemE)
Davis Building
176–189 Railway Terrace
Rugby
CV21 3HQ
www.cms.icheme.org/
Tel: +44(0) 1788 578214
Fax: +44(0) 1788 560833

The Insolvency Service
Room 409
21 Bloomsbury Street
DX 120875 Bloomsbury 6DX
London WC1B 3SS
www.insolvency-service.co.uk/
Tel: +44(0) 20 7637 1110
Fax: +44(0) 20 7637 6574

This page intentionally left blank

Further reading

1 The quantity surveyor and the construction industry

Cartlidge D. (2006) *New Aspects of Quantity Surveying Practice – Second Edition*. Butterworth-Heinemann, Oxford

Dalziel B., Ostime N. (2008) *Architect's Job Book*. RIBA Publications

Dti (2007) *Annual Construction Statistics*. HMSO

Harvey J. (2004) *Urban Land Economics*, 6th edition. Palgrave Macmillan

Morton R. (2007) *Construction UK – Introduction to the Industry*. Blackwell Publishing

RICS (2006) *The Future of Surveying Education*. The Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors

Thompson F.M.L. (1968) *Chartered Surveyors: The Growth of a Profession*. Routledge and Kegan Paul

2 Forecasting costs and values

Cartlidge D., Mehrtens I. (1982) *Practical Cost Planning*. Hutchinson

Isaac D. (2003) *Property Finance, 2nd edition*. Palgrave Macmillan

Millington A.F. (2002) *Property Development*. Estates Gazette

Myers D. (2004) *Construction Economics*: *A New Approach*. Spon Press

Office of Government Commerce (2003) *Procurement Guide No. 7 Whole Life Costing and Cost Management*. HMSO

Stone P.A. (1968) *Building Design Evaluation*: *Costs-in-Use*. E & FN Spon

3 Measurement and quantification

Davidson J., Hambleton P. (2006) *SMM7 Questions and Answers*. RICS Books

Keily P., McNamara P. (2003) *SMM7 Explained and Illustrated*. RICS Books

Lee S., Trench W., Willis A. (2005) *Willis's Elements of Quantity Surveying – Tenth Edition*. Blackwell Publishing

4 Procurement

Cartlidge D. (2004) *Procurement of Built Assets*. Butterworth-Heinemann, Oxford

Cartlidge D. (2006) *Public Private Partnerships in Construction*. Taylor and Francis, Oxford

Flyvbjerg B. (2003) *Mega Projects and Risk*. Cambridge
Hughes W., Hillebrandt P., Greenwood D. (2006) *Procurement in the Construction Industry*. Taylor and Francis

5 Pricing and tendering

Brook M. (2008) *Estimating and Tendering for Construction Work*. Butterworth-Heinemann
Construction Faculty (2005) *E-Tendering*. RICS Books

6 Contract procedure

Chappell D. (2006) *Construction Contracts Questions and Answers*. Taylor and Francis
Davison J. (2006) *JCT 2005 What's New?* RICS Books
Hacket M., Robinson I., Statham G. (2006) *Aqua Group Guide to Procurement Tendering and Contract Administration*. Blackwell Publishing
Wallace D.I. (1994) *Hudsons Building and Engineering Contracts Main Work and Supplement*. Sweet and Maxwell

7 Final account

Ashworth A., Hogg K. (2007) *Willis's Practice and Procedure for the Quantity Surveyor*, 12th edition. Blackwell Publishing

Useful measurement rules and conventions

Abbreviations

aggregate	agg
as before	ab
as described	ad
asphalt	asph
brickwork	bkwk
centres	c/c
coat	ct
common brickwork	cb
cement	ct
concrete	conc
damp-proof course	dpc
damp-proof membrane	dpm
deduct	ddt
ditto	do
excavate	exc
fair face	ff
foundations	fdns
galvanised	galv
ground level	GL
half brick wall	hb wall
hardwood	hw
height	ht
horizontal	hoz
joint	jt
kilogram	kg
mild steel	ms

not exceeding	ne
pipe	pi
pointing	ptg
rainwater pipe	rwp
reinforced concrete	rc
reduced level	RL
reinforcement	reinf
softwood	sw
thick	thk
vertical	vert

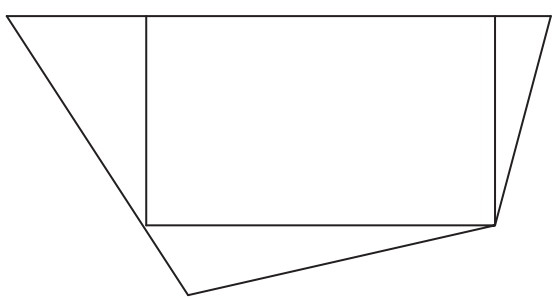
Conversion tables

SI (International System of Units) has been used in the construction industry since the 1970s. Previous to this a hybrid decimal system based on 12 was used in both measurement and bill of quantities preparation. Despite the use of SI units it is still common for prices and rental values to be quoted in imperial units, for example £32 per square foot.

	Metric	**Imperial**	**Imperial**	**Metric**
Length	1 mm	0.03937 in	1 in	25.4 mm
	1 m	3.281 ft	1 ft	0.3048 m
	1 m	1.094 yd	1 yd	0.9144 m
Area	1 mm^2	0.00153 in^2	1 in^2	645.2 mm^2
	1 m^2	10.764 ft^2	1 ft^2	0.0929 m^2
	1 m^2	1.196 yd^2	1 yd^2	0.8361 m^2
	1 hectare	11,960 yd^2	1 hectare	10,000m^2
Mass	1 kg	2.205 lb	1 lb	0.4536 kg
	1 tonne	0.9842 tons	1 ton	1.016 tonnes

Areas

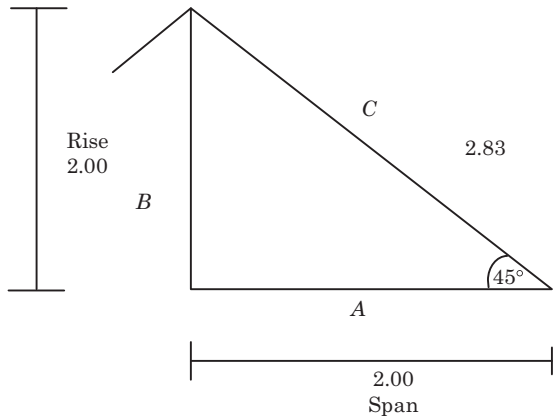
When calculating irregular areas or volumes, the approach should be to divide the total area or volume into more easily measured regular areas such as triangles. For example,



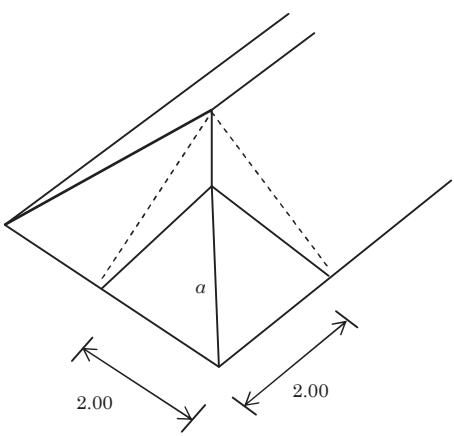
Roof members and coverings
Calculation of coverings

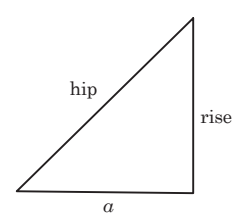
The length of the rafter ***C*** can be determined using Pythagoras:

$C = \sqrt{B^2 + A^2} = 2.83$



The span is taken to the extreme projection of the roof and includes eaves projections, etc.





The length of the hip also has to be calculated as follows:

To calculate ***a***: $a = \sqrt{2.00^2 + 2.00^2} = 2.83$

Therefore length of hip $= \sqrt{2.83^2 + 2.00^2} = 3.47$

Index

Adjudication, 380–381
Alliancing, 224–227
Annual equivalent, 57
Approximate estimating, 38–41
  interpolation, 38
  superficial, 39–40
  unit, 39
Approximate quantities, 41
Arbitration, 381–382
Architect, 13
Auction, reverse, 318

Banwell Report, 8
BCIS, 35, 37, 42
BREEAM, 27–28
Bonds, 74–75, 344, 349–350
Building regulations, 21–22
Building team, 4–19
  Architect, 13
  Building services engineer, 16–17
  Building surveyor, 14
  Civil engineer, 15–16
  Clerk of works, 17–18
  Project manager, 13
  Quantity surveyor, 6–7
  Site manager, 18–19
Builder's quantities, 41

Centre lines, 105–107
Civil engineer, 15–16
CIOB, 19
Clerk of works, 17–18
Collateral warranties, 255, 331, 344, 350–353
Commercial management, 10
Construction industry, 1–4
  Civil engineering, 1
  Definition, 1
  Market drivers, 2
  Supply, 2
  Turnover, 1
Contracts, 322–346
  ACA, 331
  Cost reimbursement, 220
  Design and Build, 324
  FIDIC, 341
  GC/Works, 338–340
  Intermediate form, 323
  ICE, 340–341
  IChemE, 342
  JCT(2005), 321–323
  Major works, 325–329
  Management, 329–330
  Management trade, 330
  Measured term, 330
  Minor works, 323–324
  NEC, 333–337
  PPC2000, 331–333
  Prime cost, 330
  SBBC, 343
Cost analysis, 36, 43–44, 48
Cost checking, 37
Cost control, 35, 49
Cost management, 33
Cost planning, 35–36, 42, 44, 48–49
Cost reimbursement, 220
Construction supply chain, 5
CPD, 12–13
Critical path analysis, 385

Dayworks, 353–359
Design and build, 215–216
Design and manage, 219
Design risk, 38
Developer's budget, 66–71
Developer's profit, 67
Discounting, 54–60
  Internal rate of return (IRR), 58
  net present value (NPV), 54

e-Auctions, 315–318
e-Procurement, 238–239
e-Tendering, 313–315
EcoHome points, 27
Egan, Sir John, 6
Electronic tendering, 245–247
Elemental cost planning, 42–48
Elements, 33
  Cost significant, 37
Emerson report, 4, 8
Energy performance certificates (EPC) 26, 191–195
Estimating, 255–311
  All-in hourly rate for labour, 259–261
  All-in hourly rate for plant, 265–269
  Concrete work, 275–279
  Decoration, 305–308
  Drainage, 308–311
  Finishes, 298–302
  Formwork, 279–280
  Gang rate, 262
  Glazing, 303–304
  Groundworks, 269–272
  Labour costs, 256
  Masonry, 280–286
  Operational, 255
  Preliminaries, 267–269
  Plumbing, 304–305
  Roofing, 289–297
  Unit rate, 255
  Woodwork, 294–298
EU public procurement, 211–247

Feasibility report, 61, 65–71
Final account, 369, 387–403
Finance, 71–74
  Debt, 71–73
  Equity, 71–72
  Gearing, 72
  Mezzanine, 74
  Sources, 71
Financial statements, 49
Forecasting costs, 33–49
Frameworks, 228–229
Functional analysis, 86, 88

Gross development value (GDV), 66–68

Health and safety, 22–25
  CDM, 22–24
  CDM Coordinator, 24–25

Indices, 45–47
  Cost, 45–46
  Location, 45–46
  Tender, 45, 47
Insurances, 344–349
  Employer's liability, 258
  Inherent defects, 344–347
  Persons and property, 348
  Professional indemnity, 349
  Works, 348
Insolvency, 370–376
  Contractor, 371–375
  Employer, 375–376
Internal rate of return (IRR), 58–60
Interim valuations, 364–369

JCT standard forms of Contracts, 320–344
  Design and Build, 324
  Intermediate form, 323
  JCT (2005), 321–323
  Major works, 325–329
  Management, 329–330
  Management trade, 330
  Measured term, 330

Minor works, 323–324
Prime cost, 330
SBBC, 343

Latham report, 6
LIBOR, 73
Limited liability partnerships, (LLP), 9–10
Loss and expense, 377–378

Management contracting, 217–220
Measurement; 89–196
Conventions, 100
Drainage 178
External walls, 115–122
Floors, 127–131
Masonry sundries, 141
Metal flashings, 143
Pitch and flat roofs, 132–141
Plasterwork, 151–155
Plumbing, 164, 173, 304
Roof coverings, 142–150
Site levels, 114–117
Specifications, 182–193
Spot items, 181–184
Stud partitions, 121–124
Substructure, 108–113
Windows, doors and joinery, 153, 157–169

Net present value (NPV), 54–60

Opportunity cost, 72

Partnering, 221–224
Plan shape, 50–52
Planning permission, 20–21
Present value, 55–57
Private finance initiative, 80
Procurement, 197–239
Property markets, 64–65
Pro-rata pricing, 311–312, 390–393
Public private partnerships, 58, 230–238

Quantity surveyor,
Commercial manager, 10
Future role, 8
Private practice, 9
Training and education, 10–12

Residual method of valuation, 63
RIBA Outline plan of work 2005, 34, 44, 207
RICS, 10–11
CPD, 12–13
Tech RICS, 12
Risk,
Analysis, 84
Design, 38
Exposure, 77, 217
Price, 38

Site waste management plans, 31–32
Subcontractors,
Domestic, 251
Named, 250, 252
Nominated, 255–256
Sustainability, 25–26, 28–31
BREEAM, 27–28
EcoHomes points, 28
EPC, 26

Taxation, 61
Tender adjudication, 312–313
Tender evaluation, 209–211
Two stage tendering, 210–214

Value management 85–88
Functional analysis, 86
SAVE, 86
Valuation, methods, 61–63
Variation account, 388
Welfare facilities, 383
Whole life costs, 78–85

Year's purchase, 69